



TITLE 37—CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

PATENTS, TRADEMARKS, AND COPYRIGHTS

CHAPTER 1—PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

PATENTS

Part

- 1 Rules of Practice in Patent Cases
- 3 Assignment, Recording, and Rights of Assignee
- 5 Secrecy of Certain Inventions and Licenses to Export and File
Applications in Foreign Countries
- 7 Register of Government Interests in Patents

- PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
- 10 Representation of others before the Patent and Trademark Office
- 15 Service of Process
- 15a Testimony by Employees and the Production of Documents in Legal
Proceedings

- SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION
- 100 Reserved
- 101 Acquisition and Protection of Foreign Rights in Inventions
- 102 Licensing of Foreign Patents Acquired by the Government



TITLE 37—CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

PATENTS, TRADEMARKS, AND COPYRIGHTS

CHAPTER 1—PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL PATENTS

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

SUBPART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

- Sec.
- 1.1 All communications to be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.
 - 1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
 - 1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.
 - 1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.
 - 1.5 Identification of application, patent, or registration.
 - 1.6 Receipt of correspondence.
 - 1.7 Times for taking action; expiration on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday.
 - 1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.
 - 1.9 Definitions.
 - 1.10 Filing of papers and fees by “Express Mail” with certificate.

RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

- 1.11 Files open to the public.
- 1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.
- 1.13 Copies and certified copies.
- 1.14 Patent applications preserved in secrecy.
- 1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

FEEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

- 1.16 National application filing fees.
- 1.17 Patent application processing fees.
- 1.18 Patent issue fees.
- 1.19 Document supply fees.
- 1.20 Post-issuance fees.
- 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.
- 1.22 Fees payable in advance.
- 1.23 Method of payment.
- 1.24 Coupons.
- 1.25 Deposit accounts.
- 1.26 Refunds.
- 1.27 Statement of status as small entity.
- 1.28 Effect on fees of failure to establish status, or change status, as a small entity.

SUBPART B—NATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS

PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

- 1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.
- 1.32 [Reserved]
- 1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.
- 1.34 Recognition for representation.
- 1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

- 1.41 Applicant for patent.
- 1.42 When the inventor is dead.
- 1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.
- 1.44 Proof of authority.
- 1.45 Joint inventors.
- 1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.
- 1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.
- 1.48 Correction of inventorship.

THE APPLICATION

- 1.51 General requisites of an application.
- 1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.
- 1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.
- 1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.
- 1.55 Claim for foreign priority.
- 1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.
- 1.57 [Reserved]
- 1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulas and tables.
- 1.59 Papers of application with filing date not to be returned.
- 1.60 Continuation or divisional application for invention disclosed in a prior nonprovisional application.
- 1.61 [Reserved]
- 1.62 File wrapper continuing procedure.

OATH OR DECLARATION

- 1.63 Oath or declaration.
- 1.64 Person making oath or declaration.
- 1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.
- 1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.
- 1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.
- 1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.
- 1.70 [Reserved]

SPECIFICATION

- 1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.
- 1.72 Title and abstract.
- 1.73 Summary of the invention.
- 1.74 Reference to drawings.
- 1.75 Claim(s).
- 1.77 Arrangement of application elements.
- 1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross-references to other applications.
- 1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

THE DRAWINGS

- 1.81 Drawings required in patent application.
- 1.83 Content of drawing.
- 1.84 Standards for drawings.
- 1.85 Corrections to drawings.
- 1.88 [Removed and Reserved]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

- 1.91 Models not generally required as part of application or patent.
- 1.92 Model or exhibit may be required.
- 1.93 Specimens.
- 1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.
- 1.95 Copies of exhibits.
- 1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

- 1.97 Filing of information disclosure statement.
- 1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.
- 1.99 [Reserved]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

- 1.101 Order of examination.
- 1.102 Advancement of examination.
- 1.103 Suspension of action.
- 1.104 Nature of examination; examiner's action.



- 1.105 Completeness of examiner's action.
- 1.106 Rejection of claims.
- 1.107 Citation of references.
- 1.108 Abandoned applications not cited.
- 1.109 Reasons for allowance.
- 1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

ACTION BY APPLICANT AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION

- 1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner.
- 1.112 Reconsideration.
- 1.113 Final rejection or action.

AMENDMENTS

- 1.115 Amendment.
- 1.116 Amendments after final action.
- 1.117 Amendment and revision required.
- 1.118 Amendment of disclosure.
- 1.119 Amendment of claims.
- 1.121 Manner of making amendments.
- 1.122 Entry and consideration of amendments.
- 1.123 Amendments to the drawing.
- 1.124 Amendment of amendments.
- 1.125 Substitute specification.
- 1.126 Numbering of claims.
- 1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

- 1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

- 1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.
- 1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

INTERVIEWS

- 1.133 Interviews.

TIME FOR RESPONSE BY APPLICANT
ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

- 1.134 Time period for response to an Office action.
- 1.135 Abandonment for failure to respond within time period.
- 1.136 Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.
- 1.137 Revival of abandoned application.
- 1.138 Express abandonment.
- 1.139 Revival of provisional application.

JOINDER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION;
RESTRICTION

- 1.141 Different inventions in one national application.
- 1.142 Requirement for restriction.
- 1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.
- 1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.
- 1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.
- 1.146 Election of species.

DESIGN PATENTS

- 1.151 Rules applicable.
- 1.152 Design drawing.
- 1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.
- 1.154 Arrangement of specification.
- 1.155 Issue and term of design patents.

PLANT PATENTS

- 1.161 Rules applicable.
- 1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.
- 1.163 Specification.
- 1.164 Claim.
- 1.165 Plant Drawings.



- 1.166 Specimens.
- 1.167 Examination.

REISSUES

- 1.171 Application for reissue.
- 1.172 Applicants, assignees.
- 1.173 Specification.
- 1.174 Drawings.
- 1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.
- 1.176 Examination of reissue.
- 1.177 Reissue in divisions.
- 1.178 Original patent.
- 1.179 Notice of reissue application.

PETITIONS AND ACTIONS BY THE COMMISSIONER

- 1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.
- 1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.
- 1.183 Suspension of rules.
- 1.184 Reconsideration of cases decided by former Commissioners.

APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

- 1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
- 1.192 Appellant's brief.
- 1.193 Examiner's answer.
- 1.194 Oral hearing.
- 1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.
- 1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
- 1.197 Action following decision.
- 1.198 Reopening after decision.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- 1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS

- 1.291 Protests by the public against pending applications.
- 1.292 Public use proceedings.
- 1.293 Statutory invention registration.
- 1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.
- 1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.
- 1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.
- 1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT

- 1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
- 1.302 Notice of appeal.
- 1.303 Civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, 146, 306.
- 1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT

- 1.311 Notice of Allowance.
- 1.312 Amendments after allowance.
- 1.313 Withdrawal from issue.
- 1.314 Issuance of patent.
- 1.315 Delivery of patent.
- 1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.
- 1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.
- 1.318 Notification of national publication of a patent based on an international application.

DISCLAIMER

- 1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT

- 1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.
- 1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.



- 1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.
- 1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

ARBITRATION AWARDS

- 1.331 [Reserved]
- 1.332 [Reserved]
- 1.333 [Reserved]
- 1.334 [Reserved]
- 1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

AMENDMENT OF RULES

- 1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.
- 1.352 Publication of notice of proposed amendments.

MAINTENANCE FEES

- 1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.
- 1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.
- 1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.
- 1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.
- 1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

SUBPART C-INTERNATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS

GENERAL INFORMATION

- 1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
- 1.412 The United States Receiving Office.
- 1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.
- 1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.
- 1.415 The International Bureau.
- 1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

- 1.421 Applicant for international application.
- 1.422 When the inventor is dead.
- 1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.
- 1.424 Joint inventors.
- 1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

- 1.431 International application requirements.
- 1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation fees.
- 1.433 Physical requirements of international application.
- 1.434 The request.
- 1.435 The description.
- 1.436 The claims.
- 1.437 The drawings.
- 1.438 The abstract.

FEES

- 1.445 International application filing, processing, and search fees.
- 1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

PRIORITY

- 1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

REPRESENTATION

- 1.455 Representation in international applications.

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

- 1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

TIMING

- 1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.
- 1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

AMENDMENTS

- 1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.
- 1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.



UNITY OF INVENTION

- 1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority, and during the national stage.
- 1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.
- 1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

- 1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.
- 1.482 International preliminary examination fees.
- 1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.
- 1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.
- 1.487 [Reserved]
- 1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.
- 1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

NATIONAL STAGE

- 1.491 Entry into the national stage.
- 1.492 National stage fees.
- 1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.
- 1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.
- 1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.
- 1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).
- 1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

SUBPART D-REEXAMINATION OF PATENTS

CITATION OF PRIOR ART

- 1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION

- 1.510 Request for reexamination.
- 1.515 Determination of the request for reexamination.
- 1.520 Reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

REEXAMINATION

- 1.525 Order to reexamine.
- 1.530 Statement and amendment by patent owner.
- 1.535 Reply by requester.
- 1.540 Consideration of responses.
- 1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.
- 1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.
- 1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.
- 1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.
- 1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

CERTIFICATE

- 1.570 Issuance of reexamination certificate after reexamination proceedings.

SUBPART E—INTERFERENCES

- 1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.
- 1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.
- 1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.
- 1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.
- 1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.
- 1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.
- 1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.
- 1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.
- 1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.
- 1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.
- 1.611 Declaration of interference.



- 1.612 Access to applications.
- 1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.
- 1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.
- 1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.
- 1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.
- 1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.
- 1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.
- 1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.
- 1.622 Preliminary statement, who made invention, where invention made.
- 1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- 1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- 1.625 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent
- 1.626 Preliminary statement; earlier application.
- 1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.
- 1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.
- 1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.
- 1.630 Reliance on earlier application.
- 1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.
- 1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression or concealment by opponent.
- 1.633 Preliminary motions.
- 1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.
- 1.635 Miscellaneous motions.
- 1.636 Motions, time for filing.
- 1.637 Content of motions.
- 1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.
- 1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.
- 1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, redeclaration of interference, order to show cause.
- 1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.
- 1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.
- 1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.
- 1.644 Petitions in interferences.
- 1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.
- 1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.
- 1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.
- 1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.
- 1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.
- 1.653 Record and exhibits.
- 1.654 Final hearing.
- 1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.
- 1.656 Briefs for final hearing.
- 1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.
- 1.658 Final decision.
- 1.659 Recommendation.
- 1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.
- 1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.
- 1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.
- 1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.
- 1.664 Action after interference.
- 1.665 Second interference.
- 1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.
- 1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.
- 1.672 Manner of taking testimony.
- 1.673 Notice of examination of witness.
- 1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.
- 1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.
- 1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.
- 1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.
- 1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.
- 1.679 Inspection of transcript.
- 1.682 Official records and printed publications.



- 1.683 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.
- 1.684 [Reserved]
- 1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.
- 1.687 Additional discovery.
- 1.688 Use of discovery.
- 1.690 Arbitration of interferences.

SUBPART F—EXTENSION OF PATENT TERM

- 1.701 Extension of patent term due to prosecution delay.
- 1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.
- 1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.
- 1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.
- 1.740 Application for extension of patent term.
- 1.741 Filing date of application.
- 1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.
- 1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).
- 1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.
- 1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.
- 1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product.
- 1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.
- 1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.
- 1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.
- 1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.
- 1.780 Certificate of extension of patent term.
- 1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.
- 1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5)
- 1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

SUBPART G—BIOTECHNOLOGY INVENTION DISCLOSURES

DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

- 1.801 Biological material.
- 1.802 Need or opportunity to make a deposit.
- 1.803 Acceptable depository.
- 1.804 Time of making an original deposit.
- 1.805 Replacement or supplement of deposit.
- 1.806 Term of deposit.
- 1.807 Viability of deposit.
- 1.808 Furnishing of samples.
- 1.809 Examination procedures.

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE
AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

- 1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.
- 1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.
- 1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application papers.
- 1.824 Form and format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.
- 1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

Appendix A – Sample sequence listing

Appendix B – Headings for information items in § 1.823



CHAPTER 1—PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

SUBCHAPTER A—GENERAL

PATENTS

PART 1—RULES OF PRACTICE IN PATENT CASES

SUBPART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS GENERAL INFORMATION AND CORRESPONDENCE

37 CFR 1.1 All communications to be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

- (a) All letters and other communications intended for the Patent and Trademark Office must be addressed to “Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks,” Washington, D.C. 20231. When appropriate, a letter should also be marked for the attention of a particular officer or individual.
- (b) Letters and other communications relating to international applications during the international stage and prior to the assignment of a national serial number should be additionally marked “Box PCT.”
- (c) Requests for reexamination should be additionally marked “Box Reexam.”
- (d) Payments of maintenance fees in patents and other communications relating thereto should be additionally marked “Box M. Fee.”
- (e) Communications relating to interferences and applications or patents involved in an interference should be additionally marked “BOX INTERFERENCE.”
- (f) All applications for extension of patent term and any communications relating thereto intended for the Patent and Trademark Office should be additionally marked “Box Patent Ext.” When appropriate, the communication should also be marked to the attention of a particular individual, as where a decision has been rendered.
- (g) All communications relating to pending litigation which are required by the Federal Rules of Civil or Appellate Procedure or by a rule or order of a court to be served on the Solicitor shall be hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor or shall be mailed to: Office of the Solicitor, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, Virginia 22215 or such other address as may be designated in writing in the litigation. All other communications to the Office of the Solicitor should be addressed to: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231. Any communication which does not involve pending litigation which is received at P.O. Box 15667 will not be filed in the Office but will be returned. See §§ 1.302(c) and 2.145(b)(3) for filing notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.
- (h) In applications under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), all statements of use filed under section 1(d) of the Act, and requests for extensions of time therefor, should be additionally marked “Box ITU.”
- (i) The filing of all provisional applications and any communications relating thereto should be additionally marked “Box Provisional Patent Application.”

NOTE. — Sections 1.1 to 1.26 are applicable to trademark cases as well as to national and international patent cases except for provisions specifically directed to patent cases. See § 1.9 for definitions of “national application” and “international application.”

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; para. (d) added, 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective Nov. 1, 1984; para. (e), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985, para. (f) added, 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; para. (g) added, 53 FR 16413, May 9, 1988; para. (h) added, 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989, effective Nov. 16, 1989; para. (i) added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.

All business with the Patent and Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

37 CFR 1.3 Business to be conducted with decorum and courtesy.

Applicants and their attorneys or agents are required to conduct their business with the Patent and Trademark Office with decorum and courtesy. Papers presented in violation of this requirement will be submitted to the Commissioner and will be returned by his direct order. Complaints against examiners and other employees must be made in communications separate from other papers.

37 CFR 1.4 Nature of correspondence and signature requirements.

(a) Correspondence with the Patent and Trademark office comprises:

- (1) Correspondence relating to services and facilities of the Office, such as general inquiries, requests for publications supplied by the Office, orders for printed copies of patents or trademark registrations, orders for copies of records, transmission of assignments for recording, and the like, and
- (2) Correspondence in and relating to a particular application or other proceeding in the Office. See particularly the rules relating to the filing, processing, or other proceedings of national applications in Subpart B, §§ 1.31 to 1.378; of international applications in Subpart C, §§ 1.401 to 1.499; of reexamination of patents in Subpart D, §§ 1.501 to 1.570; of interferences in Subpart E; §§ 1.601 to 1.690; of extension of patent term in Subpart F, §§ 1.710 to 1.785; and of trademark applications §§ 2.11 to 2.189.

(b) Since each application file should be complete in itself, a separate copy of every paper to be filed in an application should be furnished for each application to which the paper pertains, even though the contents of the papers filed in two or more applications may be identical.

(c) Since different matters may be considered by different branches or sections of the Patent and Trademark Office, each distinct subject, inquiry, or order should be contained in a separate letter to avoid confusion and delay in answering letters dealing with different subjects.

(d) Each piece of correspondence, except as provided for in paragraphs (e) and (f) of this section, filed in a patent or trademark application, reexamination proceeding, patent or trademark interference proceeding, patent file or trademark registration file, trademark opposition proceeding, trademark cancellation proceeding, or trademark concurrent use proceeding, which requires a person's signature, must either:

- (1) Be an original, that is, have an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person; or
- (2) Be a copy, such as a photocopy or facsimile transmission (§ 1.6(d)), of an original. In the event that a copy of the original is filed, the original should be retained as evidence of authenticity. If a question of authenticity arises, the Patent and Trademark Office may require submission of the original.

(e) Correspondence requiring person's signature and relating to registration practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases, enrollment and disciplinary investigations, or disciplinary proceedings must be submitted with an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by that person.

(f) When a document that is required by statute to be certified must be filed, a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of the certification is not acceptable.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 43 FR 20461, May 11, 1978; para. (a), 48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a)(2), 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; paras. (d)-(f) added, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 1.5 Identification of application, patent, or registration.

(a) No correspondence relating to an application should be filed prior to when notification of the application number is received from the Patent and Trademark Office. When a letter directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerns a previously filed application for a patent, it must identify on the top page in a conspicuous location, the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number; e.g., 07/123,456), or the serial number and filing date assigned to that application by the Patent and Trademark Office, or the international application number of the international application. Any correspondence not containing such identification will be returned to the sender where a return address is available. The returned correspondence will be accompanied with a cover letter which will indicate to the sender that if the returned correspondence is resubmitted to the Patent and Trademark Office within two weeks of the mail date on the cover letter, the original date of receipt of the correspondence will be considered by the Patent and Trademark Office as the date of receipt of the correspondence. Applicants may use either the Certificate of Mailing or Transmission procedure under § 1.8 or the Express Mail procedure under § 1.10 for resubmissions of returned correspondence if they desire to have the benefit of the date of deposit in the United States Postal Service. If the returned correspondence is not resubmitted within the two-week period, the date of receipt of the resubmission will be considered to be the date of receipt of the correspondence. The two-week period to resubmit the returned correspondence will not be extended. If for some reason returned correspondence is resubmitted with proper identification later than two weeks after the return mailing by the Patent and Trademark Office, the resubmitted correspondence will be accepted but given its date of receipt. In addition to the application number, all letters directed to the Patent and Trademark Office concerning applications for patent should also state "PATENT APPLICATION," the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date of filing the same, and, if known, the group art unit or other unit within the Patent and Trademark Office responsible for considering the letter and the name of the examiner or other person to which it has been assigned.

(b) When the letter concerns a patent other than for purposes of paying a maintenance fee, it should state the number and date of issue of the patent, the name of the patentee, and the title of the invention. For letters concerning payment of a maintenance fee in a patent, see the provisions of § 1.366(c).

(c) A letter relating to a trademark application should identify it as such and by the name of the applicant and the serial number and filing date of the application. A letter relating to a registered trademark should identify it by the name of the registrant and by the number and date of the certificate.

(d) A letter relating to a reexamination proceeding should identify it as such by the number of the patent undergoing reexamination, the reexamination request control number assigned to such proceeding, and, if known, the group art unit and name of the examiner to which it been assigned.

(e) When a paper concerns an interference, it should state the names of the parties and the number of the interference. The name of the examiner-in-chief assigned to the interference (§ 1.610) and the name of the party filing the paper should appear conspicuously on the first page of the paper.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; para. (a) 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a) & (b), 53 FR 47807, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 1.6 Receipt of correspondence.

(a) Date of receipt and Express Mail date of deposit. Correspondence received in the Patent and Trademark Office is stamped with the date of receipt except as follows:

- (1) No correspondence is received in the Patent and Trademark Office on Saturdays, Sundays, or Federal holidays within the District of Columbia.
- (2) Correspondence filed in accordance with § 1.10 will be stamped with the date of deposit as "Express Mail" with the United States Postal Service unless the date of deposit is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia in which case the date stamped will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.
- (3) Correspondence transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office will be stamped with the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the



District of Columbia, in which case the date stamped will be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia.

(b) Patent and Trademark Office Post Office pouch. Mail placed in the Patent and Trademark Office pouch up to midnight on any day, except Saturdays, Sundays, and Federal holidays within the District of Columbia, by the post office at Washington, D.C., serving the Patent and Trademark Office, is considered as having been received in the Patent and Trademark Office on the day it was so placed in the pouch by the U.S. Postal Service.

(c) Correspondence delivered by hand. In addition to being mailed, correspondence may be delivered by hand during hours the Office is open to receive correspondence.

(d) Facsimile transmission. Except in the cases enumerated below, correspondence, including authorizations to charge a deposit account, may be transmitted by facsimile. The receipt date accorded to the correspondence will be the date on which the complete transmission is received in the Patent and Trademark Office, unless that date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 1.6(a)(3). To facilitate proper processing, each transmission session should be limited to correspondence to be filed in a single application or other proceeding before the Patent and Trademark Office. The application number of a patent or trademark application, the control number of a reexamination proceeding, the interference number of an interference proceeding, the patent number of a patent, or the registration number of a trademark should be entered as a part of the sender's identification on a facsimile cover sheet. Facsimile transmissions are not permitted and, if submitted, will not be accorded a date of receipt in the following situations:

- (1) Correspondence as specified in § 1.4(e), requiring an original signature;
- (2) Certified documents as specified in § 1.4(f);
- (3) Correspondence which cannot receive the benefit of the certificate of mailing or transmission as specified in §§ 1.8(a)(2)(i)(A) through (D) and (F); 1.8(a)(2)(ii)(A) and (D); and 1.8(a)(2)(iii)(A);
- (4) Drawings submitted under §§ 1.81, 1.83 through 1.85, 1.152, 1.165, 1.174, 1.437, 2.51, 2.52, or 2.72;
- (5) A request for reexamination under § 1.510;
- (6) Correspondence to be filed in a patent application subject to a secrecy order under §§ 5.1 through 5.8 of this chapter and directly related to the secrecy order content of the application;
- (7) Requests for cancellation or amendment of a registration under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e); and certificates of registration surrendered for cancellation or amendment under section 7(e) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1057(e);
- (8) Correspondence to be filed with the Trademark Trial and Appeal Board, except the notice of ex parte appeal;
- (9) Correspondence to be filed in an interference proceeding which consists of a preliminary statement under § 1.621; a transcript of a deposition under § 1.676 or of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, or recorded answers under § 1.684(c); or an evidentiary record and exhibits under § 1.653.

(e) Interruptions in U.S. Postal Service. If interruptions or emergencies in the United States Postal Service which have been so designated by the Commissioner occur, the Patent and Trademark Office will consider as filed on a particular date in the Office any correspondence which is:

- (1) Promptly filed after the ending of the designated interruption or emergency; and
- (2) Accompanied by a statement indicating that such correspondence would have been filed on that particular date if it were not for the designated interruption or emergency in the United States Postal Service. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person other than a practitioner as defined in § 10.1(r) of this chapter.

[48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983; para. (a), 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; revised, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 1.7 Times for taking action; expiration on Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday.

Whenever periods of time are specified in this part in days, calendar days are intended. When the day, or the last day fixed by statute or by or under this part for taking any action or paying any fee in the Patent and Trademark Office falls on Saturday, Sunday, or on a Federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the action may be taken, or the fee paid, on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or a Federal holiday. See § 1.304 for time for appeal or for commencing civil action.

[48 FR 2707, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; corrected 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983]

37 CFR 1.8 Certificate of mailing or transmission.

(a) Except in the cases enumerated in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, correspondence required to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within a set period of time will be considered as being timely filed if the procedure described in this section is followed. The actual date of receipt will be used for all other purposes.

- (1) Correspondence will be considered as being timely filed if:
 - (i) The correspondence is mailed or transmitted prior to expiration of the set period of time by being:
 - (A) Deposited with the U.S. Postal Service with sufficient postage as first class mail addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231; or
 - (B) Transmitted by facsimile to the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with § 1.6(d); and
 - (ii) The correspondence includes a certificate for each piece of correspondence stating the date of deposit or transmission. The person signing the certificate should have reasonable basis to expect that the correspondence would be mailed or transmitted on or before the date indicated.
- (2) The procedure described in paragraph (a)(1) of this section does not apply to, and no benefit will be given to a Certificate of Mailing or Transmission on, the following:
 - (i) Relative to Patents and Patent Applications—
 - (A) The filing of a national patent application specification and drawing or other correspondence for the purpose of obtaining an application filing date;
 - (B) The filing of correspondence in an interference which an examiner-in-chief orders to be filed by hand or “Express Mail”;
 - (C) The filing of agreements between parties to an interference under 35 U.S.C. 135(c);
 - (D) The filing of an international application for patent;
 - (E) The filing of correspondence in an international application before the U.S. Receiving Office, the U.S. International Searching Authority, or the U.S. International Preliminary Examining Authority;
 - (F) The filing of a copy of the international application and the basic national fee necessary to enter the national stage, as specified in § 1.494(b) or § 1.495(b).
 - (ii) Relative to Trademark Registrations and Trademark Applications—
 - (A) The filing of a trademark application;
 - (B) The filing of an affidavit showing that a mark is still in use or containing an excuse for non-use under section 8(a) or (b) or section 12(c) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1058(a), 1058(b), 1062(c);
 - (C) The filing of an application for renewal of a registration under section 9 of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1059;
 - (D) The filing of a petition to cancel a registration of a mark under section 14, subsection (1) or (2) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1064;



- (E) In an application under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), the filing of an amendment to allege use in commerce under section 1(c) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(c); or the filing of a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(d)(1);
 - (F) In an application under section 1(b) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(b), the filing of a request under section 1(d)(2) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(d)(2) for an extension of time to file a statement of use under section 1(d)(1) of the Trademark Act, 15 U.S.C. 1051(d)(1).
- (iii) Relative to Disciplinary Proceedings—
- (A) Correspondence filed in connection with a disciplinary proceeding under part 10 of this chapter.
 - (B) [Reserved.]

(b) In the event that correspondence is considered timely filed by being mailed or transmitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, but not received in the Patent and Trademark Office, and the application is held to be abandoned or the proceeding dismissed, terminated, or decided with prejudice, the correspondence will be considered timely if the party who forwarded such correspondence:

- (1) Informs the Office of the previous mailing or transmission of the correspondence promptly after becoming aware that the Office has no evidence of receipt of the correspondence,
- (2) Supplies an additional copy of the previously mailed or transmitted correspondence and certificate, and
- (3) Includes a statement which attests on a personal knowledge basis or to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to the previous timely mailing or transmission. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person other than a practitioner as defined in § 10.1(r) of this chapter. If the correspondence was sent by facsimile transmission, a copy of the sending unit's report confirming transmission may be used to support this statement.

(c) The Office may require additional evidence to determine if the correspondence was timely filed.

[41 FR 43721, Oct. 4, 1976; 43 FR 20461, May 11, 1978; para. (a), 47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, effective Oct. 26, 1982; para. (a), 48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; para. (a) 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a), 49 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; 52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987; subparas. (a)(2)(xiv)–(xvi), 54 FR 37588, Sept. 11, 1989, effective Nov. 16, 1989; revised, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 1.9 Definitions.

(a)

- (1) A national application as used in this chapter means a U.S. application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111, or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.
- (2) A provisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(b).
- (3) A nonprovisional application as used in this chapter means a U.S. national application for patent which was either filed in the Office under 35 U.S.C. 111(a), or which entered the national stage from an international application after compliance with 35 U.S.C. 371.

(b) An international application as used in this chapter means an international application for patent filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty prior to entering national processing at the Designated Office stage.

(c) An independent inventor as used in this chapter means any inventor who

- (1) has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and

(2) is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not likewise be classified as an independent inventor if that person had made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern or a nonprofit organization under this section.

(d) A small business concern as used in this chapter means any business concern as defined by the regulations of the Small Business Administration in 13 CFR 121.1301 through 121.1305, which define a small business concern as one whose number of employees, including those of its affiliates, does not exceed 500 persons and which has not assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, and is under no obligation under contract or law to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights in the invention to any person who could not be classified as an independent inventor if that person had made the invention, or to any concern which would not qualify as a small business concern or a nonprofit organization under this section. Questions related to size standards for a small business concern may be directed to: Small Business Administration, Size Standards Staff, 409 Third Street, SW, Washington, DC 20416.

(e) A nonprofit organization as used in this chapter means

- (1) a university or other institution of higher education located in any country;
- (2) an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)(3)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a));
- (3) any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a nonprofit organization statute of a state of this country (35 U.S.C. 201(i)); or
- (4) any non-profit organization located in a foreign country which would qualify as a nonprofit organization under paragraphs (e) (2) or (3) of this section if it were located in this country.

(f) A small entity as used in this chapter means an independent inventor, a small business concern, or a non-profit organization.

(g) For definitions in interferences see § 1.601.

[43 FR 20461, May 11, 1978; 47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 47 FR 43275, Sept. 30, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (d), 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective Nov. 1, 1984; para. (g), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (d) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994; para. (a) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.10 Filing of papers and fees by “Express Mail” with certificate.

(a) Any paper or fee to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office can be filed utilizing the “Express Mail Post Office to Addressee” service of the United States Postal Service and be considered as having been filed in the Office on the date the paper or fee is shown to have been deposited as “Express Mail” with the United States Postal Service unless the date of deposit is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia. See § 1.6(a).

(b) Any paper or fee filed by “Express Mail” must have the number of the “Express Mail” mailing label placed thereon prior to mailing, be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231, and any such paper or fee must also include a certificate of mailing by “Express Mail” which states the date of mailing by “Express Mail” and is signed by the person mailing the paper or fee.

(c) The Patent and Trademark Office will accept the certificate of mailing by “Express Mail” and accord the paper or fee the certificate date under 35 U.S.C. 21(a) (unless the certificate date is a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia — see § 1.6(a)) without further proof of the date on which the mailing by “Express Mail” occurred unless a question is present regarding the date of mailing. If more than a reasonable time has elapsed between the certificate date and the Patent and Trademark Office receipt date or if other questions regarding the date of mailing are present, the person mailing the paper or fee may be required to file a copy of the “Express Mail” receipt showing the actual date of mailing and a statement from the person who mailed the paper or fee averring to the fact that the mailing occurred on the date certified. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983, added effective Feb. 27, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983, paras. (a) & (c), 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984]



RECORDS AND FILES OF THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

37 CFR 1.11 Files open to the public.

(a) After a patent has been issued or a statutory invention registration has been published, the specification, drawings, and all papers relating to the case in the file of the patent or statutory invention registration are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor. See § 2.27 for trademark files.

(b) All reissue applications, all applications in which the Office has accepted a request to open the complete application to inspection by the public, and related papers in the application file, are open to inspection by the public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor. The filing of reissue applications will be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the filing date, reissue application, and original patent numbers, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the owner of record, name of the attorney or agent of record, and examining group to which the reissue application is assigned.

(c) All requests for reexamination for which the fee under § 1.20(c) has been paid, will be announced in the Official Gazette. Any reexaminations at the initiative of the Commissioner pursuant to § 1.520 will also be announced in the Official Gazette. The announcement shall include at least the date of the request, if any, the reexamination request control number or the Commissioner initiated order control number, patent number, title, class and subclass, name of the inventor, name of the patent owner of record, and the examining group to which the reexamination is assigned.

(d) All papers or copies thereof relating to a reexamination proceeding which have been entered of record in the patent or reexamination file are open to inspection by the general public, and copies may be furnished upon paying the fee therefor.

(e) The file of any interference involving a patent, a statutory invention registration, a reissue application, or an application on which a patent has been issued or which has been published as a statutory invention registration, is open to inspection by the public, and copies may be obtained upon paying the fee therefor, if:

- (1) The interference has terminated or
- (2) An award of priority or judgment has been entered as to all parties and all counts.

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977; 43 FR 28477, June 30, 1978; 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981, para. (c), 47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a), (b), and (e), 50 FR 9278, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (e) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Mar. 17, 1995]

37 CFR 1.12 Assignment records open to public inspection.

(a)

- (1) Separate assignment records are maintained in the Patent and Trademark Office for patents and trademarks. The assignment records, relating to original or reissue patents, including digests and indexes, for assignments recorded on or after May 1, 1957, and assignment records relating to pending or abandoned trademark applications and to trademark registrations, for assignments recorded on or after January 1, 1955, are open to public inspection at the Patent and Trademark Office, and copies of those assignment records may be obtained upon request and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.19 and § 2.6 of this chapter.
- (2) All records of assignments of patents recorded before May 1, 1957, and all records of trademark assignments recorded before January 1, 1955, are maintained by the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA). The records are open to public inspection. Certified and uncertified copies of those assignment records are provided by NARA upon request and payment of the fees required by NARA.

(b) Assignment records, digests, and indexes relating to any pending or abandoned application are not available to the public. Copies of any such assignment records and information with respect thereto shall be obtainable only upon written authority of the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent or upon a showing that the person seeking such information is a bona fide prospective or actual purchaser,



mortgagee, or licensee of such application, unless it shall be necessary to the proper conduct of business before the Office or as provided by these rules.

(c) Any request by a member of the public seeking copies of any assignment records of any pending or abandoned patent application preserved in secrecy under § 1.14, or any information with respect thereto, must

- (1) Be in the form of a petition accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i), or
- (2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public to the particular assignment records from the applicant or applicant's assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(d) An order for a copy of an assignment or other document should identify the reel and frame number where the assignment or document is recorded. If a document is identified without specifying its correct reel and frame, an extra charge as set forth in § 1.21(j) will be made for the time consumed in making a search for such assignment.

[47 FR 41272, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (a) and (c), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective April 17, 1989; paras. (a) and (d), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)(1) and (d), 57 FR 29641, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992; para. (a)(2) added, 57 FR 29641, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992; para. (c) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.13 Copies and certified copies.

(a) Non-certified copies of patents and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public, will be furnished by the Patent and Trademark Office to any person, and copies of other records or papers will be furnished to persons entitled thereto, upon payment of the fee therefor.

(b) Certified copies of the patents and trademark registrations and of any records, books, papers, or drawings within the jurisdiction of the Patent and Trademark Office and open to the public or persons entitled thereto will be authenticated by the seal of the Patent and Trademark Office and certified by the Commissioner, or in his name attested by an officer of the Patent and Trademark Office authorized by the Commissioner, upon payment of the fee for the certified copy.

[Revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.14 Patent applications preserved in secrecy.

(a) Except as provided in § 1.11(b) pending patent applications are preserved in secrecy. No information will be given by the Office respecting the filing by any particular person of an application for a patent, the pendency of any particular case before it, or the subject matter of any particular application, nor will access be given to or copies furnished of any pending application or papers relating thereto, without written authority in that particular application from the applicant or his assignee or attorney or agent of record, unless the application has been identified by serial number in a published patent document or the United States of America has been indicated as a Designated State in a published international application, in which case status information such as whether it is pending, abandoned, or patented may be supplied, or unless it shall be necessary to the proper conduct of business before the Office or as provided by this part. Where an application has been patented, the patent number and issue date may also be supplied.

(b) Except as provided in § 1.11(b), abandoned applications are likewise not open to public inspection, except that if an application referred to in a U.S. patent, or in an application in which the applicants has filed an authorization to open the complete application to the public, is abandoned and is available, it may be inspected or copies obtained by any person on written request, without notice to the applicant. Complete applications (§ 1.51(a)) which are abandoned may be destroyed after 20 years from their filing date, except those to which particular attention has been called and which have been marked for preservation. Abandoned applications will not be returned.

(c) Applications for patents which disclose or which appear to disclose, or which purport to disclose, inventions or discoveries relating to atomic energy are reported to the Department of Energy, which Department will be given access to such applications, but such reporting does not constitute a determination that the subject matter of each application so reported is in fact useful or an invention or discovery or that such application in fact discloses subject matter in categories specified by sections 151(c) and 151(d) of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, 68 Stat. 919; 42 U.S.C. 2181 (c) and (d).



(d) Any decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, or any decision of the Commissioner on petition, not otherwise open to public inspection shall be published or made available for public inspection if:

- (1) The Commissioner believes the decision involves an interpretation of patent laws or regulations that would be of important precedent value; and
- (2) the applicant, or any party involved in the interference, does not within two months after being notified of the intention to make the decision public, object in writing on the ground that the decision discloses a trade secret or other confidential information.

If a decision discloses such information, the applicant or party shall identify the deletions in the text of the decision considered necessary to protect the information. If it is considered, the entire decision must be withheld from the public to protect such information the applicant or party must explain why. Applicants or parties will be given time, not less than twenty days, to request reconsideration and seek court review before any portions of decisions are made public over their objection. See § 2.27 for trademark applications.

(e) Any request by a member of the public seeking access to, or copies of, any pending or abandoned application preserved in secrecy pursuant to paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, or any papers relating thereto, must

- (1) Be in the form of a petition and be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i), or
- (2) Include written authority granting access to the member of the public in that particular application from the applicant or the applicant’s assignee or attorney or agent of record.

(Note, see § 1.612(a) for access by an interference party to a pending or abandoned application.)

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977; 43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978; para. (e) added, 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (b), 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (d), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b), 50 FR 9378, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 53 FR 23733, June 23, 1988; para. (e), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective April 17, 1989; para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994; para. (e) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.15 Requests for identifiable records.

(a) Requests for records not disclosed to the public as part of the regular informational activity of the Patent and Trademark Office and which are not otherwise dealt with in the rules in this part shall be made in writing, with the envelope and the letter clearly marked “Freedom of Information Request.” Each such request, so marked, should be submitted by mail addressed to the “Patent and Trademark Office, Freedom of Information Request Control Desk, Box 8, Washington, D.C. 20231,” or hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor, Patent and Trademark Office, Arlington, Virginia. The request will be processed in accordance with the procedures set forth in Part 4 of Title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(b) Any person whose request for records has been initially denied in whole or in part, or has not been timely determined, may submit a written appeal as provided in § 4.8 of Title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

(c) Procedures applicable in the event of service of process or in connection with testimony of employees on official matters and production of official documents of the Patent and Trademark Office in civil legal proceedings not involving the United States shall be those established in parts 15 and 15a of Title 15, Code of Federal Regulations.

[32 FR 13812, Oct. 4, 1967; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; amended 53 FR 47685, Nov. 25, 1988, effective Dec. 30, 1988]

FEES AND PAYMENT OF MONEY

37 CFR 1.16 National application filing fees.

(a) Basic fee for filing each application for an original patent, except provisional, design or plant applications:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... \$375.00
- By other than a small entity 750.00



(b) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of 3:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 39.00
- By other than a small entity 78.00

(c) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 11.00
- By other than a small entity 22.00

(d) In addition to the basic filing fee in an original application, except provisional applications, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 125.00
- By other than a small entity 250.00

(If the additional fees required by paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section are not paid on filing or on later presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims canceled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for response by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.)

(e) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or oath or declaration on a date later than the filing date of the application, except provisional applications:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 65.00
- By other than a small entity 130.00

(f) Basic fee for filing each design application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 155.00
- By other than a small entity 310.00

(g) Basic fee for filing each plant application, except provisional applications:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 255.00
- By other than a small entity 510.00

(h) Basic fee for filing each reissue application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 375.00
- By other than a small entity 750.00

(i) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim which is in excess of the number of independent claims in the original patent:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 39.00
- By other than a small entity 78.00

(j) In addition to the basic filing fee in a reissue application, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 and also in excess of the number of claims in the original patent, (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee purposes.):

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 11.00
- By other than a small entity 22.00

(k) Basic fee for filing each provisional application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 75.00
- By other than a small entity 150.00

(l) Surcharge for filing the basic filing fee or cover sheet (§ 1.51(a)(2)(i)) on a date later than the filing date of the provisional application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 25.00
- By other than a small entity 50.00

(Note: See §§ 1.445, 1.482, and 1.492 for international application filing and processing fees.).



[Added 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; 50 FR 31824, Aug. 6, 1985, effective date Oct. 5, 1985; paras. (a), (b), (d)–(i), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; paras. (a)–(j), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)–(d) and (f)–(j), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; paras. (a), (b), (d) and (f)–(i), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; paras. (a)–(g) amended and paras. (k) and (l) added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995; paras. (a), (b), (d), & (f)–(i) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.17 Patent application processing fees.

- (a) Extension fee for response within first month pursuant to § 1.136(a):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... \$55.00
 - By other than a small entity 110.00
- (b) Extension fee for response within second month pursuant to § 1.136(a):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 190.00
 - By other than a small entity 380.00
- (c) Extension fee for response within third month pursuant to § 1.136(a):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 450.00
 - By other than a small entity 900.00
- (d) Extension fee for response within fourth month pursuant to § 1.136(a):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 700.00
 - By other than a small entity 1,400.00
- (e) For filing a notice of appeal from the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 145.00
 - By other than a small entity 290.00
- (f) In addition to the fee for filing a notice of appeal, for filing a brief in support of an appeal:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 145.00
 - By other than a small entity 290.00
- (g) For filing a request for an oral hearing before the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 134:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 125.00
 - By other than a small entity 250.00
- (h) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph 130.00
 - § 1.47 – for filing by other than all the inventors or a person not the inventor
 - § 1.48 – for correction of inventorship, except in provisional applications
 - § 1.84 – for accepting color drawings or photographs
 - § 1.182 – for decision on questions not specifically provided for
 - § 1.183 – to suspend the rules
 - § 1.295 – for review of refusal to publish a statutory invention registration
 - § 1.377 – for review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent
 - § 1.378(e) – for reconsideration of decision on petition refusing to accept delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent
 - § 1.644(e) – for petition in an interference
 - § 1.644(f) – for request for reconsideration of a decision on petition in an interference
 - § 1.666(c) – for late filing of interference settlement agreement
 - §§ 5.12, 5.13 and 5.14 – for expedited handling of a foreign filing license
 - § 5.15 – for changing the scope of a license
 - § 5.25 – for retroactive license
- (i) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph 130.00



- § 1.12 – for access to an assignment record
- § 1.14 – for access to an application
- § 1.53 – to accord a filing date, except in provisional applications
- § 1.55 – for entry of late priority papers
- § 1.60 – to accord a filing date
- § 1.62 – to accord a filing date
- § 1.97(d) – to consider an information disclosure statement
- § 1.102 – to make application special
- § 1.103 – to suspend action in application
- § 1.177 – for divisional reissues to issue separately
- § 1.312 – for amendment after payment of issue fee
- § 1.313 – to withdraw an application from issue
- § 1.314 – to defer issuance of a patent
- § 1.666(b) – for access to interference settlement agreement
- § 3.81 – for patent to issue to assignee, assignment submitted after payment of the issue fee
- (j) For filing a petition to institute a public use proceeding under § 1.292 1,430.00
- (k) For processing an application filed with a specification in a non-English language (§ 1.52(d)) 130.00
- (l) For filing a petition:
 - (1) For the revival of an unavoidably abandoned application under 35 U.S.C. 111, 133, 364, or 371 or
 - (2) For delayed payment of the issue fee under 35 U.S.C. 151:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 55.00
 - By other than a small entity 110.00
- (m) For filing a petition:
 - (1) For revival of an unintentionally abandoned application, or
 - (2) For the unintentionally delayed payment of the fee for issuing a patent:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 625.00
 - By other than a small entity 1,250.00
- (n) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration prior to the mailing of the first examiner’s action pursuant to § 1.104 – \$870.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.
- (o) For requesting publication of a statutory invention registration after the mailing of the first examiner’s action pursuant to § 1.104 – \$1,740.00 reduced by the amount of the application basic filing fee paid.
- (p) For submission of an information disclosure statement under § 1.97(c) 220.00
- (q) For filing a petition to the Commissioner under a section listed below which refers to this paragraph 50.00
 - § 1.48 – for correction of inventorship in a provisional application
 - § 1.53 – to accord a provisional application a filing date or to convert an application filed under § 1.53(b)(1) to a provisional application
- (r) For entry of a submission after final rejection under § 1.129(a):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 375.00
 - By other than a small entity 750.00
- (s) For each additional invention requested to be examined under § 1.129(b):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 365.00
 - By other than a small entity 730.00



[Added 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (h), 48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (h), 49 FR 13461, Apr. 4, 1984, effective June 4, 1984; para. (h), 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective Nov. 1, 1984; paras. (e), (g), (h) and (i), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (h), (n) and (c), 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31824, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; paras. (a)–(m), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9431, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (i)(1), 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990; paras. (a)–(o), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; para. (i)(1), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective March 16, 1992; para. (p) added, 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective March 16, 1992; para. (i)(1), 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992; corrected 57 FR 32439, July 22, 1992; paras. (b)–(g), (j), and (m)–(o), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (h), 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993; paras. (b)–(g), (j) and (m)–(p), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; paras. (h) & (i) amended and paras. (q)–(s) added, 67 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995; paras. (b)–(g), (j), (m)–(p), (r), & (s) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.18 Patent issue fees.

- (a) Issue fee for issuing each original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....\$625.00
 - By other than a small entity 1,250.00
- (b) Issue fee for issuing a design patent:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....215.00
 - By other than a small entity 430.00
- (c) Issue fee for issuing a plant patent:
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)).....315.00
 - By other than a small entity 630.00

[Added 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 50 FR 31824, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; revised 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; revised, 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)–(c), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; revised, 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.19 Document supply fees.

The Patent and Trademark Office will supply copies of the following documents upon payment of the fees indicated:

- (a) Uncertified copies of patents:
 - (1) Printed copy of a patent, including a design patent, statutory invention registration, or defensive publication document, except plant or statutory invention registration containing color drawing:
 - (i) Regular service \$3.00
 - (ii) Overnight delivery to PTO Box or overnight fax 6.00
 - (iii) Expedited service for copy ordered by expedited mail or fax delivery service and delivered to the customer within two workdays 25.00
 - (2) Printed copy of a plant patent in color 12.00
 - (3) Copy of a utility patent or statutory invention registration containing color drawing (see § 1.84(a)(2)) 24.00
- (b) Certified and uncertified copies of Office documents:
 - (1) Certified or uncertified copy of patent application as filed:
 - (i) Regular service 15.00
 - (ii) Expedited regular service 30.00
 - (2) Certified or uncertified copy of patent-related file wrapper and contents 150.00
 - (3) Certified or uncertified copy of Office records, per document except as otherwise provided in this section ... 25.00
 - (4) For assignment records, abstract of title and certification, per patent 25.00
- (c) Library service (35 U.S.C. 13): For providing to libraries copies of all patents issued annually, per annum 50.00
- (d) For list of all United States patents and statutory invention registrations in a subclass 3.00



- (e) Uncertified statement as to status of the payment of maintenance fees due on a patent or expiration of a patent 10.00
- (f) Uncertified copy of a non-United States patent document, per document 25.00
- (g) To compare and certify copies made from Patent and Trademark Office records but not prepared by the Patent and Trademark Office, per copy of document 25.00
- (h) Additional filing receipts; duplicate; or corrected due to applicant 25.00

[Added 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; para. (b), 49 FR 552, Jan. 4, 1984, effective date Apr. 1, 1984; paras. (f) and (g) added, 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective date Nov. 1, 1984; paras. (a) and (c), 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31825, Aug. 6, 1985, effective date Oct. 5, 1985; revised 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; revised 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (b)(4), (f) and (h), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (a)(3), 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993; paras. (a)(1)(ii), (a)(1)(iii), (b)(1)(i), & (b)(1)(ii) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.20 Post-issuance fees.

- (a) For providing a certificate of correction for applicant's mistake (§ 1.323) \$100.00
- (b) Petition for correction of inventorship in patent (§ 1.324) 130.00
- (c) For filing a request for reexamination (§ 1.510(a)) 2,390.00
- (d) For filing each statutory disclaimer (§ 1.321):
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 55.00
 - By other than a small entity 110.00
- (e) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond four years; the fee is due by three years and six months after the original grant
 - By small entity (§ 1.9(f)) 495.00
 - By other than a small entity 990.00
- (f) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond eight years; the fee is due by seven years and six months after the original grant
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 995.00
 - By other than a small entity 1,990.00
- (g) For maintaining an original or reissue patent, except a design or plant patent, based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980, in force beyond twelve years; the fee is due by eleven years and six months after the original grant
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 1,495.00
 - By other than a small entity 2,990.00
- (h) Surcharge for paying a maintenance fee during the six-month grace period following the expiration of three years and six months, seven years and six months and eleven years and six months after the date of the original grant of a patent based on an application filed on or after December 12, 1980
 - By a small entity (§ 1.9(f))..... 65.00
 - By other than a small entity 130.00
- (i) Surcharge for accepting a maintenance fee after expiration of a patent for non-timely payment of a maintenance fee where the delay in payment is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been
 - (1) unavoidable..... 660.00
 - (2) unintentional 1,550.00
- (j) For filing an application for extension of the term of a patent
 - (1) Application for extension under § 1.740 \$1,060.00
 - (2) Initial application for interim extension under § 1.790 \$400.00
 - (3) Subsequent application for interim extension under § 1.790 \$200.00

[Added 47 FR 41273, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (k), (l) and (m) added, 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective date Nov. 1, 1984; paras. (c), (f), (g) and (m), 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31825, Aug. 6, 1985, effective date Oct. 5, 1985; 51 FR 28057, Aug. 4, 1986; 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987; paras. (a)-(n), 54 FR 6893,



Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 8053, Feb. 24, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; revised 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a), (c), (e)–(g) and (i), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (i), 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993; paras. (c), (e)–(g), (i)(1) and (j), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; para. (j) revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995; paras. (c), (e)–(g), (i)(2), & (j)(1) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.21 Miscellaneous fees and charges.

The Patent and Trademark Office has established the following fees for the services indicated:

- (a) Registration of attorneys and agents:
 - (1) For admission to examination for registration to practice: fee payable upon\$130.00
 - (2) On registration to practice 100.00
 - (3) For reinstatement to practice 15.00
 - (4) For certificate of good standing as an attorney or agent..... 10.00
Suitable for framing 20.00
 - (5) For review of decision of the Director of Enrollment and Discipline under § 10.2(c) 130.00
 - (6) For requesting regrading of an examination under § 10.7(c) 130.00
- (b) Deposit accounts:
 - (1) For establishing a deposit account..... 10.00
 - (2) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below \$1,000..... 25.00
 - (3) Service charge for each month when the balance at the end of the month is below \$300 for restricted subscription deposit accounts used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued 25.00
- (c) Disclosure document: For filing a disclosure document 10.00
- (d) Delivery box: Local delivery box rental, per annum 50.00
- (e) International-type search reports: For preparing an international-type search report of an international type search made at the time of the first action on the merits in a national patent application 40.00
- (f) [Reserved]
- (g) Self-service copy charge, per page 0.25
- (h) For recording each assignment, agreement, or other paper relating to the property in a patent or application, per property 40.00
- (i) Publication in Official Gazette: For publication in the Official Gazette of a notice of the availability of an application or a patent for licensing or sale, each application or patent 25.00
- (j) Labor charges for services, per hour or fraction thereof 30.00
- (k) For items and services, that the Commissioner finds may be supplied, for which fees are not specified by statute or by this part, such charges as may be determined by the Commissioner with respect to each such item or service Actual cost
- (l) For processing and retaining any application abandoned pursuant to § 1.53(d)(1) unless the required basic filing fee has been paid 130.00
- (m) For processing each check returned “unpaid” by a bank 50.00
- (n) For handling an incomplete or improper application under §§ 1.53(c), 1.60, or 1.62 130.00
- (o) Marginal cost, paid in advance, for each hour of terminal session time, including print time, using Automated Patent System full-text search capabilities, prorated for the actual time used. The Commissioner may waive the payment by an individual for access to the Automated Patent



System full-text search capability (APS-Text) upon a showing of need or hardship and if such waiver is in the public interest.....40.00

[Added 47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (b) and (l), 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, effective date Apr. 1, 1984; paras. (a)(5) and (6) added, 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective date Apr. 8, 1985; 50 FR 31825, Aug. 6, 1985, effective date Oct. 5, 1985; paras. (a), (b)(1), (d)-(j), (l)-(m), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 8053, Feb. 24, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (n) added 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990; paras. (o)-(q) added 54 FR 50942, Dec. 11, 1989, effective Feb. 12, 1990; paras. (a)-(c), (e)-(h), (j)-(l) & (n) amended, 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (p) and (q) deleted, 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)(1), (a)(5), (a)(6), (b)(2), (b)(3), (e) and (i), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (p) added, 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (p) deleted, 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; para. (l) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995; para. (a)(1) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.22 Fees payable in advance.

(a) Patent and trademark fees and charges payable to the Patent and Trademark Office are required to be paid in advance, that is, at the time of requesting any action by the Office for which a fee or charge is payable with the exception that under § 1.53 applications for patent may be assigned a filing date without payment of the basic filing fee.

(b) All patent and trademark fees paid to the Patent and Trademark Office should be itemized in each individual application, patent, or other proceeding in such a manner that it is clear for which purpose the fees are paid.

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.23 Method of payment.

All payments of money required for Patent and Trademark Office fees, including fees for the processing of international applications (§ 1.445), should be made in U.S. specie, Treasury notes, national bank notes, post office money orders, or by certified check. If sent in any other form, the Office may delay or cancel the credit until collection is made. Money orders and checks must be made payable to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. Remittances from foreign countries must be payable and immediately negotiable in the United States for the full amount of the fee required. Money sent by mail to the Patent and Trademark Office will be at the risk of the sender; letters containing money should be registered.

[43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978]

37 CFR 1.24 Coupons.

Coupons in denominations of three dollars, for the purchase of patents, designs, defensive publications, statutory invention registrations, and trademark registrations are sold by the Patent and Trademark Office for the convenience of the general public; these coupons may not be used for any other purpose. The three-dollar coupons are sold individually and in books of 50 for \$150.00. These coupons are good until used; they may be transferred but cannot be redeemed.

[47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983; 50 FR 31825, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; 51 FR 28057, Aug. 4, 1986; 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991]



37 CFR 1.25 Deposit accounts.

(a) For the convenience of attorneys, and the general public in paying any fees due, in ordering services offered by the Office, copies of records, etc. deposit accounts may be established in the Patent and Trademark Office upon payment of the fee for establishing a deposit account § 1.21(b)(1)). A minimum deposit of \$1,000 is required for paying any fee due or in ordering any services offered by the Office. However, a minimum deposit of \$300 may be paid to establish a restricted subscription deposit account used exclusively for subscription order of patent copies as issued. At the end of each month, a deposit account statement will be rendered. A remittance must be made promptly upon receipt of the statement to cover the value of items or services charged to the account and thus restore the account to its established normal deposit value. An amount sufficient to cover all fees, services, copies, etc., requested must always be on deposit. Charges to accounts with insufficient funds will not be accepted. A service charge (§ 1.21(b)(2)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below \$1,000. For restricted subscription deposit accounts, a service charge (§ 1.21(b)(3)) will be assessed for each month that the balance at the end of the month is below \$300.

(b) Filing, issue, appeal, international-type search report, international application processing, petition, and post-issuance fees may be charged against these accounts if sufficient funds are on deposit to cover such fees. A general authorization to charge all fees, or only certain fees, set forth in §§ 1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account containing sufficient funds may be filed in an individual application, either for the entire pendency of the application or with respect to a particular paper filed. An authorization to charge to a deposit account the fee for a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510 and any other fees required in a reexamination proceeding in a patent may also be filed with the request for reexamination. An authorization to charge a fee to a deposit account will not be considered payment of the fee on the date the authorization to charge the fee is effective as to the particular fee to be charged unless sufficient funds are present in the account to cover the fee.

[49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985]

37 CFR 1.26 Refunds.

(a) Money paid by actual mistake or in excess will be refunded, but a mere change of purpose after the payment of money, as when a party desires to withdraw an application, an appeal, or a request for oral hearing, will not entitle a party to demand such a return. Amounts of twenty-five dollars or less will not be returned unless specifically requested within a reasonable time, nor will the payer be notified of such amount; amounts over twenty-five dollars may be returned by check or, if requested, by credit to a deposit account.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) If the Commissioner decides not to institute a reexamination proceeding, a refund of \$1,690 will be made to the requester of the proceeding. Reexamination requesters should indicate whether any refund should be made by check or by credit to a deposit account.

[47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 50 FR 31826 Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; para. (c), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (c), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a) and (c), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992]

37 CFR 1.27 Statement of status as small entity.

(a) Any person seeking to establish status as a small entity (§ 1.9(f) of this part) for purposes of paying fees in an application or a patent must file a verified statement in the application or patent prior to or with the first fee paid as a small entity. Such a verified statement need only be filed once in an application or patent and remains in effect until changed.



(b) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of an independent inventor must be signed by the independent inventor except as provided in §§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47 of this part and must aver that the inventor qualifies as an independent inventor in accordance with § 1.9(c) of this part. Where there are joint inventors in an application, each inventor must file a verified statement establishing status as an independent inventor in order to qualify as a small entity. Where any rights have been assigned, granted, conveyed, or licensed, or there is an obligation to assign, grant, convey, or license, any rights to a small business concern, a nonprofit organization, or any other individual, a verified statement must be filed by the individual, the owner of the small business concern, or an official of the small business concern or nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the small business concern or nonprofit organization averring to their status. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license as set forth in § 1.9 of this part.

(c) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a small business concern must

- (1) be signed by the owner or an official of the small business concern empowered to act on behalf of the concern;
- (2) aver that the concern qualifies as a small business concern as defined in § 1.9(d); and
- (3) aver that exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the small business concern or, if the rights are not exclusive, that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in § 1.9.

Where the rights of the small business concern as a small entity are not exclusive, a verified statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights averring to their status as such. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a license as set forth in § 1.9 of this part.

(d) Any verified statement filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section on behalf of a nonprofit organization must

- (1) be signed by an official of the nonprofit organization empowered to act on behalf of the organization;
- (2) aver that the organization qualifies as a nonprofit organization as defined in § 1.9(e) of this part specifying under which one of § 1.9(e)(1), (2), (3), or (4) of this part the organization qualifies; and
- (3) aver that exclusive rights to the invention have been conveyed to and remain with the organization or if the rights are not exclusive that all other rights belong to small entities as defined in § 1.9 of this part.

Where the rights of the nonprofit organization as a small entity are not exclusive, a verified statement must also be filed by the other small entities having rights averring to their status as such. For purposes of a verified statement under this paragraph, a license to a Federal agency resulting from a funding agreement with that agency pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(4) does not constitute a conveyance of rights as set forth in this paragraph.

[47 FR 40139, Sept. 10, 1982, added effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (c) added, 47 FR 43276, Sept. 30, 1982; paras. (b), (c), and (d), 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984]

37 CFR 1.28 Effect on fees of failure to establish status, or change status, as a small entity.

(a) The failure to establish status as a small entity (§§ 1.9(f) and 1.27 of this part) in any application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, any fee precludes payment of the fee in the amount established for small entities. A refund pursuant to § 1.26 of this part, based on establishment of small entity status, of a portion of fees timely paid in full prior to establishing status as a small entity may only be obtained if a verified statement under § 1.27 and a request for a refund of the excess amount are filed within two months of the date of the timely payment of the full fee. The two-month time period is not extendable under § 1.136. Status as a small entity is waived for any fee by the failure to establish the status prior to paying, at the time of paying, or within two months of the date of payment of, the fee. Status as a small entity must be specifically established in each application or patent in which the status is available and desired. Status as a small entity in one application or patent does not affect any other application or patent, including applications or patents which are directly or indirectly dependent upon the application or patent in which the status has been established. A nonprovisional application claiming benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, or 365(c) of a prior application may rely on a verified statement filed in the prior application if the nonprovisional application includes a reference to the verified statement in the prior application or includes a copy of the verified statement in the prior application and status as a small entity is still proper and desired. Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, the status remains in that application or patent without the filing of a further verified statement pursuant to § 1.27 of this part unless the Office is notified of a change in status.

(b) Once status as a small entity has been established in an application or patent, fees as a small entity may thereafter be paid in that application or patent without regard to a change in status until the issue fee is due or any maintenance fee is due. Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in the application or patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest of the issue fee or any maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate pursuant to § 1.9 of this part. The notification of change in status may be signed by the applicant, any person authorized to sign on behalf of the assignee, or an attorney or agent of record or acting in a representative capacity pursuant to § 1.34(a) of this part.

(c) If status as a small entity is established in good faith, and fees as a small entity are paid in good faith, in any application or patent, and it is later discovered that such status as a small entity was established in error or that through error the Office was not notified of a change in status as required by paragraph (b) of this section, the error will be excused

- (1) if any deficiency between the amount paid and the amount due is paid within three months after the date the error occurred or
- (2) if any deficiency between the amount paid and the amount due is paid more than three months after the date the error occurred and the payment is accompanied by a statement explaining how the error in good faith occurred and how and when the error was discovered. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The deficiency is based on the amount of the fee, for other than a small entity, in effect at the time the deficiency is paid in full.

(d)

- (1) Any attempt to fraudulently
 - (i) establish status as a small entity or
 - (ii) pay fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.
- (2) Improperly and with intent to deceive
 - (i) establishing status as a small entity or
 - (ii) paying fees as a small entity shall be considered as a fraud practiced or attempted on the Office.

[47 FR 40140, Sept. 10, 1982, added effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 553, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984, para. (d)(2), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (c) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]



SUBPART B—NATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS

PROSECUTION OF APPLICATION AND APPOINTMENT OF ATTORNEY OR AGENT

37 CFR 1.31 Applicants may be represented by a registered attorney or agent.

An applicant for patent may file and prosecute his or her own case, or he or she may be represented by a registered attorney, registered agent, or other individual authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in patent cases. See § 10.6 and § 10.9 of this subchapter. The Patent and Trademark Office cannot aid in the selection of a registered attorney or agent.

[50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.32 [Reserved]

[Deleted 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.33 Correspondence respecting patent applications, reexamination proceedings, and other proceedings.

(a) The residence and post office address of the applicant must appear in the oath or declaration if not stated elsewhere in the application. The applicant may also specify and an attorney or agent of record may specify a correspondence address to which communications about the application are to be directed. All notices, official letters, and other communications in the case will be directed to the correspondence address or, if no such correspondence address is specified, to an attorney or agent of record (see § 1.34(b)), or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the applicant, or to any assignee of record of the entire interest if the applicant or such assignee so requests, or to an assignee of an undivided part if the applicant so requests, at the post office address of which the Office has been notified in the case. Amendments and other papers filed in the application must be signed:

- (1) by the applicant, or
- (2) if there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or
- (3) if there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or
- (4) by an attorney or agent of record, or
- (5) by a registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of § 1.34(a).

Double correspondence with an applicant and his attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more than one attorney or agent be made of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the one last made of record.

(b) An applicant who has not made of record a registered attorney or agent may be required to state whether he received assistance in the preparation or prosecution of his application, for which any compensation or consideration was given or charged, and if so, to disclose the name or names of the person or persons providing such assistance. This includes the preparation for the applicant of the specification and amendments or other papers to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office, as well as other assistance in such matters, but does not include merely making drawings by draftsmen or stenographic services in typing papers.

(c) All notices, official letters, and other communications for the patent owner or owners in a reexamination proceeding will be directed to the attorney or agent of record (see § 1.34(b)) in the patent file at the address listed on the register of patent attorneys and agents maintained pursuant to § 10.5 and § 10.11 or, if no attorney or agent is of record, to the patent owner or owners at the address or addresses of record. Amendments and other papers filed in a reexamination proceeding on behalf of the patent owner must be signed by the patent owner, or if there is more than one owner by all the owners, or by an attorney or agent of record in the patent file, or by a registered attorney or agent not of record who acts in a representative capacity under the provisions of § 1.34(a). Double correspondence with the patent owner or owners and the patent owner's attorney or agent, or with more than one attorney or agent, will not be undertaken. If more

than one attorney or agent is of record and a correspondence address has not been specified, correspondence will be held with the last attorney or agent made of record.

(d) A “correspondence address” or change thereto may be filed with the Patent and Trademark Office during the enforceable life of the patent. The “correspondence address” will be used in any correspondence relating to maintenance fees unless a separate “fee address” has been specified. See § 1.363 for “fee address” used solely for maintenance fee purposes.

[36 FR 12617, July 2, 1971; 46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; para. (d) added, 49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, effective Nov. 1, 1984; para. (c), 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.34 Recognition for representation.

(a) When a registered attorney or agent acting in a representative capacity appears in person or signs a paper in practice before the Patent and Trademark Office in a patent case, his or her personal appearance or signature shall constitute a representation to the Patent and Trademark Office that under the provisions of this subchapter and the law, he or she is authorized to represent the particular party in whose behalf he or she acts. In filing such a paper, the registered attorney or agent should specify his or her registration number with his or her signature. Further proof of authority to act in a representative capacity may be required.

(b) When an attorney or agent shall have filed his or her power of attorney, or authorization, duly executed by the person or persons entitled to prosecute an application or a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding, he or she is a principal attorney of record in the case. A principal attorney or agent, so appointed, may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record.

[46 FR 29181, May 29, 1981; para. (a), 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 6, 1985]

37 CFR 1.36 Revocation of power of attorney or authorization; withdrawal of attorney or agent.

A power of attorney or authorization of agent may be revoked at any stage in the proceedings of a case, and an attorney or agent may withdraw, upon application to and approval by the Commissioner. An attorney or agent, except an associate attorney or agent whose address is the same as that of the principal attorney or agent, will be notified of the revocation of the power of attorney or authorization, and the applicant or patent owner will be notified of the withdrawal of the attorney or agent. An assignment will not of itself operate as a revocation of a power or authorization previously given, but the assignee of the entire interest may revoke previous powers and be represented by an attorney or agent of the assignee’s own selection. See § 1.613(d) for withdrawal of an attorney or agent of record in an interference.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

WHO MAY APPLY FOR A PATENT

37 CFR 1.41 Applicant for patent.

(a) A patent must be applied for in the name of the actual inventor or inventors. Full names must be stated, including the family name, and at least one given name without abbreviation together with any other given name or initial.

(b) Unless the contrary is indicated the word “applicant” when used in these sections refers to the inventor or joint inventors who are applying for a patent, or to the person mentioned in §§ 1.42, 1.43 or 1.47 who is applying for a patent in place of the inventor.

(c) Any person authorized by the applicant may file an application for patent on behalf of the inventor or inventors, but an oath or declaration for the application (§ 1.63) can only be made in accordance with § 1.64.

(d) A showing may be required from the person filing the application that the filing was authorized where such authorization comes into question.

[48 FR 2708, Jan. 20, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983]

37 CFR 1.42 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent. Where

the inventor dies during the time intervening between the filing of the application and the granting of a patent thereon, the letters patent may be issued to the legal representative upon proper intervention.

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.43 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may make the necessary oath or declaration, and apply for and obtain the patent.

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.44 Proof of authority.

In the cases mentioned in §§ 1.42 and 1.43, proof of the power or authority of the legal representative must be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office or filed in the application before the grant of a patent.

37 CFR 1.45 Joint inventors.

(a) Joint inventors must apply for a patent jointly and each must make the required oath or declaration; neither of them alone, nor less than the entire number, can apply for a patent for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in § 1.47.

(b) Inventors may apply for a patent jointly even though

- (1) They did not physically work together or at the same time,
- (2) Each inventor did not make the same amount of contribution, or
- (3) Each inventor did not make a contribution to the subject matter of every claim of the application.

(c) If multiple inventors are named in a nonprovisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter of at least one claim of the application and the application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116. If multiple inventors are named in a provisional application, each named inventor must have made a contribution, individually or jointly, to the subject matter disclosed in the provisional application and the provisional application will be considered to be a joint application under 35 U.S.C. 116.

[paras. (b) and (c), 47 FR 41274, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (c) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.46 Assigned inventions and patents.

In case the whole or a part interest in the invention or in the patent to be issued is assigned, the application must still be made or authorized to be made, and an oath or declaration signed, by the inventor or one of the persons mentioned in §§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47. However, the patent may be issued to the assignee or jointly to the inventor and the assignee as provided in § 3.81.

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.47 Filing when an inventor refuses to sign or cannot be reached.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an application for patent or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the application may be made by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the omitted inventor. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts and by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)) and must state the last known address of the omitted inventor. The Patent and Trademark Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the omitted inventor at said address. Should such notice be returned to the Office undelivered, or should the address of the omitted inventor be unknown, notice of the filing of the application shall be published in the Official Gazette. The omitted inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration of the character required by § 1.63. A patent may be granted to the inventor making the application, upon a showing satisfactory to the Commissioner, subject to the same rights which the omitted inventor would have had if he or she had been joined.

(b) Whenever an inventor refuses to execute an application for patent, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom the inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention or who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter justifying such action may

make application for patent on behalf of and as agent for the inventor. The oath or declaration in such an application must be accompanied by a petition including proof of the pertinent facts and a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage, and by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)) and must state the last known address of the inventor. The assignment, written agreement to assign or other evidence of proprietary interest, or a verified copy thereof, must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. The Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the inventor at the address stated in the application. Should such notice be returned to the Office undelivered, or should the address of the inventor be unknown, notice of the filing of the application shall be published in the Official Gazette. The inventor may subsequently join in the application on filing an oath or declaration of the character required by § 1.63. A patent may be granted to the inventor upon a showing satisfactory to the Commissioner.

[47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.48 Correction of inventorship.

(a) If the correct inventor or inventors are not named in a nonprovisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the application may be amended to name only the actual inventor or inventors. Such amendment must be diligently made and must be accompanied by:

- (1) a petition including a statement of facts verified by the original named inventor or inventors establishing when the error without deceptive intention was discovered and how it occurred;
- (2) an oath or declaration by each actual inventor or inventors as required by § 1.63;
- (3) the fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and
- (4) the written consent of any assignee. When the application is involved in an interference, the petition shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

(b) If the correct inventors are named in the nonprovisional application when filed and the prosecution of the application results in the amendment or cancellation of claims so that less than all of the originally named inventors are the actual inventors of the invention being claimed in the application, an amendment shall be filed deleting the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed. The amendment must be diligently made and shall be accompanied by:

- (1) A petition including a statement identifying each named inventor who is being deleted and acknowledging that the inventor's invention is no longer being claimed in the application; and
- (2) The fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

(c) If a nonprovisional application discloses unclaimed subject matter by an inventor or inventors not named in the application, the application may be amended pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section to add claims to the subject matter and name the correct inventors for the application.

(d) If the name or names of an inventor or inventors were omitted in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the provisional application may be amended to add the name or names of the actual inventor or inventors. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

- (1) a petition including a statement that the error occurred without deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, which statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office; and
- (2) the fee set forth in § 1.17(q).

(e) If a person or persons were named as an inventor or inventors in a provisional application through error without any deceptive intention, an amendment may be filed in the provisional application deleting the name or names of the person or persons who were erroneously named. Such amendment must be accompanied by:

- (1) a petition including a statement of facts verified by the person or persons whose name or names are being deleted establishing that the error occurred without deceptive intention;

- (2) the fee set forth in § 1.17(q); and
- (3) the written consent of any assignee.

[48 FR 270-9, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (a), 57 FR 56446, Nov. 30, 1992, effective Jan. 4, 1993; revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

THE APPLICATION

37 CFR 1.51 General requisites of an application.

- (a) Applications for patents must be made to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

- (1) A complete application filed under § 1.53(b)(1) comprises:

- (i) A specification, including a claim or claims, see §§ 1.71 to 1.77;
- (ii) An oath or declaration, see §§ 1.63 and 1.68;
- (iii) Drawings, when necessary, see §§ 1.81 to 1.85; and
- (iv) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

- (2) A complete provisional application filed under § 1.53(b)(2) comprises:

- (i) A cover sheet identifying:

- (A) The application as a provisional application,
- (B) The name or names of the inventor or inventors, (see § 1.41),
- (C) The residence of each named inventor,
- (D) The title of the invention,
- (E) The name and registration number of the attorney or agent (if applicable),
- (F) The docket number used by the person filing the application to identify the application (if applicable),
- (G) The correspondence address, and
- (H) The name of the U.S. Government agency and Government contract number (if the invention was made by an agency of the U.S. Government or under a contract with an agency of the U.S. Government);

- (ii) A specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, see § 1.71;
- (iii) Drawings, when necessary, see §§ 1.81 to 1.85; and
- (iv) The prescribed filing fee, see § 1.16.

(b) Applicants are encouraged to file an information disclosure statement in nonprovisional applications. See §§ 1.97 and 1.98. No information disclosure statement may be filed in a provisional application.

(c) Applicants may desire and are permitted to file with, or in, the application or authorization to charge, at any time during the pendency of the application, any fees required under any of §§ 1.16 to 1.18 to a deposit account established and maintained in accordance with § 1.25.

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977; paras. (a) and (c), 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (a) and (b), 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (b), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; paras. (a) & (b) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.52 Language, paper, writing, margins.

(a) The application, any amendments or corrections thereto, and the oath or declaration must be in the English language except as provided for in § 1.69 and paragraph (d) of this section, or be accompanied by a verified translation of the application and a translation of any corrections or amendments into the English language. All papers which are to become apart of the permanent records of the Patent and Trademark Office must be legibly written, typed, or printed in permanent ink or its equivalent in quality. All of the application papers must be presented in a form having sufficient clarity and contrast between the paper and the writing, typing, or printing thereon to permit the direct production of readily legible copies in any number by use of photographic, electrostatic, photo-offset, and microfilming processes. If the papers are not of the required quality, substitute typewritten or printed papers of suitable quality may be required.

(b) The application papers (specification, including claims, abstract, oath or declaration, and papers as provided for in §§ 1.42, 1.43, 1.47, etc.) and also papers subsequently filed, must be plainly written on but one side of the paper. The size of all sheets of paper should be 8 to 8 1/2 by 10 1/2 to 13 inches (20.3 to 21.6 cm. by 26.6 to 33.0 cm.) A margin of at least approximately 1 inch (2.5 cm.) must be reserved on the left-hand of each page. The top of each page of the application, including claims must have a margin of at least approximately 3/4 inch (2 cm.). The lines must not be crowded too closely together; typewritten lines should be 1 1/2 or double spaced. The pages of the application including claims and abstract should be numbered consecutively, starting with 1, the numbers being centrally located above or preferably, below, the text.

(c) Any interlineation, erasure, cancellation or other alteration of the application papers filed should be made before the signing of any accompanying oath or declaration pursuant to § 1.63 referring to those application papers and should be dated and initialed or signed by the applicant on the same sheet of paper. Application papers containing alterations made after the signing of an oath or declaration referring to those application papers must be supported by a supplemental oath or declaration under § 1.67(c). After the signing of the oath or declaration referring to the application papers, amendments may only be made in the manner provided by ww 1.121 and 1.123 through 1.125.

(d) An application may be filed in a language other than English. A verified English translation of the non-English language application and the fee set forth in § 1.17(k) are required to be filed with the application or within such time as may be set by the Office.

[43 FR 20462, May 11, 1978; paras. (a) and (d), 47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (c), 48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (d), 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (c), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.53 Application number, filing date, and completion of application.

(a) Any application for a patent received in the Patent and Trademark Office will be assigned an application number for identification purposes.

(b)

- (1) The filing date of an application for patent filed under this section, except for a provisional application, is the date on which: a specification containing a description pursuant to § 1.71 and at least one claim pursuant to § 1.75; and any drawing required by § 1.81(a), are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in the name of the actual inventor or inventors as required by § 1.41. No new matter may be introduced into an application after its filing date (§ 1.118). If all the names of the actual inventor or inventors are not supplied when the specification and any required drawing are filed, the application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the names are supplied unless a petition with the fee set forth in (§ 1.17(i) is filed which sets forth the reasons the delay in supplying the names should be excused. A continuation or divisional application (filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 or 121 and § 1.78(a)) may be filed under this section, § 1.60 or § 1.62. A continuation-in-part application may be filed under this section or § 1.62.
- (2) The filing date of a provisional application is the date on which: a specification as prescribed by 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph; and any drawing required by § 1.81(a), are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in the name of the actual inventor or inventors as required by § 1.41. No amendment, other than to make the provisional application comply with all applicable regulations, may be made to the provisional application after the filing date of the provisional application. If all the names of the actual inventor or inventors are not supplied when the specification and any required drawing are filed, the provisional application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the names are supplied unless a petition with the fee set forth in § 1.17(q) is filed which sets forth the reasons the delay in supplying the names should be excused.
 - (i) A provisional application must also include a cover sheet identifying the application as a provisional application. Otherwise, the application will be treated as an application filed under § 1.53(b)(1).

- (ii) An application for patent filed under § 1.53(b)(1) may be treated as a provisional application and be accorded the original filing date provided that a petition requesting the conversion, with the fee set forth in § 1.17(q), is filed prior to the earlier of the abandonment of the § 1.53(b)(1) application, the payment of the issue fee, the expiration of 12 months after the filing date of the § 1.53(b)(1) application, or the filing of a request for a statutory invention registration under § 1.293. The grant of any such petition will not entitle applicant to a refund of the fees which were properly paid in the application filed under § 1.53(b)(1).
- (iii) A provisional application shall not be entitled to the right of priority under § 1.55 or 35 U.S.C. 119 or 365(a) or to the benefit of an earlier filing date under § 1.78 or 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 or 365(c) of any other application. No claim for priority under § 1.78(a)(3) may be made in a design application based on a provisional application. No request under § 1.293 for a statutory invention registration may be filed in a provisional application. The requirements of §§ 1.821–1.825 regarding application disclosures containing nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are not mandatory for provisional applications.

(c) If any application is filed without the specification, drawing or name, or names, of the actual inventor or inventors required by paragraph (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section, applicant will be so notified and given a time period within which to submit the omitted specification, drawing, name, or names, of the actual inventor, or inventors, in order to obtain a filing date as of the date of filing of such submission. A copy of the “Notice of Incomplete Application” form notifying the applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the omission is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n). Any request for review of a refusal to accord an application a filing date must be by way of a petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i), if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(1), or by the fee set forth in § 1.17(q), if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(2).

(d)

- (1) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b)(1) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or an oath or declaration by the applicant, applicant will be so notified, if a correspondence address has been provided and given a period of time within which to file the fee, oath, or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. A copy of the “Notice to File Missing Parts” form mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, or if the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) is not paid within one year of the date of mailing of the notification required by this paragraph, the application will be disposed of. No copies will be provided or certified by the Office of an application which has been disposed of or in which neither the required basic filing fee nor the processing and retention fee has been paid. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, oath or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application; or, if no basic filing fee has been paid, one year from the filing date to pay the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) to prevent disposal of the application.
- (2) If a provisional application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (b)(2) of this section does not include the appropriate filing fee or the cover sheet required by § 1.51(a)(2), applicant will be so notified if a correspondence address has been provided and given a period of time within which to file the fee, cover sheet and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(l) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. A copy of the “Notice to File Missing Parts” form mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office. If the required filing fee is not timely paid, the application will be disposed of. No copies will be provided or certified by the Office of an application which has been disposed of or in which the required basic

filing fee has not been paid. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section. If no correspondence address is included in the application, applicant has two months from the filing date to file the basic filing fee, cover sheet and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(l) in order to prevent abandonment of the application.

(e)

- (1) An application for a patent filed under paragraph (b)(1) of this section will not be placed upon the files for examination until all its required parts, complying with the rules relating thereto, are received, except that certain minor informalities may be waived subject to subsequent correction whenever required.
- (2) A provisional application for a patent filed under paragraph (b)(2) of this section will not be placed upon the files for examination and will become abandoned no later than twelve months after its filing date pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 111(b)(1).

(f) The filing date of an international application designating the United States of America shall be treated as the filing date in the United States of America under PCT Article 11(3), except as provided in 35 U.S.C. 102(e).

[48 FR 2709, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; paras. (b) and (d), 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (c), 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; paras. (c) and (d), 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; paras. (b) and (c), 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990; paras. (a)–(e) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.54 Parts of application to be filed together; filing receipt.

(a) It is desirable that all parts of the complete application be deposited in the Office together; otherwise a letter must accompany each part, accurately and clearly connecting it with the other parts of the application. See § 1.53 with regard to completion of an application.

(b) Applicant will be informed of the application serial number and filing date by a filing receipt.

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.55 Claim for foreign priority.

(a) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may claim the benefit of the filing date of one or more prior foreign applications under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(a)–(d) and 172. The claim to priority need be in no special form and may be made by the attorney or agent if the foreign application is referred to in the oath or declaration as required by § 1.63. The claim for priority and the certified copy of the foreign application specified in 35 U.S.C. 119(b) must be filed in the case of an interference (§ 1.630), when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner, when specifically required by the examiner, and in all other cases, before the patent is granted. If the claim for priority or the certified copy of the foreign application is filed after the date the issue fee is paid, it must be accompanied by a petition requesting entry and by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). If the certified copy filed is not in the English language, a translation need not be filed except in the case of interference; or when necessary to overcome the date of a reference relied upon by the examiner; or when specifically required by the examiner, in which event an English language translation must be filed together with a statement that the translation of the certified copy is accurate. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An applicant in a nonprovisional application may under certain circumstances claim priority on the basis of one or more applications for an inventor's certificate in a country granting both inventor's certificates and patents. To claim the right of priority on the basis of an application for an inventor's certificate in such a country under 35 U.S.C. 119(d), the applicant when submitting a claim for such right as specified in paragraph (a) of this section, shall include an affidavit or declaration. The affidavit or declaration must include a specific statement that, upon an investigation, he or she is satisfied that to the best of his or her knowledge, the applicant, when filing the application for the inventor's certificate, had the option to file an application for either a patent or an inventor's certificate as to the subject matter of the identified claim or claims forming the basis for the claim of priority.

[para. (b), 48 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1 1982; 48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (b), 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a), 54 FR 47518, Nov. 15, 1989, effective

Jan. 16, 1990; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994; revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.56 Duty to disclose information material to patentability.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective patent examination occurs when, at the time an application is being examined, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability. Each individual associated with the filing and prosecution of a patent application has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability as defined in this section. The duty to disclose information exists with respect to each pending claim until the claim is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration, or the application becomes abandoned. Information material to the patentability of a claim that is cancelled or withdrawn from consideration need not be submitted if the information is not material to the patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the application. There is no duty to submit information which is not material to the patentability of any existing claim. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim issued in a patent was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in the manner prescribed by §§ 1.97(b)–(d) and 1.98. However, no patent will be granted on an application in connection with which fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct. The Office encourages applicants to carefully examine:

- (1) prior art cited in search reports of a foreign patent office in a counterpart application, and
- (2) the closest information over which individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application believe any pending claim patentably defines, to make sure that any material information contained therein is disclosed to the Office.

(b) Under this section, information is material to patentability when it is not cumulative to information already of record or being made of record in the application, and

- (1) It establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or
- (2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes in:
 - (i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or
 - (ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

(c) Individuals associated with the filing or prosecution of a patent application within the meaning of this section are:

- (1) Each inventor named in the application;
- (2) Each attorney or agent who prepares or prosecutes the application; and
- (3) Every other person who is substantively involved in the preparation or prosecution of the application and who is associated with the inventor, with the assignee or with anyone to whom there is an obligation to assign the application.

(d) Individuals other than the attorney, agent or inventor may comply with this section by disclosing information to the attorney, agent, or inventor.

[42 FR 5593, Jan. 28, 1977; paras. (d) & (e)–(i), 47 FR 21751, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; para. (c), 48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; paras. (b) and (j), 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; paras. (d) and (h), 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (e), 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.57 [Reserved]

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.58 Chemical and mathematical formulas and tables.

(a) The specification, including the claims, may contain chemical and mathematical formulas, but shall not contain drawings or flow diagrams. The description portion of the specification may contain tables; claims may contain tables either if necessary to conform to 35 U.S.C. 112 or if otherwise found to be desirable.

(b) All tables and chemical and mathematical formulas in the specification, including claims, and amendments thereto, must be on paper which is flexible, strong, white, smooth, non-shiny, and durable in order to permit use as camera copy when printing any patent which may issue. A good grade of bond paper is acceptable; watermarks should not be prominent. India ink or its equivalent, or solid black typewriter, should be used to secure perfectly black solid lines.

(c) To facilitate camera copying when printing, the width of formulas and tables as presented should be limited normally to 5 inches (12.7 cm.) so that it may appear as a single column in the printed patent. If it is not possible to limit the width of a formula or table to 5 inches (12.7 cm.), it is permissible to present the formula or table with a maximum width of 10 3/4 inches (27.3 cm.) and to place it sideways on the sheet. Typewritten characters used in such formulas and tables must be from a block (nonscript) type font or lettering style having capital letters which are at least 0.08 inch (2.1 mm.) high (e.g., elite type). Hand lettering must be neat, clean, and have a minimum character height of 0.08 inch (2.1 mm.). A space at least 1/4 inch (6.4 mm.) high should be provided between complex formulas and tables and the text. Tables should have the lines and columns of data closely spaced to conserve space, consistent with high degree of legibility.

[43 FR 20463, May 11, 1978]

37 CFR 1.59 Papers of application with filing date not to be returned.

Papers in an application which has received a filing date pursuant to § 1.53 will not be returned for any purpose whatever. If applicants have not preserved copies of the papers, the Office will furnish copies at the usual cost of any application in which either the required basic filing fee (§ 1.16) or, if the application was filed under § 1.53(b)(1), the processing and retention fee § 1.21(1) has been paid. See § 1.618 for return of unauthorized and improper papers in interferences.

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.60 Continuation or divisional application for invention disclosed in a prior nonprovisional application.

(a) [RESERVED]

(b) An applicant may omit signing of the oath or declaration in a continuation or divisional application (filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 or 121 and § 1.78(a)) if:

- (1) the prior application was a nonprovisional application and a complete application as set forth in § 1.51(a)(1);
- (2) applicant indicates that the application is being filed pursuant to this section and files a true copy of the prior complete application as filed including the specification (with claims), drawings, oath or declaration showing the signature or an indication it was signed, and any amendments referred to in the oath or declaration filed to complete the prior application;
- (3) the inventors named in the continuation or divisional application are the same or less than all the inventors named in the prior application; and
- (4) the application is filed before the patenting, or abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application. The copy of the prior application must be accompanied by a statement that the application papers filed are a true copy of the prior complete application. Such statement must be by the applicant or applicant's attorney or agent and must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. Only amendments reducing the number of claims or adding a reference to the prior application (§ 1.78(a)) will be entered before calculating the filing fee and granting the filing date. If the continuation or divisional application is filed by less than all the inventors named in the prior application, a

statement must accompany the application when filed requesting deletion of the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the continuation or divisional application. Except as provided in paragraph (d) of this section, if a true copy of the prior application as filed is not filed with the application or if the statement that the application papers are a true copy is omitted, the application will not be given a filing date earlier than the date upon which the copy and statement are filed, unless a petition with the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) is filed which satisfactorily explains the delay in filing these items.

(c) If an application filed pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section is incomplete for reasons other than those specified in paragraph (d) of this section, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to complete the application in order to obtain a filing date as of the date of filing the omitted item provided the omitted item is filed before the patenting or abandonment of or termination of proceedings on the prior application. If the omission is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n).

(d) If an application filed pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section is otherwise complete, but does not include the appropriate filing fee or a true copy of the oath or declaration from the prior complete application, showing the signature or an indication it was signed, a filing date will be granted and applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the fee, or the true copy of the oath or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 554, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 50 FR 9379, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; paras. (a), (b) and (c), 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990; paras. (b) and (c) revised, para. (d) added, 57 FR 56446, Nov. 30, 1992, effective Jan. 4, 1993; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.61 [Reserved]

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

37 CFR 1.62 File wrapper continuing procedure.

(a) A continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application, which uses the specification, drawings and oath or declaration from a prior nonprovisional application which is complete as defined by § 1.51(a)(1), and which is to be abandoned, may be filed under this section before the payment of the issue fee, abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application, or after payment of the issue fee if a petition under § 1.313(b)(5) is granted in the prior application. The filing date of an application filed under this section is the date on which a request is filed for an application under this section including identification of the application number and the names of the inventors named in the prior complete application. If the continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application is filed by less than all the inventors named in the prior application a statement must accompany the application when filed requesting deletion of the names of the person or persons who are not inventors of the invention being claimed in the continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application.

(b) The filing fee for a continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application under this section is based on the number of claims remaining in the application after entry of any preliminary amendment and entry of any amendments under § 1.116 unentered in the prior application which applicant has requested to be entered in the continuing application.

(c) In the case of a continuation-in-part application which adds and claims additional disclosure by amendment, an oath or declaration as required by § 1.63 must also be filed. In those situations where a new oath or declaration is required due to additional subject matter being claimed, additional inventors may be named in the continuing application. In a continuation or divisional application which discloses and claims only subject matter disclosed in a prior application, no additional oath or declaration is required and the application must name as inventors the same or less than all the inventors named in the prior application.

(d) If an application which has been accorded a filing date pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section does not include the appropriate basic filing fee pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section, or an oath or declaration by the applicant in the case of a continuation-in-part application pursuant to paragraph (c) of this



section, applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the fee, oath, or declaration and to pay the surcharge as set forth in § 1.16(e) in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The notification pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification of a defect pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section.

(e) An application filed under this section will utilize the file wrapper and contents of the prior application to constitute the new continuation, continuation-in-part, or divisional application but will be assigned a new application number. Changes to the prior application must be made in the form of an amendment to the prior application as it exists at the time of filing the application under this section. No copy of the prior application or new specification is required. The filing of such a copy or specification will be considered improper, and a filing date as of the date of deposit of the request for an application under this section will not be granted to the application unless a petition with the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) is filed with instructions to cancel the copy or specification.

(f) The filing of an application under this section will be construed to include a waiver of secrecy by the applicant under 35 U.S.C. 122 to the extent that any member of the public who is entitled under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.14 to access to, or information concerning either the prior application or any continuing application filed under the provisions of this section may be given similar access to, or similar information concerning, the other application(s) in the file wrapper.

(g) The filing of a request for a continuing application under this section will be considered to be a request to expressly abandon the prior application as of the filing date granted the continuing application.

(h) The applicant is urged to furnish the following information relating to the prior and continuing applications to the best of his or her ability:

- (1) Title as originally filed and as last amended;
- (2) Name of applicant as originally filed and as last amended;
- (3) Current correspondence address of applicant;
- (4) Identification of prior foreign application and any priority claim under 35 U.S.C. 119.
- (5) The title of the invention and names of applicants to be named in the continuing application.

(i) Envelopes containing only application papers and fees for filing under this section should be marked "Box FWC".

(j) If any application filed under this section is found to be improper, the applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to correct the filing error in order to obtain a filing date as of the date the filing error is corrected provided the correction is made before the payment of the issue fee, abandonment of, or termination of proceedings on the prior application. If the filing error is not corrected within the time period set, the application will be returned or otherwise disposed of; the fee, if submitted, will be refunded less the handling fee set forth in § 1.21(n).

[47 FR 47244, Oct. 25, 1982, added effective Feb. 27, 1983; 48 FR 2710, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983; paras. (a) and (d), 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; paras. (a), (c), and (h), 50 FR 9380, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; paras. (e) and (j), 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990; paras. (a) and (e) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

OATH OR DECLARATION

37 CFR 1.63 Oath or declaration.

(a) An oath or declaration filed under § 1.51(a)(1)(ii) as a part of a nonprovisional application must:

- (1) Be executed in accordance with either § 1.66 or § 1.68;
- (2) Identify the specification to which it is directed;
- (3) Identify each inventor and the residence and country of citizenship of each inventor; and
- (4) State whether the inventor is a sole or joint inventor of the invention claimed.

(b) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraph (a), the oath or declaration must state that the person making the oath or declaration:

- (1) Has reviewed and understands the contents of the specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment specifically referred to in the oath or declaration;
- (2) Believes the named inventor or inventors to be the original and first inventor or inventors of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought; and
- (3) Acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

(c) In addition to meeting the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the oath or declaration in any application in which a claim for foreign priority is made pursuant to § 1.55 must identify the foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate on which priority is claimed and any foreign application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed, by specifying the application number, country, day, month, and year of its filing.

(d) In any continuation-in-part application filed under the conditions specified in 35 U.S.C. 120 which discloses and claims subject matter in addition to that disclosed in the prior copending application, the oath or declaration must also state that the person making the oath or declaration acknowledges the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to the person to be material to patentability as defined in § 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, added effective Feb. 27, 1983; 48 FR 4285, Jan. 31, 1983; paras. (b)(3) and (d), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.64 Person making oath or declaration.

(a) The oath or declaration must be made by all of the actual inventors except as provided for in §§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47.

(b) If the person making the oath or declaration is not the inventor (§§ 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47), the oath or declaration shall state the relationship of the person to the inventor and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor is required to state.

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, added effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.66 Officers authorized to administer oaths.

(a) The oath or affirmation may be made before any person within the United States authorized by law to administer oaths. An oath made in a foreign country may be made before any diplomatic or consular officer of the United States authorized to administer oaths, or before any officer having an official seal and authorized to administer oaths in the foreign country in which the applicant may be, whose authority shall be proved by a certificate of a diplomatic or consular officer of the United States, or by an apostille of an official designated by a foreign country which, by treaty or convention, accords like effect to apostilles of designated officials in the United States. The oath shall be attested in all cases in this and other countries, by the proper official seal of the officer before whom the oath or affirmation is made. Such oath or affirmation shall be valid as to execution if it complies with the laws of the State or country where made. When the person before whom the oath or affirmation is made in this country is not provided with a seal, his official character shall be established by competent evidence, as by a certificate from a clerk of a court of record or other proper officer having a seal.

(b) When the oath is taken before an officer in a country foreign to the United States, any accompanying application papers, except the drawings, must be attached together with the oath and a ribbon passed one or more times through all the sheets of the application, except the drawings, and the ends of said ribbon brought together under the seal before the latter is affixed and impressed, or each sheet must be impressed with the official seal of the officer before whom the oath is taken. If the papers as filed are not properly ribboned or each sheet impressed with the seal, the case will be accepted for examination, but before it is allowed, duplicate papers, prepared in compliance with the foregoing sentence, must be filed.

[47 FR 41275, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982]



37 CFR 1.67 Supplemental oath or declaration.

(a) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 may be required to be filed to correct any deficiencies or inaccuracies present in an earlier filed oath or declaration.

(b) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must be filed when a claim is presented for matter originally shown or described but not substantially embraced in the statement of invention or claims originally presented or when an oath or declaration submitted in accordance with § 1.53(d)(1) after the filing of the specification and any required drawings specifically and improperly refers to an amendment which includes new matter. No new matter may be introduced into a nonprovisional application after its filing date even if a supplemental oath or declaration is filed. In proper cases, the oath or declaration here required may be made on information and belief by an applicant other than inventor.

(c) A supplemental oath or declaration meeting the requirements of § 1.63 must also be filed if the application was altered after the oath or declaration was signed or if the oath or declaration was signed:

- (1) In blank;
- (2) Without review thereof by the person making the oath or declaration; or
- (3) Without review of the specification, including the claims, as required by § 1.63(b)(1).

[48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (c) added, 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.68 Declaration in lieu of oath.

Any document to be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and which is required by any law, rule, or other regulation to be under oath may be subscribed to by a written declaration. Such declaration may be used in lieu of the oath otherwise required, if, and only if, the declarant is on the same document, warned that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001) and may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon. The declarant must set forth in the body of the declaration that all statements made of the declarant's own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.69 Foreign language oaths and declarations.

(a) Whenever an individual making an oath or declaration cannot understand English, the oath or declaration must be in a language that such individual can understand and shall state that such individual understands the content of any documents to which the oath or declaration relates.

(b) Unless the text of any oath or declaration in a language other than English is a form provided or approved by the Patent and Trademark Office, it must be accompanied by a verified English translation, except that in the case of an oath or declaration filed under § 1.63 the translation may be filed in the Office no later than two months from the date applicant is notified to file the translation.

[42 FR 5594, Jan. 28, 1977; para. (b), 48 FR 2711, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.70 [Reserved]

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

SPECIFICATION

37 CFR 1.71 Detailed description and specification of the invention.

(a) The specification must include a written description of the invention or discovery and of the manner and process of making and using the same, and is required to be in such full, clear, concise, and exact terms as to enable any person skilled in the art or science to which the invention or discovery appertains, or with which it is most nearly connected, to make and use the same.

(b) The specification must set forth the precise invention for which a patent is solicited, in such manner as to distinguish it from other inventions and from what is old. It must describe completely a specific embodiment of the process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter or improvement invented, and must explain the mode of operation or principle whenever applicable. The best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his invention must be set forth.

(c) In the case of an improvement, the specification must particularly point out the part or parts of the process, machine, manufacture, or composition of matter to which the improvement relates, and the description should be confined to the specific improvement and to such parts as necessarily cooperate with it or as may be necessary to a complete understanding or description of it.

(d) A copyright or mask work notice may be placed in a design or utility patent application adjacent to copyright and mask work material contained therein. The notice may appear at any appropriate portion of the patent application disclosure. For notices in drawings, see § 1.84(s). The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements required by law. For example, “e1983 John Doe” (17 U.S.C. 401) and “*M* John Doe” (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in paragraph (e) of this section is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(e) The authorization shall read as follows: A portion of the disclosure of this patent document contains material which is subject to {copyright or mask work} protection. The {copyright or mask work} owner has no objection to the facsimile reproduction by anyone of the patent document or the patent disclosure, as it appears in the Patent and Trademark Office patent file or records, but otherwise reserves all {copyright or mask work} rights whatsoever.

[paras. (d) and (e), 53 FR 47808, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; para. (d), 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.72 Title and abstract.

(a) The title of the invention, which should be as short and specific as possible, should appear as a heading on the first page of the specification, if it does not otherwise appear at the beginning of the application.

(b) A brief abstract of the technical disclosure in the specification must be set forth on a separate sheet, preferably following the claims under the heading “Abstract of the Disclosure”. The purpose of the abstract is to enable the Patent and Trademark Office and the public generally to determine quickly from a cursory inspection the nature and gist of the technical disclosure. The abstract shall not be used for interpreting the scope of the claims.

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966; 43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978]

37 CFR 1.73 Summary of the invention.

A brief summary of the invention indicating its nature and substance, which may include a statement of the object of the invention, should precede the detailed description. Such summary should, when set forth, be commensurate with the invention as claimed and any object recited should be that of the invention as claimed.

37 CFR 1.74 Reference to drawings.

When there are drawings, there shall be a brief description of the several views of the drawings, and the detailed description of the invention shall refer to the different views by specifying the numbers of the figures, and to the different parts by use of reference letters or numerals (preferably the latter).

37 CFR 1.75 Claim(s).

(a) The specification must conclude with a claim particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention or discovery.

(b) More than one claim may be presented provided they differ substantially from each other and are not unduly multiplied.

(c) One or more claims may be presented in dependent form, referring back to and further limiting another claim or claims in the same application. Any dependent claim which refers to more than one other claim (“multiple dependent claim”) shall refer to such other claims in the alternative only. A multiple dependent claim shall not serve as a basis for any other multiple dependent claim. For fee calculation purposes under § 1.16, a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made therein. For fee calculation purposes, also, any claim depending from a multiple dependent claim will be considered to be that number of claims to which direct reference is made in that

multiple dependent claim. In addition to the other filing fees, any original application which is filed with, or is amended to include, multiple dependent claims must have paid therein the fee set forth in § 1.16(d). Claims in dependent form shall be construed to include all the limitations of the claim incorporated by reference into the dependent claim. A multiple dependent claim shall be construed to incorporate by reference all the limitations of each of the particular claims in relation to which it is being considered.

(d)

- (1) The claim or claims must conform to the invention as set forth in the remainder of the specification and the terms and phrases used in the claims must find clear support or antecedent basis in the description so that the meaning of the terms in the claims may be ascertainable by reference to the description. (See § 1.58(a).)
- (2) See §§ 1.141 to 1.146 as to claiming different inventions in one application.

(e) Where the nature of the case admits, as in the case of an improvement, any independent claim should contain in the following order,

- (1) a preamble comprising a general description of all the elements or steps of the claimed combination which are conventional or known,
- (2) a phrase such as “wherein the improvement comprises,” and
- (3) those elements, steps, and/or relationships which constitute that portion of the claimed combination which the applicant considers as the new or improved portion.

(f) If there are several claims, they shall be numbered consecutively in Arabic numerals.

(g) All dependent claims should be grouped together with the claim or claims to which they refer to the extent possible.

[31 FR 12922, Oct. 4, 1966; 36 FR 12690, July 3, 1971; 37 FR 21995, Oct. 18, 1972; 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; para. (c), 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.77 Arrangement of application elements.

The elements of the application should appear in the following order:

(a) Title of the invention; or an introductory portion stating the name, citizenship, and residence of the applicant, and the title of the invention may be used.

(b) (Reserved).

(c)

- (1) Cross-reference to related applications, if any.
- (2) Reference to a “microfiche appendix” if any. (See § 1.96(b)). The total number of microfiche and total number of frames should be specified.

(d) Brief summary of the invention.

(e) Brief description of the several views of the drawing, if there are drawings.

(f) Detailed description.

(g) Claim or claims.

(h) Abstract of the disclosure.

(i) Signed oath or declaration.

(j) Drawings.

[43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978; 46 FR 2612, Jan. 12, 1981; paras. (h) and (i), 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.78 Claiming benefit of earlier filing date and cross-references to other applications.

(a)

- (1) A nonprovisional application may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of a prior filed copending nonprovisional application or international application designating the United States of America, each prior application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor’s invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed

nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior application must be:

- (i) complete as set forth in § 1.51(a)(1); or
 - (ii) entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(1), § 1.60 or § 1.62 and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16; or
 - (iii) entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(1) and have paid therein the processing and retention fee set forth in § 1.21(l) within the time period set forth in § 1.53(d)(1).
- (2) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending nonprovisional applications or international applications designating the United States of America must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior application, identifying it by application number (consisting of the series code and serial number) or international application number and international filing date and indicating the relationship of the applications. Cross-references to other related applications may be made when appropriate. (See § 1.14(b)).
- (3) A nonprovisional application other than for a design patent may claim an invention disclosed in one or more prior filed copending provisional applications. Since a provisional application can be pending for no more than twelve months, the last day of pendency may occur on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday within the District of Columbia which for copendency would require the nonprovisional application to be filed prior to the Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday. In order for a nonprovisional application to claim the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications, each prior provisional application must name as an inventor at least one inventor named in the later filed nonprovisional application and disclose the named inventor's invention claimed in at least one claim of the later filed nonprovisional application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112. In addition, each prior provisional application must be:
- (i) complete as set forth in § 1.51(a)(2); or
 - (ii) entitled to a filing date as set forth in § 1.53(b)(2) and include the basic filing fee set forth in § 1.16(k).
- (4) Any nonprovisional application claiming the benefit of one or more prior filed copending provisional applications must contain or be amended to contain in the first sentence of the specification following the title a reference to each such prior provisional application, identifying it as a provisional application, and including the provisional application number (consisting of series code and serial number).

(b) Where two or more applications filed by the same applicant contain conflicting claims, elimination of such claims from all but one application may be required in the absence of good and sufficient reason for their retention during pendency in more than one application.

(c) Where two or more applications, or an application and a patent naming different inventors and owned by the same party contain conflicting claims, and there is no statement of record indicating that the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, the assignee may be called upon to state whether the claimed inventions were commonly owned or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person at the time the later invention was made, and if not, indicate which named inventor is the prior inventor. In addition to making said statement, the assignee may also explain why an interference should or should not be declared.

(d) Where an application claims an invention which is not patentably distinct from an invention claimed in a commonly owned patent with the same or a different inventive entity, a double patenting rejection will be made in the application. An obviousness-type double patenting rejection may be obviated by filing a terminal disclaimer in accordance with § 1.321(b).

[36 FR 7312, Apr. 17, 1971; 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984; paras. (a), (c) & (d), 50 FR 9380, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; para. (a) revised 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994; paras. (a)(1) and (a)(2) revised and paras. (a)(3) and (a)(4) added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.79 Reservation clauses not permitted.

A reservation for a future application of subject matter disclosed but not claimed in a pending application will not be permitted in the pending application, but an application disclosing unclaimed subject matter may contain a reference to a later filed application of the same applicant or owned by a common assignee disclosing and claiming that subject matter.

THE DRAWINGS**37 CFR 1.81 Drawings required in patent application.**

(a) The applicant for a patent is required to furnish a drawing of his or her invention where necessary for the understanding of the subject matter sought to be patented; this drawing, or a high quality copy thereof, must be filed with the application. Since corrections are the responsibility of the applicant, the original drawing(s) should be retained by the applicant for any necessary future correction.

(b) Drawings may include illustrations which facilitate an understanding of the invention (for example, flowsheets in cases of processes, and diagrammatic views).

(c) Whenever the nature of the subject matter sought to be patented admits of illustration by a drawing without its being necessary for the understanding of the subject matter and the applicant has not furnished such a drawing, the examiner will require its submission within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof.

(d) Drawings submitted after the filing date of the application may not be used to overcome any insufficiency of the specification due to lack of an enabling disclosure or otherwise inadequate disclosure therein, or to supplement the original disclosure thereof for the purpose of interpretation of the scope of any claim.

[43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; para. (a), 53 FR 47809, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989]

37 CFR 1.83 Content of drawing.

(a) The drawing in a nonprovisional application must show every feature of the invention specified in the claims. However, conventional features disclosed in the description and claims, where their detailed illustration is not essential for a proper understanding of the invention, should be illustrated in the drawing in the form of a graphical drawing symbol or a labeled representation (e.g., a labeled rectangular box).

(b) When the invention consists of an improvement on an old machine the drawing must when possible exhibit, in one or more views, the improved portion itself, disconnected from the old structure, and also in another view, so much only of the old structure as will suffice to show the connection of the invention therewith.

(c) Where the drawings in a nonprovisional application do not comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the examiner shall require such additional illustration within a time period of not less than two months from the date of the sending of a notice thereof. Such corrections are subject to the requirements of § 1.81(d).

[31 FR 12923, Oct. 4, 1966; 43 FR 4015, Jan. 31, 1978; paras. (a) and (c) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.84 Standards for drawings.

(a) Drawings. There are two acceptable categories for presenting drawings in utility patent applications:

- (1) Black ink. Black and white drawings are normally required. India ink, or its equivalent that secures solid black lines, must be used for drawings, or
- (2) Color. On rare occasions, color drawings may be necessary as the only practical medium by which to disclose the subject matter sought to be patented in a utility patent application or the subject matter of a statutory invention registration. The Patent and Trademark Office will accept color drawings in utility patent applications and statutory invention registrations only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph explaining why the color drawings are necessary. Any such petition must include the following:
 - (i) The appropriate fee set forth in § 1.17(h);

- (ii) Three (3) sets of color drawings; and
- (iii) The specification must contain the following language as the first paragraph in that portion of the specification relating to the brief description of the drawing:

“The file of this patent contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent with color drawing(s) will be provided by the Patent and Trademark Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.”

If the language is not in the specification, a proposed amendment to insert the language must accompany the petition.

(b) Photographs.

- (1) Black and white. Photographs are not ordinarily permitted in utility and design patent applications. However, the Office will accept photographs in utility and design patent applications only after granting a petition filed under this paragraph which requests that photographs be accepted. Any such petition must include the following:

- (i) The appropriate fee set forth in § 1.17(h); and
- (ii) Three (3) sets of photographs.

Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on Bristol board. The photographs must be of sufficient quality so that all details in the drawing are reproducible in the printed patent.

- (2) Color. Color photographs will be accepted in utility patent applications if the conditions for accepting color drawings have been satisfied. See paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

(c) Identification of drawings. Identifying indicia, if provided, should include the application number or the title of the invention, inventor's name, docket number (if any), and the name and telephone number of a person to call if the Office is unable to match the drawings to the proper application. This information should be placed on the back of each sheet of drawings a minimum distance of 1.5 cm. (5/8 inch) down from the top of the page.

(d) Graphic forms in drawings. Chemical or mathematical formulae, tables, and waveforms may be submitted as drawings and are subject to the same requirements as drawings. Each chemical or mathematical formula must be labeled as a separate figure, using brackets when necessary, to show that information is properly integrated. Each group of waveforms must be presented as a single figure, using a common vertical axis with time extending along the horizontal axis. Each individual waveform discussed in the specification must be identified with a separate letter designation adjacent to the vertical axis.

(e) Type of paper. Drawings submitted to the Office must be made on paper which is flexible, strong, white, smooth, nonshiny, and durable. All sheets must be free from cracks, creases, and folds. Only one side of the sheet shall be used for the drawing. Each sheet must be reasonably free from erasures and must be free from alterations, overwritings, and interlineations. Photographs must either be developed on double weight photographic paper or be permanently mounted on Bristol board. See paragraph (b) of this section for other requirements for photographs.

(f) Size of paper. All drawing sheets in an application must be the same size. One of the shorter sides of the sheet is regarded as its top. The size of the sheets on which drawings are made must be:

- (1) 21.6 cm. by 35.6 cm. (8 1/2 by 14 inches),
- (2) 21.6 cm. by 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 by 13 inches),
- (3) 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inches), or
- (4) 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4).

(g) Margins. The sheets must not contain frames around the sight; i.e., the usable surface. The following margins are required:

- (1) On 21.6 cm. by 35.6 cm. (8 1/2 by 14 inch) drawing sheets, each sheet must include a top margin of 5.1 cm. (2 inches), and bottom and side margins of .64 cm. (1/4 inch) from the edges, thereby leaving a sight no greater than 20.3 cm. by 29.8 cm. (8 by 11 3/4 inches).
- (2) On 21.6 cm. by 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 by 13 inch) drawing sheets, each sheet must include a top margin of 2.5 cm. (1 inch) and bottom and side margins of .64 cm. (1/4 inch) from the edges, thereby leaving a sight no greater than 20.3 cm. by 29.8 cm. (8 by 11 3/4 inches).

- (3) On 21.6 cm. by 27.9 cm. (8 1/2 by 11 inch) drawing sheets, each sheet must include a top margin of 2.5 cm. (1 inch) and bottom and side margins of .64 cm. (1/4 inch) from the edges, thereby leaving a sight no greater than 20.3 cm. by 24.8 cm. (8 by 9 3/4 inches).
- (4) On 21.0 cm. by 29.7 cm. (DIN size A4) drawing sheets, each sheet must include a top margin of at least 2.5 cm., a left side margin of 2.5 cm., a right side margin of 1.5 cm., and a bottom margin of 1.0 cm., thereby leaving a sight no greater than 17.0 cm. by 26.2 cm.

(h) Views. The drawing must contain as many views as necessary to show the invention. The views may be plan, elevation, section, or perspective views. Detail views of portions of elements, on a larger scale if necessary, may also be used. All views of the drawing must be grouped together and arranged on the sheet(s) without wasting space, preferably in an upright position, clearly separated from one another, and must not be included in the sheets containing the specifications, claims, or abstract. Views must not be connected by projection lines and must not contain center lines. Waveforms of electrical signals may be connected by dashed lines to show the relative timing of the waveforms.

- (1) Exploded views. Exploded views, with the separated parts embraced by a bracket, to show the relationship or order of assembly of various parts are permissible. When an exploded view is shown in a figure which is on the same sheet as another figure, the exploded view should be placed in brackets.
- (2) Partial views. When necessary, a view of a large machine or device in its entirety may be broken into partial views on a single sheet, or extended over several sheets if there is no loss in facility of understanding the view. Partial views drawn on separate sheets must always be capable of being linked edge to edge so that no partial view contains parts of another partial view. A smaller scale view should be included showing the whole formed by the partial views and indicating the positions of the parts shown. When a portion of a view is enlarged for magnification purposes, the view and the enlarged view must each be labeled as separate views.
 - (i) Where views on two or more sheets form, in effect, a single complete view, the views on the several sheets must be so arranged that the complete figure can be assembled without concealing any part of any of the views appearing on the various sheets.
 - (ii) A very long view may be divided into several parts placed one above the other on a single sheet. However, the relationship between the different parts must be clear and unambiguous.
- (3) Sectional views. The plane upon which a sectional view is taken should be indicated on the view from which the section is cut by a broken line. The ends of the broken line should be designated by Arabic or Roman numerals corresponding to the view number of the sectional view, and should have arrows to indicate the direction of sight. Hatching must be used to indicate section portions of an object, and must be made by regularly spaced oblique parallel lines spaced sufficiently apart to enable the lines to be distinguished without difficulty. Hatching should not impede the clear reading of the reference characters and lead lines. If it is not possible to place reference characters outside the hatched area, the hatching may be broken off wherever reference characters are inserted. Hatching must be at a substantial angle to the surrounding axes or principal lines, preferably 45. A cross section must be set out and drawn to show all of the materials as they are shown in the view from which the cross section was taken. The parts in cross section must show proper material(s) by hatching with regularly spaced parallel oblique strokes, the space between strokes being chosen on the basis of the total area to be hatched. The various parts of a cross section of the same item should be hatched in the same manner and should accurately and graphically indicate the nature of the material(s) that is illustrated in cross section. The hatching of juxtaposed different elements must be angled in a different way. In the case of large areas, hatching may be confined to an edging drawn around the entire inside of the outline of the area to be hatched. Different types of hatching should have different conventional meanings as regards the nature of a material seen in cross section.

(4) Alternate position. A moved position may be shown by a broken line superimposed upon a suitable view if this can be done without crowding; otherwise, a separate view must be used for this purpose.

(5) Modified forms. Modified forms of construction must be shown in separate views.

(i) Arrangement of views. One view must not be placed upon another or within the outline of another. All views on the same sheet should stand in the same direction and, if possible, stand so that they can be read with the sheet held in an upright position. If views wider than the width of the sheet are necessary for the clearest illustration of the invention, the sheet may be turned on its side so that the top of the sheet, with the appropriate top margin to be used as the heading space, is on the right-hand side. Words must appear in a horizontal, left-to-right fashion when the page is either upright or turned so that the top becomes the right side, except for graphs utilizing standard scientific convention to denote the axis of abscissas (of X) and the axis of ordinates (of Y).

(j) View for Official Gazette. One of the views should be suitable for publication in the Official Gazette as the illustration of the invention.

(k) Scale.

(1) The scale to which a drawing is made must be large enough to show the mechanism without crowding when the drawing is reduced in size to two-thirds in reproduction. Views of portions of the mechanism on a larger scale should be used when necessary to show details clearly. Two or more sheets may be used if one does not give sufficient room. The number of sheets should be kept to a minimum.

(2) When approved by the examiner, the scale of the drawing may be graphically represented. Indications such as "actual size" or "scale 1/2" on the drawings, are not permitted, since these lose their meaning with reproduction in a different format.

(3) Elements of the same view must be in proportion to each other, unless a difference in proportion is indispensable for the clarity of the view. Instead of showing elements in different proportion, a supplementary view may be added giving a larger-scale illustration of the element of the initial view. The enlarged element shown in the second view should be surrounded by a finely drawn or "dot-dash" circle in the first view indicating its location without obscuring the view.

(l) Character of lines, numbers, and letters. All drawings must be made by a process which will give them satisfactory reproduction characteristics. Every line, number, and letter must be durable, clean, black (except for color drawings), sufficiently dense and dark, and uniformly thick and well-defined. The weight of all lines and letters must be heavy enough to permit adequate reproduction. This requirement applies to all lines however fine, to shading, and to lines representing cut surfaces in sectional views. Lines and strokes of different thicknesses may be used in the same drawing where different thicknesses have a different meaning.

(m) Shading. The use of shading in views is encouraged if it aids in understanding the invention and if it does not reduce legibility. Shading is used to indicate the surface or shape of spherical, cylindrical, and conical elements of an object. Flat parts may also be lightly shaded. Such shading is preferred in the case of parts shown in perspective, but not for cross sections. See paragraph (h)(3) of this section. Spaced lines for shading are preferred. These lines must be thin, as few in number as practicable, and they must contrast with the rest of the drawings. As a substitute for shading, heavy lines on the shade side of objects can be used except where they superimpose on each other or obscure reference characters. Light should come from the upper left corner at an angle of 45. Surface delineations should preferably be shown by proper shading. Solid black shading areas are not permitted, except when used to represent bar graphs or color.

(n) Symbols. Graphical drawing symbols may be used for conventional elements when appropriate. The elements for which such symbols and labeled representations are used must be adequately identified in the specification. Known devices should be illustrated by symbols which have a universally recognized conventional meaning and are generally accepted in the art. Other symbols which are not universally recognized may be used, subject to approval by the Office, if they are not likely to be confused with existing conventional symbols, and if they are readily identifiable.

(o) Legends. Suitable descriptive legends may be used, or may be required by the Examiner, where necessary for understanding of the drawing, subject to approval by the Office. They should contain as few words as possible.

(p) Numbers, letters, and reference characters.

- (1) Reference characters (numerals are preferred), sheet numbers, and view numbers must be plain and legible, and must not be used in association with brackets or inverted commas, or enclosed within outlines, e.g., encircled. They must be oriented in the same direction as the view so as to avoid having to rotate the sheet. Reference characters should be arranged to follow the profile of the object depicted.
- (2) The English alphabet must be used for letters, except where another alphabet is customarily used, such as the Greek alphabet to indicate angles, wavelengths, and mathematical formulas.
- (3) Numbers, letters, and reference characters must measure at least .32 cm. (1/8 inch) in height. They should not be placed in the drawing so as to interfere with its comprehension. Therefore, they should not cross or mingle with the lines. They should not be placed upon hatched or shaded surfaces. When necessary, such as indicating a surface or cross section, a reference character may be underlined and a blank space may be left in the hatching or shading where the character occurs so that it appears distinct.
- (4) The same part of an invention appearing in more than one view of the drawing must always be designated by the same reference character, and the same reference character must never be used to designate different parts.
- (5) Reference characters not mentioned in the description shall not appear in the drawings. Reference characters mentioned in the description must appear in the drawings.

(q) Lead lines. Lead lines are those lines between the reference characters and the details referred to. Such lines may be straight or curved and should be as short as possible. They must originate in the immediate proximity of the reference character and extend to the feature indicated. Lead lines must not cross each other. Lead lines are required for each reference character except for those which indicate the surface or cross section on which they are placed. Such a reference character must be underlined to make it clear that a lead line has not been left out by mistake. Lead lines must be executed in the same way as lines in the drawing. See paragraph (l) of this section.

(r) Arrows. Arrows may be used at the ends of lines, provided that their meaning is clear, as follows:

- (1) On a lead line, a freestanding arrow to indicate the entire section towards which it points;
- (2) On a lead line, an arrow touching a line to indicate the surface shown by the line looking along the direction of the arrow; or
- (3) To show the direction of movement.

(s) Copyright or Mask Work Notice. A copyright or mask work notice may appear in the drawing, but must be placed within the sight of the drawing immediately below the figure representing the copyright or mask work material and be limited to letters having a print size of .32 cm. to .64 cm. (1/8 to 1/4 inches) high. The content of the notice must be limited to only those elements provided for by law. For example, "©1983 John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 401) and "©*M* John Doe" (17 U.S.C. 909) would be properly limited and, under current statutes, legally sufficient notices of copyright and mask work, respectively. Inclusion of a copyright or mask work notice will be permitted only if the authorization language set forth in § 1.71(e) is included at the beginning (preferably as the first paragraph) of the specification.

(t) Numbering of sheets of drawings. The sheets of drawings should be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, within the sight as defined in paragraph (g) of this section. These numbers, if present, must be placed in the middle of the top of the sheet, but not in the margin. The numbers can be placed on the right-hand side if the drawing extends too close to the middle of the top edge of the usable surface. The drawing sheet numbering must be clear and larger than the numbers used as reference characters to avoid confusion. The number of each sheet should be shown by two Arabic numerals placed on either side of an oblique line, with the first being the sheet number and the second being the total number of sheets of drawings, with no other marking.



- (u) Numbering of views.
 - (1) The different views must be numbered in consecutive Arabic numerals, starting with 1, independent of the numbering of the sheets and, if possible, in the order in which they appear on the drawing sheet(s). Partial views intended to form one complete view, on one or several sheets, must be identified by the same number followed by a capital letter. View numbers must be preceded by the abbreviation "FIG." Where only a single view is used in an application to illustrate the claimed invention, it must not be numbered and the abbreviation "FIG." must not appear.
 - (2) Numbers and letters identifying the views must be simple and clear and must not be used in association with brackets, circles, or inverted commas. The view numbers must be larger than the numbers used for reference characters.
- (v) Security markings. Authorized security markings may be placed on the drawings provided they are outside the sight, preferably centered in the top margin.
- (w) Corrections. Any corrections on drawings submitted to the Office must be durable and permanent.
- (x) Holes. The drawing sheets may be provided with two holes in the top margin. The holes should be equally spaced from the respective side edges, and their center lines should be spaced 7.0 cm. (2 3/4 inches) apart. (See § 1.152 for design drawings, § 1.165 for plant drawings, and § 1.174 for reissue drawings.)

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 31 FR 12923, Oct. 4, 1966; 36 FR 9775, May 28, 1971; 43 FR 20464, May 11, 1978; 45 FR 73657, Nov. 6, 1980; paras. (a), (b), (i), (j), and (l) amended, paras. (n), (o), and (p) added, 53 FR 47809, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; revised, 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.85 Corrections to drawings.

- (a) The requirements of § 1.84 relating to drawings will be strictly enforced. A drawing not executed in conformity thereto, if suitable for reproduction, may be admitted for examination but in such case a new drawing must be furnished.
- (b) The Patent and Trademark Office will not release drawings in applications having a filing date after January 1, 1989, or any drawings from any applications after January 1, 1991, for purposes of correction. If corrections are necessary, new corrected drawings must be submitted within the time set by the Office.
- (c) When corrected drawings are required to be submitted at the time of allowance, the applicant is required to submit acceptable drawings within three months from the mailing of the "Notice of Allowability." Within that three-month period, two weeks should be allowed for review of the drawings by the Drafting Branch. If the Office finds that correction is necessary, the applicant must submit a new corrected drawing to the Office within the original three-month period to avoid the necessity of obtaining an extension of time and paying the extension fee. Therefore, the applicant should file corrected drawings as soon as possible following the receipt of the Notice of Allowability. The provisions with respect to obtaining an extension of time relates only to the late filing of corrected drawings. The time limit for payment of the issue fee is a fixed three-month period which cannot be extended as set forth in 35 U.S.C. 151.

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989]

37 CFR 1.88 [Removed and Reserved]

[Deleted, 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

MODELS, EXHIBITS, SPECIMENS

37 CFR 1.91 Models not generally required as part of application or patent.

Models were once required in all cases admitting a model, as a part of the application, and these models became a part of the record of the patent. Such models are no longer generally required (the description of the invention in the specification, and the drawings, must be sufficiently full and complete, and capable of being understood, to disclose the invention without the aid of a model), and will not be admitted unless specifically called for.

37 CFR 1.92 Model or exhibit may be required.

A model, working model, or other physical exhibit may be required if deemed necessary for any purpose on examination of the application.

37 CFR 1.93 Specimens.

When the invention relates to a composition of matter, the applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the composition, or of its ingredients or intermediates, for the purpose of inspection or experiment.

37 CFR 1.94 Return of models, exhibits or specimens.

Models, exhibits, or specimens in applications which have become abandoned, and also in other applications on conclusion of the prosecution, may be returned to the applicant upon demand and at his expense, unless it is deemed necessary that they be preserved in the Office. Such physical exhibits in contested cases may be returned to the parties at their expense. If not claimed within a reasonable time, they may be disposed of at the discretion of the Commissioner.

37 CFR 1.95 Copies of exhibits.

Copies of models or other physical exhibits will not ordinarily be furnished by the Office, and any model or exhibit in an application or patent shall not be taken from the Office except in the custody of an employee of the Office specially authorized by the Commissioner.

37 CFR 1.96 Submission of computer program listings.

Descriptions of the operation and general content of computer program listings should appear in the description portion of the specification. A computer program listing for the purpose of these rules is defined as a printout that lists in appropriate sequence the instructions, routines, and other contents of a program for a computer. The program listing may be either in machine or machine-independent (object or source) language which will cause a computer to perform a desired procedure or task such as solve a problem, regulate the flow of work in a computer, or control or monitor events. Computer program listings may be submitted in patent applications in the following forms:

- (a) Material which will be printed in the patent. If the computer program listing is contained on 10 printout pages or less, it must be submitted either as drawings or as part of the specification.
 - (1) Drawings. The listing may be submitted in the manner and complying with the requirements for drawings as provided in § 1.84. At least one figure numeral is required on each sheet of drawing.
 - (2) Specification.
 - (i) The listing may be submitted as part of the specification in accordance with the provisions of § 1.52, at the end of the description but before the claims.
 - (ii) The listing may be submitted as part of the specification in the form of computer printout sheets (commonly 14 by 11 inches in size) for use as “camera ready copy” when a patent is subsequently printed. Such computer printout sheets must be original copies from the computer with dark solid black letters not less than 0.21 cm high, on white, unshaded and unlined paper, the printing on each sheet must be limited to an area 9 inches high by 13 inches wide, and the sheets should be submitted in a protective cover. When printed in patents, such computer printout sheets will appear at the end of the description but before the claims and will usually be reduced about 1/2 in size with two printout sheets being printed as one patent specification page. Any amendments must be made by way of submission of a substitute sheet if the copy is to be used for camera ready copy.
- (b) As an appendix which will not be printed. If a computer program listing printout is 11 or more pages long, applicants may submit such listing in the form of microfiche, referred to in the specification (see § 1.77(c)(2)). Such microfiche filed with a patent application is to be referred to as a “microfiche appendix.” The “microfiche appendix” will not be part of the printed patent. Reference in the application to the “microfiche appendix” should be made at the beginning of the specification at the location indicated in

§ 1.77(c)(2). Any amendments thereto must be made by way of revised microfiche. All computer program listings submitted on paper will be printed as part of the patent.

- (1) Availability of appendix. Such computer program listings on microfiche will be available to the public for inspection, and microfiche copies thereof will be available for purchase with the file wrapper and contents, after a patent based on such application is granted or the application is otherwise made publicly available.
- (2) Submission requirements. Computer-generated information submitted as an appendix to an application for patent shall be in the form of microfiche in accordance with the standards set forth in the following American National Standards Institute (ANSI) or National Micrographics Association (NMA) standards (Note: As new editions of these standards are published, the latest shall apply):
 - ANSI PH 1.28–1976–Specifications for Photographic Film for Archival records, Silver-Gelatin Type, on Cellulose Ester Base.
 - ANSI PH 1.41–1976 Specifications for Photographic Film for Archival Records, Silver-Gelatin Type, on Polyester Base.
 - NMA–MSI (1971) Quality Standards for Computer Output Microfilm.
 - ANSI/NMA MS2 (1978) Format and Coding Standards for Computer Output Microfilm.
 - NMA MS5 (ANSI PH 5.9–1975) Microfiche of Documents.
 - ANSI PH 2.19 (1959)–Diffuse Transmission Density.

except as modified or clarified below:

- (i) Either Computer-Output-Microfilm (COM) output or copies of photographed paper copy may be submitted. In the former case, NMA standards MS1 and MS2 apply; in the latter case, standard MS5 applies.
- (ii) Film submitted shall be first generation (camera film) negative appearing microfiche (with emulsion on the back side of the film when viewed with the images right reading).
- (iii) Reduction ratio of microfiche submitted should be 24:1 or a similar ratio where variation from said ratio is required in order to fit the documents into the image area of the microfiche format used.
- (iv) Film submitted shall have a thickness of at least .005 inches (0.13 mm) and not more than .009 inches (0.23 mm) for either cellulose acetate base or polyester base type.
- (v) Both microfiche formats A1 (98 frames, 14 columns x 7 rows) and A3 (63 frames, 9 columns x 7 rows) which are described in NMA standard MS2 (A1 is also described in MS5) are acceptable for use in preparation of microfiche submitted.
- (vi) At least the left-most 1/3 (50 mm x 12 mm) of the header or title area of each microfiche submitted shall be clear or positive appearing so that the Patent and Trademark Office can apply serial number and filing date thereto in an eye-readable form. The middle portion of the header shall be used by applicant to apply an eye-readable application identification such as the title and/or the first inventor's name. The attorney's docket number may be included. The final right-hand portion of the microfiche shall contain sequence information for the microfiche, such as 1 of 4, 2 of 4, etc.
- (vii) Additional requirements which apply specifically to microfiche of filmed paper copy:
 - (A) The first frame of each microfiche submitted shall contain a standard test target which contains five NBS Microcopy Resolution Test Charts (No. 1010A), one in the center and one in each corner. See illustration on page 2 of NMA Recommended Practice MS104, Inspection and Quality Control of First Generation Silver Halide Microfilm. See also paragraph 7 of NMA-MS5.



- (B) The second frame of each microfiche submitted must contain a fully descriptive title and the inventor's name as filed.
 - (C) The pages or lines appearing on the microfiche frames should be consecutively numbered.
 - (D) Pagination of the microfiche frames shall be from left to right and from top to bottom.
 - (E) At a reduction of 24:1 resolution of the original microfilm shall be at least 120 lines per mm (5.0 target) so that reproduction copies may be expected to comply with provisions of paragraph 7.1.4 of NMA Standard MS5.
 - (F) Background density of negative appearing camera master microfiche of filmed paper documents shall be within the range of 0.9 to 1.2 and line density should be no greater than 0.08. the density shall be visual diffuse than 0.08. The density shall be visual diffuse density as measured using the method described in ANSI Standard PH 2.19.
 - (G) An index, when included, should appear in the last frame (lower right hand corner when data is right-reading) of each microfiche. See NMA-MS5, paragraph 6.6.
- (viii) Microfiche generated by Computer Output Microfilm (COM).
- (A) Background density of negative-appearing COM-generated camera master microfiche shall be within the range of 1.5 to 2.0 and line density should be no greater than 0.2. The density shall be visual diffuse density as described in ANSI PH2.19.
 - (B) The first frame of each microfiche submitted should contain a resolution test frame in conformance with NMA standard MS1.
 - (C) The second frame of each microfiche submitted must contain a fully descriptive title and the inventor's name as filed.
 - (D) The pages or lines appearing on the microfiche frames should be consecutively numbered.
 - (E) It is preferred that pagination of the microfiche frames be from left to right and top to bottom but the alternative, i.e., from top to bottom and from left to right, is also acceptable.
 - (F) An index, when included, should appear on the last frame (lower right hand corner when data is right reading) of each microfiche.
 - (G) Amendment of microfiche must be made by way of replacement microfiche.

[46 FR 2612, Jan. 12, 1981, para. (b)(1), 54 FR 47519, Nov. 15, 1989, effective Jan. 16, 1990]

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

37 CFR 1.97 Filing of information disclosure statement.

- (a) In order to have information considered by the Office during the pendency of a patent application, an information disclosure statement in compliance with § 1.98 should be filed in accordance with this section.
- (b) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed:
 - (1) Within three months of the filing date of a national application;
 - (2) Within three months of the date of entry of the national stage as set forth in § 1.491 in an international application; or
 - (3) Before the mailing date of a first Office action on the merits, whichever event occurs last.
- (c) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed after the period specified in paragraph (b) of this section, but before the mailing date of either:
 - (1) A final action under § 1.113 or



- (2) A notice of allowance under § 1.311, whichever occurs first, provided the statement is accompanied by either a certification as specified in paragraph (e) of this section or the fee set forth in § 1.17(p).
- (d) An information disclosure statement shall be considered by the Office if filed after the mailing date of either a final action under § 1.113 or a notice of allowance under § 1.311, whichever occurs first, but before payment of the issue fee, provided the statement is accompanied by:
- (1) A certification as specified in paragraph (e) of this section;
 - (2) A petition requesting consideration of the information disclosure statement; and
 - (3) The petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i).
- (e) A certification under this section must state either:
- (1) That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the statement, or
 - (2) That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application or, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, was known to any individual designated in § 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the statement.
- (f) No extensions of time for filing an information disclosure statement are permitted under § 1.136. If a bona fide attempt is made to comply with § 1.98, but part of the required content is inadvertently omitted, additional time may be given to enable full compliance.
- (g) An information disclosure statement filed in accordance with section shall not be construed as a representation that a search has been made.
- (h) The filing of an information disclosure statement shall not be construed to be an admission that the information cited in the statement is, or is considered to be, material to patentability as defined in § 1.56(b).
- (i) Information disclosure statements, filed before the grant of a patent, which do not comply with this section and § 1.98 will be placed in the file, but will not be considered by the Office.

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983; 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (d) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.98 Content of information disclosure statement.

- (a) Any information disclosure statement filed under § 1.97 shall include:
- (1) list of all patents, publications or other information submitted for consideration by the Office;
 - (2) A legible copy of:
 - (i) Each U.S. and foreign patent;
 - (ii) Each publication or that portion which caused it to be listed; and
 - (iii) All other information or that portion which caused it to be listed, except that no copy of a U.S. patent application need be included; and
 - (3) A concise explanation of the relevance, as it is presently understood by the individual designated in § 1.56(c) most knowledgeable about the content of the information, of each patent, publication, or other information listed that is not in the English language. The concise explanation may be either separate from the specification or incorporated therein.
- (b) Each U.S. patent listed in an information disclosure statement shall be identified by patentee, patent number and issue date. Each foreign patent or published foreign patent application shall be identified by the country or patent office which issued the patent or published the application, an appropriate document number, and the publication date indicated on the patent or published application. Each publication shall be identified by author (if any), title, relevant pages of the publication, date, and place of publication.
- (c) When the disclosures of two or more patents or publications listed in an information disclosure statement are substantively cumulative, a copy of one of the patents or publications may be submitted



without copies of the other patents or publications provided that a statement is made that these other patents or publications are cumulative. If a written English-language translation of a non-English language document, or portion thereof, is within the possession, custody, or control of, or is readily available to any individual designated in § 1.56(c), a copy of the translation shall accompany the statement.

(d) A copy of any patent, publication, or other information listed in an information disclosure statement is not required to be provided if it was previously cited by or submitted to the Office in a prior application, provided that the prior application is properly identified in the statement and relied on for an earlier filing date under 35 U.S.C. 120.

[42 FR 5594, Jan. 28, 1977; para. (a) 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983; 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.99 [Reserved]

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983; effective date Feb. 27, 1983; 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

EXAMINATION OF APPLICATIONS

37 CFR 1.101 Order of examination.

(a) Nonprovisional applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and accepted as complete applications are assigned for examination to the respective examining groups having the classes of inventions to which the applications relate. Nonprovisional applications shall be taken up for examination by the examiner to whom they have been assigned in the order in which they have been filed except for those applications in which examination has been advanced pursuant to § 1.102. See § 1.496 for order of examination of international applications in the national stage.

(b) Applications which have been acted upon by the examiner, and which have been placed by the applicant in condition for further action by the examiner (amended applications) shall be taken up for action in such order as shall be determined by the Commissioner.

[29 FR 13470, Sept. 30, 1964; para. (a), 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (a), 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.102 Advancement of examination.

(a) Applications will not be advanced out of turn for examination or for further action except as provided by this part, or upon order of the Commissioner to expedite the business of the Office, or upon filing of a request under paragraph (b) of this section or upon filing a petition under paragraphs (c) or (d) of this section with a verified showing which, in the opinion of the Commissioner, will justify so advancing it.

(b) Applications wherein the inventions are deemed of peculiar importance to some branch of the public service and the head of some department of the Government requests immediate action for that reason, may be advanced for examination.

(c) A petition to make an application special may be filed without a fee if the basis for the petition is the applicant's age or health or that the invention will materially enhance the quality of the environment or materially contribute to the development or conservation of energy resources.

(d) A petition to make an application special on grounds other than those referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(i).

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; paras. (a), (c), and (d), 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982, para. (d), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (d) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.103 Suspension of action.

(a) Suspension of action by the Office will be granted for good and sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified upon petition by the applicant and, if such cause is not the fault of the Office, the payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). Action will not be suspended when a response by the applicant to an Office action is required.

(b) If action by the Office on an application is suspended when not requested by the applicant, the applicant shall be notified of the reasons therefor.

(c) Action by the examiner may be suspended by order of the Commissioner in the case of applications owned by the United States whenever publication of the invention by the granting of a patent thereon might be detrimental to the public safety or defense, at the request of the appropriate department or agency.

(d) Action on applications in which the Office has accepted a request to publish a defensive publication will be suspended for the entire pendency of these applications except for purposes relating to patent interference proceedings under Subpart E.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 33 FR 5624, Apr. 11, 1968; paras. (a) and (b), 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (d), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (d), 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (a), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.104 Nature of examination; examiner's action.

(a) On taking up an application for examination or a patent in a reexamination proceeding, the examiner shall make a thorough study thereof and shall make a thorough investigation of the available prior art relating to the subject matter of the claimed invention. The examination shall be complete with respect both to compliance of the application or patent under reexamination with the applicable statutes and rules and to the patentability of the invention as claimed, as well as with respect to matters of form, unless otherwise indicated.

(b) The applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, both the patent owner and the requester, will be notified of the examiner's action. The reasons for any adverse action or any objection or requirement will be stated and such information or references will be given as may be useful in aiding the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding the patent owner, to judge the propriety of continuing the prosecution.

(c) An international-type search will be made in all national applications filed on and after June 1, 1978.

(d) Any national application may also have an international-type search report prepared thereon at the time of the national examination on the merits, upon specific written request therefor and payment of the international-type search report fee. See § 1.21(e) for amount of fee for preparation of international-type search report.

NOTE. – The Patent and Trademark Office does not require that a formal report of an international-type search be prepared in order to obtain a search fee refund in a later filed international application.

(e) Copending applications will be considered by the examiner to be owned by, or subject to an obligation of assignment to, the same person if:

- (1) the application files refer to assignments recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office in accordance with part 3 of this chapter which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization; or
- (2) copies of unrecorded assignments which convey the entire rights in the applications to the same person or organization are filed in each of the applications; or
- (3) an affidavit or declaration by the common owner is filed which states that there is common ownership and states facts which explain why the affiant or declarant believes there is common ownership; or
- (4) other evidence is submitted which establishes common ownership of the applications.

In circumstances where the common owner is a corporation or other organization an affidavit or declaration may be signed by an official of the corporation or organization empowered to act on behalf of the corporation or organization.

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978; 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981; para. (d), 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; para. (e), 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (e), 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.105 Completeness of examiner's action.

The examiner's action will be complete as to all matters, except that in appropriate circumstances, such as misjoinder of invention, fundamental defects in the application, and the like, the action of the



examiner may be limited to such matters before further action is made. However, matters of form need not be raised by the examiner until a claim is found allowable.

37 CFR 1.106 Rejection of claims.

(a) If the invention is not considered patentable, or not considered patentable as claimed, the claims, or those considered unpatentable will be rejected.

(b) In rejecting claims for want of novelty or for obviousness, the examiner must cite the best references at his command. When a reference is complex or shows or describes inventions other than that claimed by the applicant, the particular part relied on must be designated as nearly as practicable. The pertinence of each reference, if not apparent, must be clearly explained and each rejected claim specified.

(c) In rejecting claims the examiner may rely upon admissions by the applicant, or the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, as to any matter affecting patentability and, insofar as rejections in applications are concerned, may also rely upon facts within his or her knowledge pursuant to § 1.107.

(d) Subject matter which is developed by another person which qualifies as prior art only under 35 U.S.C. 102(f) or (g) may be used as prior art under 35 U.S.C. 103 against a claimed invention unless the entire rights to the subject matter and the claimed invention were commonly owned by the same person or organization or subject to an obligation of assignment to the same person or organization at the time the claimed invention was made.

(e) The claims in any original application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the same subject matter is claimed in the application and the statutory invention registration. The claims in any reissue application naming an inventor will be rejected as being precluded by a waiver in a published statutory invention registration naming that inventor if the reissue application seeks to claim subject matter

- (1) which was not covered by claims issued in the patent prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration and
- (2) which was the same subject matter waived in the statutory invention registration.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; para. (c) added, 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; paras. (d) and (e), 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.107 Citation of references.

(a) If domestic patents are cited by the examiner, their numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees, and the classes of inventions must be stated. If foreign published applications or patents are cited, their nationality or country, numbers and dates, and the names of the patentees must be stated, and such other data must be furnished as may be necessary to enable the applicant, or in the case of a reexamination proceeding, the patent owner, to identify the published applications or patents cited. In citing foreign published applications or patents, in case only a part of the document is involved, the particular pages and sheets containing the parts relied upon must be identified. If printed publications are cited, the author (if any), title, date, pages or plates, and place of publication, or place where a copy can be found, shall be given.

(b) When a rejection in an application is based on facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, the data shall be as specific as possible, and the reference must be supported, when called for by the applicant, by the affidavit of such employee, and such affidavit shall be subject to contradiction or explanation by the affidavits of the applicant and other persons.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

37 CFR 1.108 Abandoned applications not cited.

Abandoned applications as such will not be cited as references except those which have been opened to inspection by the public following a defensive publication.

[50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.109 Reasons for allowance.

If the examiner believes that the record of the prosecution as a whole does not make clear his or her reasons for allowing a claim or claims, the examiner may set forth such reasoning. The reasons shall be incorporated into an Office action rejecting other claims of the application or patent under reexamination or be the subject of a separate communication to the applicant or patent owner. The applicant or patent owner may file a statement commenting on the reasons for allowance within such time as may be specified by the examiner. Failure to file such a statement shall not give rise to any implication that the applicant or patent owner agrees with or acquiesces in the reasoning of the examiner.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

37 CFR 1.110 Inventorship and date of invention of the subject matter of individual claims.

When more than one inventor is named in an application or patent, the Patent and Trademark Office, when necessary for purposes of an Office proceeding, may require an applicant, patentee, or owner to identify the inventive entity of the subject matter of each claim in the application or patent. Where appropriate, the invention dates of the subject matter of each claim and the ownership of the subject matter on the date of invention may be required of the applicant, patentee or owner. See also § 1.78(c) and § 1.78(d).

[50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985]

**ACTION BY APPLICANT
AND FURTHER CONSIDERATION****37 CFR 1.111 Reply by applicant or patent owner.**

(a) After the Office action, if adverse in any respect, the applicant or patent owner, if he or she persists in his or her application for a patent or reexamination proceeding, must reply thereto and may request reconsideration or further examination, with or without amendment.

(b) In order to be entitled to reconsideration or further examination, the applicant or patent owner must make request therefor in writing. The reply by the applicant or patent owner must distinctly and specifically point out the supposed errors in the examiner's action and must respond to every ground of objection and rejection in the prior Office action. If the reply is with respect to an application, a request may be made that objections or requirements as to form not necessary to further consideration of the claims be held in abeyance until allowable subject matter is indicated. The applicant's or patent owner's reply must appear throughout to be a bona fide attempt to advance the case to final action. A general allegation that the claims define a patentable invention without specifically pointing out how the language of the claims patentably distinguishes them from the references does not comply with the requirements of this section.

(c) In amending in response to a rejection of claims in an application or patent undergoing reexamination, the applicant or patent owner must clearly point out the patentable novelty which he or she thinks the claims present in view of the state of the art disclosed by the references cited or the objections made. He or she must also show how the amendments avoid such references or objections. (See § 1.135 and § 1.136 for time for reply.)

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

37 CFR 1.112 Reconsideration.

After response by applicant or patent owner (§ 1.111), the application or patent under reexamination will be reconsidered and again examined. The applicant or patent owner will be notified if claims are rejected, or objections or requirements made, in the same manner as after the first examination. Applicant or patent owner may respond to such Office action in the same manner provided in § 1.111, with or without amendment. Any amendments after the second Office action must ordinarily be restricted to the rejection or to the objections or requirements made. The application or patent under reexamination will be again considered, and so on repeatedly, unless the examiner has indicated that the action is final.

[46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]



37 CFR 1.113 Final rejection or action.

(a) On the second or any subsequent examination or consideration the rejection or other action may be made final whereupon applicant's or patent owner's response is limited to appeal in the case of rejection of any claim (§ 1.191), or to amendment as specified in § 1.116. Petition may be taken to the Commissioner in the case of objections or requirements not involved in the rejection of any claim (§ 1.181). Response to a final rejection or action must include cancellation of, or appeal from the rejection of, each rejected claim. If any claim stands allowed, the response to a final rejection or action must comply with any requirements or objections to form.

(b) In making such final rejection, the examiner shall repeat or state all grounds of rejection then considered applicable to the claims in the case, clearly stating the reasons therefor.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 46 FR 29182, May 29, 1981]

AMENDMENTS

37 CFR 1.115 Amendment.

The applicant may amend before or after the first examination and action and also after the second or subsequent examination or reconsideration as specified in § 1.112 or when and as specifically required by the examiner. The patent owner may amend in accordance with §§ 1.510(e) and 1.530(b) prior to reexamination and during reexamination proceedings in accordance with § 1.112 and § 1.116.

[46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981]

37 CFR 1.116 Amendments after final action.

(a) After final rejection or action (§ 1.113) amendments may be made canceling claims or complying with any requirement of form which has been made. Amendments presenting rejected claims in better form for consideration on appeal may be admitted. The admission of, or refusal to admit, any amendment after final rejection, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to relieve the application or patent under reexamination from its condition as subject to appeal or to save the application from abandonment under § 1.135.

(b) If amendments touching the merits of the application or patent under reexamination are presented after final rejection, or after appeal has been taken, or when such amendment might not otherwise be proper, they may be admitted upon a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they are necessary and were not earlier presented.

(c) No amendment can be made as a matter of right in appealed cases. After decision on appeal, amendments can only be made as provided in § 1.198, or to carry into effect a recommendation under § 1.196.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981]

37 CFR 1.117 Amendment and revision required.

The specification, claims, and drawings must be amended and revised when required to correct inaccuracies of description and definition or unnecessary prolixity, and to secure correspondence between the claims, the specification, and the drawing.

37 CFR 1.118 Amendment of disclosure.

(a) No amendment shall introduce new matter into the disclosure of an application after the filing date of the application (§ 1.53(b)). All amendments to the specification, including the claims, and the drawings filed after the filing date of the application must conform to at least one of them as it was at the time of the filing of the application. Matter not found in either, involving a departure from or an addition to the original disclosure, cannot be added to the application after its filing date even though supported by an oath or declaration in accordance with § 1.63 or § 1.67 filed after the filing date of the application.

(b) If it is determined that an amendment filed after the filing date of the application introduces new matter, claims containing new matter will be rejected and deletion of the new matter in the specification and drawings will be required even if the amendment is accompanied by an oath or declaration in accordance with § 1.63 or § 1.67.

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]



37 CFR 1.119 Amendment of claims.

The claims may be amended by canceling particular claims, by presenting new claims, or by rewriting particular claims as indicated in § 1.121. The requirements of § 1.111 must be complied with by pointing out the specific distinctions believed to render the claims patentable over the references in presenting arguments in support of new claims and amendments.

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967]

37 CFR 1.121 Manner of making amendments.

(a) Erasures, additions, insertions, or alterations of the Office file of papers and records must not be physically entered by the applicant. Amendments to the application (excluding the claims) are made by filing a paper (which should conform to § 1.52) directing or requesting that specified amendments be made. The exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted by said amendment must be specified and the precise point indicated where the deletion or insertion is to be made.

(b) Except as otherwise provided herein, a particular claim may be amended only by directions to cancel or by rewriting such claim with underlining below the word or words added and brackets around the word or words deleted. The rewriting of a claim in this form will be construed as directing the cancellation of the original claim; however, the original claim number followed by the parenthetical word "amended" must be used for the rewritten claim. If a previously rewritten claim is rewritten, underlining and bracketing will be applied in reference to the previously rewritten claim with the parenthetical expression "twice amended," "three times amended," etc., following the original claim number.

(c) A particular claim may be amended in the manner indicated for the application in paragraph (a) of this section to the extent of corrections in spelling, punctuation, and typographical errors. Additional amendments in this manner will be admitted provided the changes are limited to

- (1) deletions and/or
- (2) the addition of no more than five words in any one claim.

Any amendment submitted with instructions to amend particular claims but failing to conform to the provisions of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section may be considered nonresponsive and treated accordingly.

(d) Where underlining or brackets are intended to appear in the printed patent or are properly part of the claimed material and not intended as symbolic of changes in the particular claim, amendment by rewriting in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section shall be prohibited.

(e) In reissue applications, both the descriptive portion and the claims are to be amended by either

- (1) submitting a copy of a portion of the description or an entire claim with all matter to be deleted from the patent being placed between brackets and all matter to be added to the patent being underlined, or
- (2) indicating the exact word or words to be stricken out or inserted and the precise point where the deletion or insertion is to be made. Any word or words to be inserted must be underlined. See § 1.173.

(f) Proposed amendments presented in patents involved in reexamination proceedings must be presented in the form of a full copy of the text of:

- (1) Each claim which is amended and
- (2) each paragraph of the description which is amended.

Matter deleted from the patent shall be placed between brackets and matter added shall be underlined. Copies of the printed claims from the patent may be used with any additions being indicated by carets and deleted material being placed between brackets. Claims must not be renumbered and the numbering of the claims added for reexamination must follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim. No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. No new matter may be introduced into the patent.

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967; 46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; para. (e), 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984]



37 CFR 1.122 Entry and consideration of amendments.

(a) Amendments are “entered” by the Office by making the proposed deletions by drawing a line in red ink through the word or words cancelled and by making the proposed substitutions or insertions in red ink, small insertions being written in at the designated place and large insertions being indicated by reference.

(b) Ordinarily all amendments presented in a paper filed while the application is open to amendment are entered and considered, subsequent cancellation or correction being required of improper amendments. Untimely amendment papers may be refused entry and consideration in whole or in part. For amendments presented during an interference see § 1.664.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; para. (b), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.123 Amendments to the drawing.

No change in the drawing may be made except with permission of the Office. Permissible changes in the construction shown in any drawing may be made only by the submission of a substitute drawing by applicant. A sketch in permanent ink showing proposed changes, to become part of the record, must be filed for approval by the examiner and should be a separate paper.

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; amended, 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.124 Amendment of amendments.

When an amendatory clause is to be amended, it should be wholly rewritten and the original insertion canceled so that no interlineations or deletions shall appear in the clause as finally presented. Matter canceled by amendment can be reinstated only by a subsequent amendment presenting the canceled matter as a new insertion.

37 CFR 1.125 Substitute specification.

If the number or nature of the amendments shall render it difficult to consider the case, or to arrange the papers for printing or copying, the examiner may require the entire specification, including the claims, or any part thereof, to be rewritten. A substitute specification may not be accepted unless it has been required by the examiner or unless it is clear to the examiner that acceptance of a substitute specification would facilitate processing of the application. Any substitute specification filed must be accompanied by a statement that the substitute specification includes no new matter. Such statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

[48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.126 Numbering of claims.

The original numbering of the claims must be preserved throughout the prosecution. When claims are canceled, the remaining claims must not be renumbered. When claims are added, except when presented in accordance with § 1.121(b), they must be numbered by the applicant consecutively beginning with the number next following the highest numbered claim previously presented (whether entered or not). When the application is ready for allowance, the examiner, if necessary, will renumber the claims consecutively in the order in which they appear or in such order as may have been requested by applicant.

[32 FR 13583, Sept. 28, 1967]

37 CFR 1.127 Petition from refusal to admit amendment.

From the refusal of the primary examiner to admit an amendment, in whole or in part, a petition will lie to the Commissioner under § 1.181.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS

37 CFR 1.129 Transitional procedures for limited examination after final rejection and restriction practice.

(a) An applicant in an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least two years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in such application to any



earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), is entitled to have a first submission entered and considered on the merits after final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the first submission and the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(r). If a subsequent final rejection is made in the application, applicant is entitled to have a second submission entered and considered on the merits after the subsequent final rejection under the following circumstances: The Office will consider such a submission, if the second submission and a second fee set forth in § 1.17(r) are filed prior to the filing of an appeal brief and prior to abandonment of the application. The finality of the subsequent final rejection is automatically withdrawn upon the timely filing of the submission and payment of the second fee set forth in § 1.17(r). Any submission filed after a final rejection made in an application subsequent to the fee set forth in § 1.17(r) having been twice paid will be treated as set forth in § 1.116. A submission as used in this paragraph includes, but is not limited to, an information disclosure statement, an amendment to the written description, claims or drawings and a new substantive argument or new evidence in support of patentability.

(b)

(1) In an application, other than for reissue or a design patent, that has been pending for at least three years as of June 8, 1995, taking into account any reference made in the application to any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c), no requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications shall be made or maintained in the application after June 8, 1995, except where:

- (i) the requirement was first made in the application or any earlier filed application under 35 U.S.C. 120, 121 and 365(c) prior to April 8, 1995;
- (ii) the examiner has not made a requirement for restriction in the present or parent application prior to April 8, 1995, due to actions by the applicant; or
- (iii) the required fee for examination of each additional invention was not paid.

(2) If the application contains more than one independent and distinct invention and a requirement for restriction or for the filing of divisional applications cannot be made or maintained pursuant to this paragraph, applicant will be so notified and given a time period to:

- (i) elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined, if no election has been made prior to the notice, and pay the fee set forth in 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects;
- (ii) confirm an election made prior to the notice and pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in addition to the one invention which applicant previously elected; or
- (iii) file a petition under this section traversing the requirement. If the required petition is filed in a timely manner, the original time period for electing and paying the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) will be deferred and any decision on the petition affirming or modifying the requirement will set a new time period to elect the invention or inventions to be searched and examined and to pay the fee set forth in § 1.17(s) for each independent and distinct invention claimed in the application in excess of one which applicant elects.

(3) The additional inventions for which the required fee has not been paid will be withdrawn from consideration under § 1.142(b). An applicant who desires examination of an invention so withdrawn from consideration can file a divisional application under 35 U.S.C. 121.

(c) The provisions of this section shall not be applicable to any application filed after June 8, 1995.

[Added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]



AFFIDAVITS OVERCOMING REJECTIONS

37 CFR 1.131 Affidavit or declaration of prior invention to overcome cited patent or publication.

(a)

(1) When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (e), or 35 U.S.C. 103 based on a U.S. patent to another which is prior art under 35 U.S.C. 102(a) or (e) and which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the same patentable invention, as defined in 37 CFR 1.601(n), or on reference to a foreign patent or to a printed publication, the inventor of the subject matter of the rejected claim, the owner of the patent under reexamination, or the party qualified under 37 CFR 1.42, 1.43, or 1.47, may submit an appropriate oath or declaration to overcome the patent or publication. The oath or declaration must include facts showing a completion of the invention in this country or in a NAFTA or WTO member country before the filing date of the application on which the U.S. patent issued, or before the date of the foreign patent, or before the date of the printed publication. When an appropriate oath or declaration is made, the patent or publication cited shall not bar the grant of a patent to the inventor or the confirmation of the patentability of the claims of the patent, unless the date of such patent or printed publication is more than one year prior to the date on which the inventor's or patent owner's application was filed in this country.

(2) A date of completion of the invention may not be established under this section before December 8, 1993, in a NAFTA country, or before January 1, 1996 in a WTO member country other than a NAFTA country.

(b) The showing of facts shall be such, in character and weight, as to establish reduction to practice prior to the effective date of the reference, or conception of the invention prior to the effective date of the reference coupled with due diligence from prior to said date to a subsequent reduction to practice or to the filing of the application. Original exhibits of drawings or records, or photocopies thereof, must accompany and form part of the affidavit or declaration or their absence satisfactorily explained.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; para. (a), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (a), 50 FR 9381, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 11366, Mar. 21, 1985; 53 FR 23733, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (a)(1) revised and para. (a)(2) added, 60 FR 21043, May 1, 1995, effective May 31, 1995]

37 CFR 1.132 Affidavits or declarations traversing grounds of rejection.

When any claim of an application or a patent under reexamination is rejected on reference to a domestic patent which substantially shows or describes but does not claim the invention, or on reference to a foreign patent, or to a printed publication, or to facts within the personal knowledge of an employee of the Office, or when rejected upon a mode or capability of operation attributed to a reference, or because the alleged invention is held to be inoperative or lacking in utility, or frivolous or injurious to public health or morals, affidavits or declarations traversing these references or objections may be received.

[48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

INTERVIEWS

37 CFR 1.133 Interviews.

(a) Interviews with examiners concerning applications and other matters pending before the Office must be had in the examiners' rooms at such times, within office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of pending applications will not be had before the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance.

(b) In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in § 1.111, § 1.135.

TIME FOR RESPONSE BY APPLICANT; ABANDONMENT OF APPLICATION

37 CFR 1.134 Time period for response to an Office action.

An Office action will notify the applicant of any non-statutory or shortened statutory time period set for response to an Office action. Unless the applicant is notified in writing that response is required in less than six months, a maximum period of six months is allowed.

[47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.135 Abandonment for failure to respond within time period.

(a) If an applicant of a patent application fails to respond within the time period provided under § 1.134 and § 1.136, the application will become abandoned unless an Office action indicates otherwise.

(b) Prosecution of an application to save it from abandonment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section must include such complete and proper action as the condition of the case may require. The admission of an amendment not responsive to the last Office action, or refusal to admit the same, and any proceedings relative thereto, shall not operate to save the application from abandonment.

(c) When action by the applicant is a bona fide attempt to respond and to advance the case to final action, and is substantially a complete response to the Office action, but consideration of some matter or compliance with some requirement has been inadvertently omitted, opportunity to explain and supply the omission may be given before the question of abandonment is considered.

[paras. (a), (b), and (c), 47 FR 41276, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (d) deleted, 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984]

37 CFR 1.136 Filing of timely responses with petition and fee for extension of time and extensions of time for cause.

(a)

- (1) If an applicant is required to respond within a nonstatutory or shortened statutory time period, applicant may respond up to four months after the time period set if a petition for an extension of time and the fee set in § 1.17 are filed prior to or with the response, unless:
 - (i) Applicant is notified otherwise in an Office action,
 - (ii) The response is a reply brief submitted pursuant to § 1.193(b),
 - (iii) The response is a request for an oral hearing submitted pursuant to § 1.194(b),
 - (iv) The response is to a decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.196, § 1.197 or § 1.304, or
 - (v) The application is involved in an interference declared pursuant to § 1.611,
- (2) The date on which the response, the petition, and the fee have been filed is the date of the response and also the date for purposes of determining the period of extension and the corresponding amount of the fee. The expiration of the time period is determined by the amount of the fee paid. In no case may an applicant respond later than the maximum time period set by statute, or be granted an extension of time under paragraph (b) of this section when the provisions of this paragraph are available. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time relating to proceedings pursuant to §§ 1.193(b), 1.194, 1.196 or 1.197. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action. See § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings and § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings.

(b) When a response with petition and fee for extension of time cannot be filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the time for response will be extended only for sufficient cause and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the applicant is due, but in no case will the mere filing of the request effect any extension. In no case can any extension carry the date on which response to an Office action is due beyond the maximum time period set by statute or be granted when the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section are available. See § 1.304 for extension of time to appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or to commence a civil action, § 1.645 for extension of time in interference proceedings, and § 1.550(c) for extension of time in reexamination proceedings.

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 54 FR 29551, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.137 Revival of abandoned application.

(a) An application abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. A petition to revive an abandoned application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) a proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;
- (2) the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(1); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) An application unintentionally abandoned for failure to prosecute may be revived as a pending application if the delay was unintentional. A petition to revive an unintentionally abandoned application must be:

- (1) accompanied by a proposed response to continue prosecution of that application, or the filing of a continuing application, unless either has been previously filed;
- (2) accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
 - (i) within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or
 - (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(c) In all applications filed before June 8, 1995, and in all design applications filed on or after June 8, 1995, any petition pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(d) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive an application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.



(e) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (d) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (b) 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; paras.(a)–(c), paras. (d) & (e) added, 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993; para. (c) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.138 Express abandonment.

An application may be expressly abandoned by filing in the Patent and Trademark Office a written declaration of abandonment signed by the applicant and the assignee of record, if any, and identifying the application. An application may also be expressly abandoned by filing a written declaration of abandonment signed by the attorney or agent of record. A registered attorney or agent acting under the provision of § 1.34(a), or of record, may also expressly abandon a prior application as of the filing date granted to a continuing application when filing such a continuing application. Express abandonment of the application may not be recognized by the Office unless it is actually received by appropriate officials in time to act thereon before the date of issue.

[47 FR 47244, Oct. 25, 1982, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.139 Revival of provisional application.

(a) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that the delay was unavoidable. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) the required response unless it has been previously filed;
- (2) the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(1); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) A provisional application which has been accorded a filing date and abandoned for failure to timely respond to an Office requirement may be revived so as to be pending for a period of no longer than twelve months from its filing date if the delay was unintentional. Under no circumstances will the provisional application be pending after twelve months from its filing date. A petition to revive an abandoned provisional application must be:

- (1) accompanied by the required response unless it has been previously filed;
- (2) accompanied by the petition fee as set forth in § 1.17(m);
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
 - (i) within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned; or
 - (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition to revive under paragraph (a) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the provisional application became abandoned.

(c) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to revive a provisional application upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to revive or within such time as set in the decision.

(d) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (b)(4)(ii) of this section and the time period set forth in paragraph (c) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[Added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]



JOINDER OF INVENTIONS IN ONE APPLICATION; RESTRICTION

37 CFR 1.141 Different inventions in one national application.

(a) Two or more independent and distinct inventions may not be claimed in one national application, except that more than one species of an invention, not to exceed a reasonable number, may be specifically claimed in different claims in one national application, provided the application also includes an allowable claim generic to all the claimed species and all the claims to species in excess of one are written in dependent form (§ 1.75) or otherwise include all the limitations of the generic claim.

(b) Where claims to all three categories, product, process of making, and process of use are included in a national application, a three way requirement for restriction can only be made where the process of making is distinct from the product. If the process of making and the product are not distinct, the process of using may be joined with the claims directed to the product and the process of making the product even though a showing of distinctness between the product and process of using the product can be made.

[52 FR 20046, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

37 CFR 1.142 Requirement for restriction.

(a) If two or more independent and distinct inventions are claimed in a single application, the examiner in his action shall require the applicant in his response to that action to elect that invention to which his claim shall be restricted, this official action being called a requirement for restriction (also known as a requirement for division). If the distinctness and independence of the inventions be clear, such requirement will be made before any action on the merits; however, it may be made at any time before final action in the case at the discretion of the examiner.

(b) Claims to the invention or inventions not elected, if not cancelled, are nevertheless withdrawn from further consideration by the examiner by the election, subject however to reinstatement in the event the requirement for restriction is withdrawn or overruled.

37 CFR 1.143 Reconsideration of requirement.

If the applicant disagrees with the requirement for restriction, he may request reconsideration and withdrawal or modification of the requirement, giving the reasons therefor (see § 1.111). In requesting reconsideration the applicant must indicate a provisional election of one invention for prosecution, which invention shall be the one elected in the event the requirement becomes final. The requirement for restriction will be reconsidered on such a request. If the requirement is repeated and made final, the examiner will at the same time act on the claims to the invention elected.

37 CFR 1.144 Petition from requirement for restriction.

After a final requirement for restriction, the applicant, in addition to making any response due on the remainder of the action, may petition the Commissioner to review the requirement. Petition may be deferred until after final action on or allowance of claims to the invention elected, but must be filed not later than appeal. A petition will not be considered if reconsideration of the requirement was not requested. (See § 1.181.)

37 CFR 1.145 Subsequent presentation of claims for different invention.

If, after an office action on an application, the applicant presents claims directed to an invention distinct from and independent of the invention previously claimed, the applicant will be required to restrict the claims to the invention previously claimed if the amendment is entered, subject to reconsideration and review as provided in § 1.143 and § 1.144.

37 CFR 1.146 Election of species.

In the first action on an application containing a generic claim and claims restricted separately to each of more than one species embraced thereby, the examiner may require the applicant in his response to that action to elect that species of his or her invention to which his or her claim shall be restricted if no generic claim is held allowable. However, if such application contains claims directed to more than a reasonable number of species, the examiner may require restriction of the claims to not more than a reasonable number of species before taking further action in the case.

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978]

DESIGN PATENTS

37 CFR 1.151 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patents for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for designs except as otherwise provided.

37 CFR 1.152 Design drawing.

The design must be represented by a drawing that complies with the requirements of § 1.84, and must contain a sufficient number of views to constitute a complete disclosure of the appearance of the article. Appropriate surface shading must be used to show the character or contour of the surfaces represented. Solid black surface shading is not permitted except when used to represent color contrast. Broken lines may be used to show visible environmental structure, but may not be used to show hidden planes and surfaces which cannot be seen through opaque materials. Alternate positions of a design component, illustrated by full and broken lines in the same view are not permitted in a design drawing. Photographs and ink drawings must not be combined in one application. Photographs submitted in lieu of ink drawings in design patent applications must comply with § 1.84(b) and must not disclose environmental structure but must be limited to the design for the article claimed. Color drawings and color photographs are not permitted in design patent applications.

[53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; amended, 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.153 Title, description and claim, oath or declaration.

(a) The title of the design must designate the particular article. No description, other than a reference to the drawing, is ordinarily required. The claim shall be in formal terms to the ornamental design for the article (specifying name) as shown, or as shown and described. More than one claim is neither required nor permitted.

(b) The oath or declaration required of the applicant must comply with § 1.63.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; para. (b), 48 FR 2712, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.154 Arrangement of specification.

The following order of arrangement should be observed in framing design specifications:

- (a) Preamble, stating name of the applicant and title of the design.
- (b) Description of the figure or figures of the drawing.
- (c) Description, if any.
- (d) Claim.
- (e) Signed oath or declaration (See § 1.153(b)).

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, para. (e), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.155 Issue and term of design patents.

(a) If, on examination, it shall appear that the applicant is entitled to a design patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to the applicant, or applicant's attorney or agent, calling for the payment of the issue fee (§ 1.18(b)). If this issue fee is not paid within 3 months of the date of the notice of allowance, the application shall be regarded as abandoned.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in

payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) the fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(l)); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

- (1) accompanied by the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
 - (i) within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or
 - (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(d) Any petition pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (b)–(d) amended, paras. (e) and (f) added, 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993]

PLANT PATENTS

37 CFR 1.161 Rules applicable.

The rules relating to applications for patent for other inventions or discoveries are also applicable to applications for patents for plants except as otherwise provided.

37 CFR 1.162 Applicant, oath or declaration.

The applicant for a plant patent must be a person who has invented or discovered and asexually reproduced the new and distinct variety of plant for which a patent is sought (or as provided in §§ 1.42, 1.43, and 1.47). The oath or declaration required of the applicant, in addition to the averments required by § 1.63, must state that he or she has asexually reproduced the plant. Where the plant is a newly found plant the oath or declaration must also state that it was found in a cultivated area.

[48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.163 Specification.

(a) The specification must contain as full and complete a disclosure as possible of the plant and the characteristics thereof that distinguish the same over related known varieties, and its antecedents, and must particularly point out where and in what manner the variety of plant has been asexually reproduced. In the case of a newly found plant, the specification must particularly point out the location and character of the area where the plant was discovered.

(b) Two copies of the specification (including the claim) must be submitted, but only one signed oath or declaration is required. The second copy of the specification may be a legible carbon copy of the original.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; para. (b), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.164 Claim.

The claim shall be in formal terms to the new and distinct variety of the specified plant as described and illustrated, and may also recite the principal distinguishing characteristics. More than one claim is not permitted.

37 CFR 1.165 Plant Drawings.

(a) Plant patent drawings should be artistically and competently executed and must comply with the requirements of § 1.84. View numbers and reference characters need not be employed unless required by the examiner. The disclose all the distinctive characteristics of the plant capable of visual representation.

(b) The drawing may be in color and when color is a distinguishing characteristic of the new variety, the drawing must be in color. Two copies of color drawings or color photographs must be submitted.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; para. (b), 47 FR 41277, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (a) and (b) amended, 58 FR 38719, July 20, 1993, effective Oct. 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.166 Specimens.

The applicant may be required to furnish specimens of the plant, or its flower or fruit, in a quantity and at a time in its stage of growth as may be designated, for study and inspection. Such specimens, properly packed, must be forwarded in conformity with instructions furnished to the applicant. When it is not possible to forward such specimens, plants must be made available for official inspection where grown.

37 CFR 1.167 Examination.

(a) Applications may be submitted by the Patent and Trademark Office to the Department of Agriculture for study and report.

(b) Affidavits or declarations from qualified agricultural or horticultural experts regarding the novelty and distinctiveness of the variety of plant may be received when the need of such affidavits or declarations is indicated.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969]

REISSUES

37 CFR 1.171 Application for reissue.

An application for reissue must contain the same parts required for an application for an original patent, complying with all the rules relating thereto except as otherwise provided, and in addition, must comply with the requirements of the rules relating to reissue applications. The application must be accompanied by a certified copy of an abstract of title or an order for a title report accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.19(b)(4), to be placed in the file, and by an offer to surrender the original patent (§ 1.178).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; revised, 54 FR 6893, Feb. 17, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991]

37 CFR 1.172 Applicants, assignees.

(a) A reissue oath must be signed and sworn to or declaration made by the inventor or inventors except as otherwise provided (see §§ 1.42, 1.43, 1.47), and must be accompanied by the written assent of all assignees, if any, owning an undivided interest in the patent, but a reissue oath may be made and sworn to or

declaration made by the assignee of the entire interest if the application does not seek to enlarge the scope of the claims of the original patent.

(b) A reissue will be granted to the original patentee, his legal representative or assigns as the interest may appear.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959, para. (a), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.173 Specification.

The specification of the reissue application must include the entire specification and claims of the patent, with the matter to be omitted by reissue enclosed in square brackets; and any additions made by the reissue must be underlined, so that the old and the new specifications and claims may be readily compared. Claims should not be renumbered and the numbering of claims added by reissue should follow the number of the highest numbered patent claim. No new matter shall be introduced into the specification.

37 CFR 1.174 Drawings.

(a) The drawings upon which the original patent was issued may be used in reissue applications if no changes whatsoever are to be made in the drawings. In such cases, when the reissue application is filed, the applicant must submit a temporary drawing which may consist of a copy of the printed drawings of the patent or a photoprint of the original drawings of the size required for original drawing.

(b) Amendments which can be made in a reissue drawing, that is, changes from the drawing of the patent, are restricted.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; para. (a), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983]

37 CFR 1.175 Reissue oath or declaration.

(a) Applicants for reissue, in addition to complying with the requirements of § 1.63, must also file with their applications a statement under oath or declaration as follows:

- (1) When the applicant verily believes the original patent to be wholly or partly inoperative or invalid, stating such belief and the reasons why.
- (2) When it is claimed that such patent is so inoperative or invalid "by reason of a defective specification or drawing" particularly specifying such defects.
- (3) When it is claimed that such patent is inoperative or invalid "by reason of the patentee claiming more or less than he had the right to claim in the patent," distinctly specifying the excess or insufficiency in the claims.
- (4) [Reserved]
- (5) Particularly specifying the errors relied upon, and how they arose or occurred.
- (6) Stating that said errors arose "without any deceptive intention" on the part of the applicant.
- (7) Acknowledging the duty to disclose to the Office all information known to applicants to be material to patentability as defined in § 1.56.

(b) Corroborating affidavits or declarations of others may be filed and the examiner may, in any case, require additional information or affidavits or declarations concerning the application for reissue and its object.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 29 FR 18503, Dec. 29, 1964; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; para. (a), 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; para. (a), 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; para. (a)(7), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.176 Examination of reissue.

An original claim, if represented in the reissue application, is subject to reexamination, and the entire application will be examined in the same manner as original applications, subject to the rules relating thereto, excepting that division will not be required. Applications for reissue will be acted on by the examiner in advance of other applications, but not sooner than two months after the announcement of the filing of the reissue application has appeared in the Official Gazette.

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977]

37 CFR 1.177 Reissue in divisions.

The Commissioner may, in his or her discretion, cause several patents to be issued for distinct and separate parts of the thing patented, upon demand of the applicant, and upon payment of the required fee for each division. Each division of a reissue constitutes the subject of a separate specification descriptive of the part or parts of the invention claimed in such division; and the drawing may represent only such part or parts, subject to the provisions of §§ 1.83 and 1.84. On filing divisional reissue applications, they shall be referred to the Commissioner. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner upon petition and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(i), all the divisions of a reissue will issue simultaneously; if there is any controversy as to one division, the others will be withheld from issue until the controversy is ended, unless the Commissioner orders otherwise.

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; revised, 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.178 Original patent.

The application for a reissue must be accompanied by an offer to surrender the original patent. The application should also be accompanied by the original patent, or if the original is lost or inaccessible, by an affidavit or declaration to that effect. The application may be accepted for examination in the absence of the original patent or the affidavit or declaration, but one or the other must be supplied before the case is allowed. If a reissue be refused, the original patent will be returned to applicant upon his request.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969]

37 CFR 1.179 Notice of reissue application.

When an application for a reissue is filed, there will be placed in the file of the original patent a notice stating that an application for reissue has been filed. When the reissue is granted or the reissue application is otherwise terminated, the fact will be added to the notice in the file of the original patent.

PETITIONS AND ACTIONS BY THE COMMISSIONER

37 CFR 1.181 Petition to the Commissioner.

(a) Petition may be taken to the Commissioner:

- (1) From any action or requirement of any examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application which is not subject to appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or to the court;
- (2) in cases in which a statute or the rules specify that the matter is to be determined directly by or reviewed by the Commissioner; and
- (3) to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner in appropriate circumstances.

For petitions in interferences, see § 1.644.

(b) Any such petition must contain a statement of the facts involved and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support thereof should accompany or be embodied in the petition; and where facts are to be proven, the proof in the form of affidavits or declarations (and exhibits, if any) must accompany the petition.

(c) When a petition is taken from an action or requirement of an examiner in the ex parte prosecution of an application, it may be required that there have been a proper request for reconsideration (§ 1.111) and a repeated action by the examiner. The examiner may be directed by the Commissioner to furnish a written statement, within a specified time, setting forth the reasons for his decision upon the matters averred in the petition, supplying a copy thereof to the petitioner.

(d) Where a fee is required for a petition to the Commissioner the appropriate section of this part will so indicate. If any required fee does not accompany the petition, the petition will be dismissed.

(e) Oral hearing will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(f) Except as otherwise provided in these rules, any such petition not filed within 2 months from the action complained of, may be dismissed as untimely. The mere filing of a petition will not stay the period for reply to an Examiner's action which may be running against an application, nor act as a stay of other proceedings.

(g) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials the determination of petitions.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18857, Nov. 26, 1969; paras. (d) and (g), 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.182 Questions not specifically provided for.

All cases not specifically provided for in the regulations of this part will be decided in accordance with the merits of each case by or under the authority of the Commissioner, and such decision will be communicated to the interested parties in writing. Any petition seeking a decision under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.183 Suspension of rules.

In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations in this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of the interested party, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed. Any petition under this section must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.184 Reconsideration of cases decided by former Commissioners.

Cases which have been decided by one Commissioner will not be reconsidered by his successor except in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials.

**APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS
AND INTERFERENCES**

Authority: Secs. 1.191 to 1.198 also issued under 35 U.S.C. 134.

37 CFR 1.191 Appeal to Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) Every applicant for a patent or for reissue of a patent, or every owner of a patent under reexamination, any of the claims of which have been twice rejected or who has been given a final rejection (§ 1.113), may, upon the payment of the fee set forth in § 1.17(e), appeal from the decision of the examiner to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences within the time allowed for response.

(b) The appeal in an application or reexamination proceeding must identify the rejected claim or claims appealed, and must be signed by the applicant, patent owner, or duly authorized attorney or agent.

(c) An appeal when taken must be taken from the rejection of all claims under rejection which the applicant or patent owner proposes to contest. Questions relating to matters not affecting the merits of the invention may be required to be settled before an appeal can be considered.

(d) The time periods set forth in §§ 1.191 and 1.192 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136 for patent applications and § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. The time periods set forth in §§ 1.193, 1.194, 1.196, and 1.197 are subject to the provisions of § 1.136(b) for patent applications or § 1.550(c) for reexamination proceedings. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(e) Jurisdiction over the application or patent under reexamination passes to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon transmittal of the file, including all briefs and examiner's answers, to the Board. Prior to the entry of a decision on the appeal, the Commissioner may sua sponte order the application remanded to the examiner.

[46 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; para. (a), 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (d), 49 FR 555, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (b) and (d) amended, para. (e) added, 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; para. (d) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.192 Appellant's brief.

(a) Appellant shall, within 2 months from the date of the notice of appeal under § 1.191 or within the time allowed for response to the action appealed from, if such time is later, file a brief in triplicate. The

brief must be accompanied by the requisite fee set forth in § 1.17(f) and must set forth the authorities and arguments on which appellant will rely to maintain the appeal. Any arguments or authorities not included in the brief will be refused consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, unless good cause is shown.

(b) On failure to file the brief, accompanied by the requisite fee, within the time allowed, the appeal shall stand dismissed.

(c) The brief shall contain the following items under appropriate headings and in the order indicated below unless the brief is filed by an applicant who is not represented by a registered practitioner:

- (1) Real party in interest. A statement identifying the real party in interest, if the party named in the caption of the brief is not the real party in interest.
- (2) Related appeals and interferences. A statement identifying by number and filing date all other appeals or interferences known to appellant, the appellant's legal representative, or assignee which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending appeal.
- (3) Status of claims. A statement of the status of all the claims, pending or canceled, and identifying the claims appealed.
- (4) Status of amendments. A statement of the status of any amendment filed subsequent to final rejection.
- (5) Summary of invention. A concise explanation of the invention defined in the claims involved in the appeal, which shall refer to the specification by page and line number, and to the drawing, if any, by reference characters.
- (6) Issues. A concise statement of the issues presented for review.
- (7) Grouping of claims. For each ground of rejection which appellant contests and which applies to a group of two or more claims, the Board shall select a single claim from the group and shall decide the appeal as to the ground of rejection on the basis of that claim alone unless a statement is included that the claims of the group do not stand or fall together and, in the argument under paragraph (c)(8) of this section, appellant explains why the claims of the group are believed to be separately patentable. Merely pointing out differences in what the claims cover is not an argument as to why the claims are separately patentable.
- (8) Argument. The contentions of appellant with respect to each of the issues presented for review in paragraph (c)(6) of this section, and the basis therefor, with citations of the authorities, statutes, and parts of the record relied on. Each issue should be treated under a separate heading.
 - (i) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, first paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the first paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112 is complied with, including, as appropriate, how the specification and drawings, if any,
 - (A) describe the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims,
 - (B) enable any person skilled in the art to make and use the subject matter defined by each of the rejected claims, and
 - (C) set forth the best mode contemplated by the inventor of carrying out his or her invention.
 - (ii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and how the claims particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.
 - (iii) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 102, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and why the rejected claims are patentable under 35 U.S.C. 102, including any specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied upon in the rejection.
 - (iv) For each rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and, if appropriate, the specific limitations in the rejected claims which are not described in the prior art relied on in the rejection, and shall explain how

such limitations render the claimed subject matter unobvious over the prior art. If the rejection is based upon a combination of references, the argument shall explain why the references, taken as a whole, do not suggest the claimed subject matter, and shall include, as may be appropriate, an explanation of why features disclosed in one reference may not properly be combined with features disclosed in another reference. A general argument that all the limitations are not described in a single reference does not satisfy the requirements of this paragraph.

- (v) For any rejection other than those referred to in paragraphs (c)(8)(i) to (iv) of this section, the argument shall specify the errors in the rejection and the specific limitations in the rejected claims, if appropriate, or other reasons, which cause the rejection to be in error.

(9) Appendix. An appendix containing a copy of the claims involved in the appeal.

(d) If a brief is filed which does not comply with all the requirements of paragraph (c) of this section, appellant will be notified of the reasons for non-compliance and provided with a period of one month within which to file an amended brief. If appellant does not file an amended brief during the one-month period, or files an amended brief which does not overcome all the reasons for non-compliance stated in the notification, the appeal will stand dismissed.

[36 FR 5850, Mar. 30, 1971; para. (a), 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; 53 FR 23734, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (a), (c), and (d) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994; paras. (a)–(c) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.193 Examiner's answer.

(a) The primary examiner may, within such time as may be directed by the Commissioner, furnish a written statement in answer to the appellant's brief including such explanation of the invention claimed and of the references and grounds of rejection as may be necessary, supplying a copy to the appellant. If the primary examiner shall find that the appeal is not regular in form or does not relate to an appealable action, he shall so state and a petition from such decision may be taken to the Commissioner as provided in § 1.181.

(b) The appellant may file a reply brief directed only to such new points of argument as may be raised in the examiner's answer, within two months from the date of such answer. The new points of argument shall be specifically identified in the reply brief. If the examiner determines that the reply brief is not directed only to new points of argument raised in the examiner's answer, the examiner may refuse entry of the reply brief and will so notify the appellant. If the examiner's answer expressly states that it includes a new ground of rejection, appellant must file a reply thereto within two months from the date of such answer to avoid dismissal of the appeal as to the claims subject to the new ground of rejection; such reply may be accompanied by any amendment or material appropriate to the new ground. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for filing a reply brief in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 18858, Nov. 26, 1969; para. (c), 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, added effective July 1, 1982; para. (b), 50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (c) deleted, 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.194 Oral hearing.

(a) An oral hearing should be requested only in those circumstances in which the appellant considers such a hearing necessary or desirable for a proper presentation of his appeal. An appeal decided without an oral hearing will receive the same consideration by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences as appeals decided after oral hearing.

(b) If appellant desires an oral hearing, appellant must file a written request for such hearing accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(g) within two months after the date of the examiner's answer. If appellant requests an oral hearing and submits therewith the fee set forth in § 1.17(g), an oral argument may be presented by, or on behalf of, the primary examiner if considered desirable by either the primary examiner or the Board. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for requesting an oral hearing in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) If no request and fee for oral hearing have been timely filed by the appellant, the appeal will be assigned for consideration and decision. If the appellant has requested an oral hearing and has submitted the

fee set forth in § 1.17(g), a day of hearing will be set, and due notice thereof given to the appellant and to the primary examiner. Hearing will be held as stated in the notice, and oral argument will be limited to twenty minutes for the appellant and fifteen minutes for the primary examiner unless otherwise ordered before the hearing begins.

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977; paras. (b) & (c), 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b) revised 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.195 Affidavits or declarations after appeal.

Affidavits, declarations, or exhibits submitted after the case has been appealed will not be admitted without a showing of good and sufficient reasons why they were not earlier presented.

[34 FR 18858, Nov. 26, 1969]

37 CFR 1.196 Decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(a) The Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, in its decision, may affirm or reverse the decision of the examiner in whole or in part on the grounds and on the claims specified by the examiner or remand the application to the examiner for further consideration. The affirmance of the rejection of a claim on any of the grounds specified constitutes a general affirmance of the decision of the examiner on that claim, except as to any ground specifically reversed.

(b) Should the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences have knowledge of any grounds not involved in the appeal for rejecting any appealed claim, it may include in the decision a statement to that effect with its reasons for so holding, which statement shall constitute a new rejection of the claims. A new rejection shall not be considered final for purposes of judicial review. When the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences makes a new rejection of an appealed claim, the appellant may exercise any one of the following two options with respect to the new ground:

- (1) The appellant may submit an appropriate amendment of the claims so rejected or a showing of facts, or both, and have the matter reconsidered by the examiner in which event the application will be remanded to the examiner. The statement shall be binding upon the examiner unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record be made which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the new ground for rejection stated in the decision. Should the examiner again reject the application, the applicant may again appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.
- (2) The appellant may have the case reconsidered under § 1.197(b) by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences upon the same record. The request for reconsideration shall address the new ground for rejection and state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which reconsideration is sought. Where request for such reconsideration is made the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences shall reconsider the new ground for rejection and, if necessary, render a new decision which shall include all grounds upon which a patent is refused. The decision on reconsideration is deemed to incorporate the earlier decision, except for those portions specifically withdrawn on reconsideration, and is final for the purpose of judicial review.

(c) Should the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences include an explicit statement that a claim may be allowed in amended form, appellant shall have the right to amend in conformity with such statement which shall be binding on the examiner in the absence of new references or grounds of rejection.

(d) Although the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences normally will confine its decision to a review of rejections made by the examiner, should it have knowledge of any grounds for rejecting any allowed claim, it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim and remand the case to the examiner. In such event, the Board shall set a period, not less than one month, within which the appellant may submit to the examiner an appropriate amendment, a showing of facts or reasons, or both, in order to avoid the grounds set forth in the recommendation of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. The examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the

examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection. Should the examiner make the recommended rejection final, the applicant may again appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(e) Whenever a decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences includes a remand, that decision shall not be considered a final decision. When appropriate, upon conclusion of proceedings on remand before the examiner, the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may enter an order otherwise making its decision final.

(f) See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time to take action under this section in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 12, 1959; 49 FR 29183, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 12, 1985; para. (b) revised 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; paras. (a), (b) & (d) amended, paras. (e) & (f) added, 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; para. (f) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.197 Action following decision.

(a) After decision by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, the case shall be returned to the examiner, subject to the appellant's right of appeal or other review, for such further action by the appellant or by the examiner, as the condition of the case may require, to carry into effect the decision.

(b) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the decision may be made if filed within one month from the date of the original decision, unless the original decision is so modified by the decision on reconsideration as to become, in effect, a new decision, and the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences so states. The request for reconsideration shall state with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision and also state all other grounds upon which reconsideration is sought. See § 1.136(b) for extensions of time for seeking reconsideration in a patent application and § 1.550(c) for extensions of time in a reexamination proceeding.

(c) Termination of proceedings. Proceedings are considered terminated by the dismissal of an appeal or the failure to timely file an appeal to the court or a civil action (§ 1.304) except:

- (1) where claims stand allowed in an application or
- (2) where the nature of the decision requires further action by the examiner.

The date of termination of proceedings is the date on which the appeal is dismissed or the date on which the time for appeal to court or review by civil action (§ 1.304) expires. If an appeal to the court or a civil action has been filed, proceedings are considered terminated when the appeal or civil action is terminated. An appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit is terminated when the mandate is received by the Office. A civil action is terminated when the time to appeal the judgment expires.

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981; para. (a), 47 FR 41278, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; paras. (a) and (b), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (b) and (c), 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 1.198 Reopening after decision.

Cases which have been decided by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences will not be reopened or reconsidered by the primary examiner except under the provisions of § 1.196 without the written authority of the Commissioner, and then only for the consideration of matters not already adjudicated, sufficient cause being shown.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective date Feb. 11, 1985]

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

37 CFR 1.248 Service of papers; manner of service; proof of service in cases other than interferences.

(a) Service of papers must be on the attorney or agent of the party if there be such or on the party if there is no attorney or agent, and may be made in any of the following ways:

- (1) By delivering a copy of the paper to the person served;
- (2) By leaving a copy at usual place of business of the person served with someone in his employment;
- (3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy at the person's residence, with some person of suitable age and discretion who resides there;



- (4) Transmissions by first class mail. When service is by mail the date of mailing will be regarded as the date of service.
- (5) Whenever it shall be satisfactorily shown to the Commissioner that none of the above modes of obtaining or serving the paper is practicable, service may be by notice published in the Official Gazette.

(b) Papers filed in the Patent and Trademark Office which are required to be served shall contain proof of service. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to papers filed. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service, proof of service shall also include the name of any person served, certified by the person who made service. Proof of service may be made by:

- (1) an acknowledgement of service by or on behalf of the person served or
- (2) a statement signed by the attorney or agent containing the information required by this section.

(c) See § 1.646 for service of papers in interferences.

[46 FR 29184, May 29, 1981; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

PROTESTS AND PUBLIC USE PROCEEDINGS

37 CFR 1.291 **Protests by the public against pending applications.**

(a) Protests by a member of the public against pending applications will be referred to the examiner having charge of the subject matter involved. A protest specifically identifying the application to which the protest is directed will be entered in the application file if:

- (1) The protest is timely submitted; and
- (2) The protest is either served upon the applicant in accordance with § 1.248, or filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible.

Protests raising fraud or other inequitable conduct issues will be entered in the application file, generally without comment on those issues. Protests which do not adequately identify a pending patent application will be disposed of and will not be considered by the Office.

(b) A protest submitted in accordance with the second sentence of paragraph (a) of this section will be considered by the Office if it includes

- (1) a listing of the patents, publications, or other information relied upon;
- (2) a concise explanation of the relevance of each listed item;
- (3) a copy of each listed patent or publication or other item of information in written form or at least the pertinent portions thereof; and
- (4) an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent, publication, or other item of information in written form relied upon.

(c) A member of the public filing a protest in an application under paragraph (a) of this section will not receive any communications from the Office relating to the protest, other than the return of a self-addressed postcard which the member of the public may include with the protest in order to receive an acknowledgment by the Office that the protest has been received. The Office may communicate with the applicant regarding any protest and may require the applicant to respond to specific questions raised by the protest. In the absence of a request by the Office, an applicant has no duty to, and need not, respond to a protest. The limited involvement of the member of the public filing a protest pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section ends with the filing of the protest, and no further submission on behalf of the protestor will be considered unless such submission raises new issues which could not have been earlier presented.

[47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; paras. (a) and (c), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.292 **Public use proceedings.**

(a) When a petition for the institution of public use proceedings, supported by affidavits or declarations and the fee set forth in § 1.17(j), is filed by one having information of the pendency of an application and is found, on reference to the examiner, to make a prima facie showing that the invention claimed in an application believed to be on file had been in public use or on sale more than one year before

the filing of the application, a hearing may be had before the Commissioner to determine whether a public use proceeding should be instituted. If instituted, the Commissioner may designate an appropriate official to conduct the public use proceeding, including the setting of times for taking testimony, which shall be taken as provided by §§ 1.671 through 1.685. The petitioner will be heard in the proceedings but after decision therein will not be heard further in the prosecution of the application for patent.

- (b) The petition and accompanying papers should either:
 - (1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been served upon the applicant or upon his attorney or agent of record; or
 - (2) be filed with the Office in duplicate in the event service is not possible.

The petition and accompanying papers, or a notice that such a petition has been filed, shall be entered in the application file.

(c) A petition for institution of public use proceedings shall not be filed by a party to an interference as to an application involved in the interference. Public use and on sale issues in an interference shall be raised by a preliminary motion under § 1.633(a).

[42 FR 5595, Jan. 28, 1977; para. (a), 47 FR 41279, Sept. 17, 1982; paras. (a) and (c), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 12, 1985]

37 CFR 1.293 Statutory invention registration.

(a) An applicant for an original patent may request, at any time during the pendency of applicant's pending complete application, that the specification and drawings be published as a statutory invention registration. Any such request must be signed by

- (1) the applicant and any assignee of record or
- (2) an attorney or agent of record in the application.

(b) Any request for publication of a statutory invention registration must include the following parts:

- (1) A waiver of the applicant's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed effective upon the date of publication of the statutory invention registration;
- (2) The required fee for filing a request for publication of a statutory invention registration as provided for in § 1.17(n) or (o);
- (3) A statement that in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed meets the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112; and
- (4) A statement that, in the opinion of the requester, the application to which the request is directed complies with the formal requirements of this part for printing as a patent.

(c) A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will be effective, upon publication of the statutory invention registration, to waive the inventor's right to receive a patent on the invention claimed in the statutory invention registration, in any application for an original patent which is pending on, or filed after, the date of publication of the statutory invention registration. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect the rights of any other inventor even if the subject matter of the statutory invention registration and an application of another inventor are commonly owned. A waiver filed with a request for a statutory invention registration will not affect any rights in a patent to the inventor which issued prior to the date of publication of the statutory invention registration unless a reissue application is filed seeking to enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent. See also § 1.106(e).

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.294 Examination of request for publication of a statutory invention registration and patent application to which the request is directed.

(a) Any request for a statutory invention registration will be examined to determine if the requirements of § 1.293 have been met. The application to which the request is directed will be examined to determine

- (1) if the subject matter of the application is appropriate for publication,
- (2) if the requirements for publication are met, and

(3) if the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and § 1.293 of this part are met.

(b) Applicant will be notified of the results of the examination set forth in paragraph (a) of this section. If the requirements of § 1.293 and this section are not met by the request filed, the notification to applicant will set a period of time within which to comply with the requirements in order to avoid abandonment of the application. If the application does not meet the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112, the notification to applicant will include a rejection under the appropriate provisions of 35 U.S.C. 112. The periods for response established pursuant to this section are subject to the extension of time provisions of § 1.136. After response by the applicant, the application will again be considered for publication of a statutory invention registration. If the requirements of § 1.293 and this section are not timely met, the refusal to publish will be made final. If the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 are not met, the rejection pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 will be made final.

(c) If the examination pursuant to this section results in approval of the request for a statutory invention registration the applicant will be notified of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration.

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.295 Review of decision finally refusing to publish a statutory invention registration.

(a) Any requester who is dissatisfied with the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the refusal to publish the statutory invention registration by filing a petition to the Commissioner accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) within one month or such other time as is set in the decision refusing publication. Any such petition should comply with the requirements of § 1.181(b). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the final refusal to publish a statutory invention registration for reasons other than compliance with 35 U.S.C. 112 is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) Any requester who is dissatisfied with a decision finally rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 may obtain review of the decision by filing an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences pursuant to § 1.191. If the decision rejecting claims pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 112 is reversed, the request for a statutory invention registration will be approved and the registration published if all of the other provisions of § 1.293 and this section are met.

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985]

37 CFR 1.296 Withdrawal of request for publication of statutory invention registration.

A request for a statutory invention registration which has been filed may be withdrawn prior to the date of the notice of the intent to publish a statutory invention registration issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) by filing a request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration. The request to withdraw may also include a request for a refund of any amount paid in excess of the application filing fee and a handling fee of \$130.00 which will be retained. Any request to withdraw the request for publication of a statutory invention registration filed on or after the date of notice of intent to publish issued pursuant to § 1.294(c) must be in the form of a petition pursuant to § 1.183 accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective date May 8, 1985; revised, 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991]

37 CFR 1.297 Publication of statutory invention registration.

(a) If the request for a statutory invention registration is approved, the statutory invention registration will be published. The statutory invention registration will be mailed to the requester at the correspondence address as provided for in § 1.33(a). A notice of the publication of each statutory invention registration will be published in the Official Gazette.

(b) Each statutory invention registration published will include a statement relating to the attributes of a statutory invention registration. The statement will read as follows:

A statutory invention registration is not a patent. It has the defensive attributes of a patent but does not have the enforceable attributes of a patent. No article or advertisement or the like may use the term patent, or any term suggestive of a patent, when referring to a statutory invention registration. For more specific information on the rights associated with a statutory invention registration see 35 U.S.C. 157.

[50 FR 9382, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985]



REVIEW OF PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE DECISIONS BY COURT

37 CFR 1.301 Appeal to U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit.

Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party to an interference dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, may appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The appellant must take the following steps in such an appeal:

- (a) In the Patent and Trademark Office file a written notice of appeal directed to the Commissioner (see § 1.302 and § 1.304); and
- (b) in the Court, file a copy of the notice of appeal and pay the fee for appeal as provided by the rules of the Court.

[47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, effective Oct. 26, 1982; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 54 FR 29552, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989]

37 CFR 1.302 Notice of appeal.

- (a) When an appeal is taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, the appellant shall give notice thereof to the Commissioner within the time specified in § 1.304.
- (b) In interferences, the notice must be served as provided in § 1.646.
- (c) A notice of appeal, if mailed to the Office, shall be addressed as follows: Box 8, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, DC 20231.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; para. (a), 47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, effective Oct. 26, 1982; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (c) added, 53 FR 16414, May 8, 1988]

37 CFR 1.303 Civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145, 146, 306.

(a) Any applicant or any owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, and any party dissatisfied with the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences may, instead of appealing to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.301), have remedy by civil action under 35 U.S.C. 145 or 146, as appropriate. Such civil action must be commenced within the time specified in § 1.304.

(b) If an applicant in an ex parte case or an owner of a patent involved in a reexamination proceeding has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, he or she thereby waives his or her right to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(c) If any adverse party to an appeal taken to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit by a defeated party in an interference proceeding files notice with the Commissioner within twenty days after the filing of the defeated party's notice of appeal to the court (§ 1.302), that he or she elects to have all further proceedings conducted as provided in 35 U.S.C. 146, the notice of election must be served as provided in § 1.646.

[47 FR 47381, Oct. 26, 1982, effective Oct. 26, 1982; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (c), 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989]

37 CFR 1.304 Time for appeal or civil action.

- (a)
 - (1) The time for filing the notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (§ 1.302) or for commencing a civil action (§ 1.303) is two months from the date of the decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences. If a request for reconsideration or modification of the decision is filed within the time period provided under § 1.197(b) or § 1.658(b), the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action shall expire two months after action on the request. In interferences, the time for filing a cross-appeal or cross-action expires:
 - (i) 14 days after service of the notice of appeal or the summons and complaint, or
 - (ii) Two months after the date of decision of the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, whichever is later.

- (2) The time periods set forth in this section are not subject to the provisions of §§ 1.136, 1.550(c) or 1.645 (a) or (b).
- (3) The Commissioner may extend the time for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action:
 - (i) For good cause shown if requested in writing before the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action, or
 - (ii) Upon written request after the expiration of the period for filing an appeal or commencing a civil action upon a showing that the failure to act was the result of excusable neglect.

(b) The times specified in this section in days are calendar days. The time specified herein in months are calendar months except that one day shall be added to any two-month period which includes February 28. If the last day of the time specified for appeal or commencing a civil action falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday in the District of Columbia, the time is extended to the next day which is neither a Saturday, Sunday, nor a Federal holiday.

(c) If a defeated party to an interference has taken an appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and an adverse party has filed notice under 35 U.S.C. 141 electing to have all further proceedings conducted under 35 U.S.C. 146(§ 1.303(c)), the time for filing a civil action thereafter is specified in 35 U.S.C. 141. The time for filing a cross-action expires 14 days after service of the summons and complaint.

[41 FR 758, Jan. 5, 1976; para. (a) and (c), 47 FR 47382, Oct. 26, 1982; para. (a), 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (a) 49 FR Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a), 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; paras. (a) and (c) revised 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

ALLOWANCE AND ISSUE OF PATENT

37 CFR 1.311 Notice of Allowance.

(a) If, on examination, it shall appear that the applicant is entitled to a patent under the law, a notice of allowance will be sent to applicant at the correspondence address indicated in § 1.33 calling for the payment of a specified sum constituting the issue fee (§ 1.18) which shall be paid within 3 months from the date of the mailing of the notice of allowance.

(b) An authorization to charge the issue fee (§ 1.18) to a deposit account may be filed in an individual application, either before or after mailing of the notice of allowance. Where an authorization to charge the issue fee to a deposit account has been filed before the mailing of the notice of allowance, the issue fee will be automatically charged to the deposit account at the time of mailing the notice of allowance.

[47 FR 41279, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.312 Amendments after allowance.

(a) No amendment may be made as a matter of right in an application after the mailing of the notice of allowance. Any amendment pursuant to this paragraph filed before the payment of the issue fee may be entered on the recommendation of the primary examiner, approved by the Commissioner, without withdrawing the case from issue.

(b) Any amendment pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section filed after the date the issue fee is paid must be accompanied by a petition including the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and a showing of good and sufficient reasons why the amendment is necessary and was not earlier presented.

[Para. (b) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.313 Withdrawal from issue.

(a) Applications may be withdrawn from issue for further action at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. Any such petition by the applicant must include a showing of good and sufficient reasons why withdrawal of the application is necessary and, if the reason for the withdrawal is not the fault of the Office, must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i). If the application is withdrawn from issue, a new notice of allowance will be sent if the application is again allowed. Any amendment



accompanying a petition to withdraw an application from issue must comply with the requirements of § 1.312.

(b) When the issue fee has been paid, the application will not be withdrawn from issue for any reason except:

- (1) A mistake on the part of the Office;
- (2) A violation of § 1.56 or illegality in the application;
- (3) Unpatentability of one or more claims;
- (4) For interference; or
- (5) For abandonment to permit consideration of an information disclosure statement under § 1.97 in a continuing application.

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (b), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.314 Issuance of patent.

If payment of the issue fee is timely made, the patent will issue in regular course unless the application is withdrawn from issue (§ 1.313), or issuance of the patent is deferred. Any petition by the applicant requesting a deferral of the issuance of a patent must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and must include a showing of good and sufficient reasons why it is necessary to defer issuance of the patent.

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; revised, 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.315 Delivery of patent.

The patent will be delivered or mailed on the day of its date to the attorney or agent of record, if there be one; or if the attorney or agent so request, to the patentee or assignee of an interest therein; or, if there be no attorney or agent, to the patentee or to the assignee of the entire interest, if he so requests.

37 CFR 1.316 Application abandoned for failure to pay issue fee.

(a) If the issue fee is not paid within 3 months from the date of the notice of allowance, the application will be regarded as abandoned. Such an abandoned application will not be considered as pending before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the abandonment and must be accompanied by:

- (1) the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) the fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(l)); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice of allowance as though no abandonment had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

- (1) accompanied by the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
 - (i) within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned; or



- (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the application became abandoned.

(d) In all applications filed before June 8, 1995, any petition pursuant to paragraph (b) of this section not filed within six months of the date of abandonment of the application, must be accompanied by a terminal disclaimer with fee under § 1.321 dedicating to the public a terminal part of the term of any patent granted thereon equivalent to the period of abandonment of the application. The terminal disclaimer must also apply to any patent granted on any continuing application entitled under 35 U.S.C. 120 to the benefit of the filing date of the application for which revival is sought.

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (b)–(d) amended, paras. (e) and (f) added, 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993; para. (d) revised, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.317 Lapsed patents; delayed payment of balance of issue fee.

(a) If the issue fee paid is the amount specified in the Notice of Allowance, but a higher amount is required at the time the issue fee is paid, any remaining balance of the issue fee is to be paid within three months from the date of notice thereof and, if not paid, the patent will lapse at the termination of the three month period.

(b) The Commissioner may accept the payment of the remaining balance of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice thereof as though no lapse had ever occurred if upon petition the delay in payment is shown to have been unavoidable. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be promptly filed after the applicant is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, the lapse, and must be accompanied by:

- (1) the remaining balance of the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) the fee for delayed payment (§ 1.17(l)); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable. The showing must be a verified showing if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) The Commissioner may, upon petition, accept the payment of the remaining balance of the issue fee later than three months after the mailing of the notice thereof as though no lapse had ever occurred if the delay in payment was unintentional. The petition to accept the delayed payment must be:

- (1) accompanied by the remaining balance of the issue fee, unless it has been previously submitted;
- (2) accompanied by the fee for unintentionally delayed payment (§ 1.17(m));
- (3) accompanied by a statement that the delay was unintentional. The statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office. The Commissioner may require additional information where there is a question whether the delay was unintentional; and
- (4) filed either:
 - (i) within one year of the date on which the patent lapsed; or
 - (ii) within three months of the date of the first decision on a petition under paragraph (b) of this section which was filed within one year of the date on which the patent lapsed.

(d) [Reserved]

(e) Any request for reconsideration or review of a decision refusing to accept the delayed payment upon petition filed pursuant to paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section, to be considered timely, must be filed

within two months of the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment or within such time as set in the decision.

(f) The time periods set forth in this section cannot be extended, except that the three-month period set forth in paragraph (c)(4)(ii) and the time period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section may be extended under the provisions of § 1.136.

[47 FR 41280, Sept. 17, 1982, effective date Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (a)–(d) amended, paras. (e) & (f) added, 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993; para. (d) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.318 Notification of national publication of a patent based on an international application.

The Office will notify the International Bureau when a patent is issued on an application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371 and there has been no previous international publication.

[43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978]

DISCLAIMER

37 CFR 1.321 Statutory disclaimers, including terminal disclaimers.

(a) A patentee owning the whole or any sectional interest in a patent may disclaim any complete claim or claims in a patent. In like manner any patentee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of the patent granted. Such disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. A notice of the disclaimer is published in the Official Gazette and attached to the printed copies of the specification. The disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

- (1) Be signed by the patentee, or an attorney or agent of record;
- (2) Identify the patent and complete claim or claims, or term being disclaimed. A disclaimer which is not a disclaimer of a complete claim or claims, or term, will be refused recordation;
- (3) State the present extent of patentee's ownership interest in the patent; and
- (4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(b) An applicant or assignee may disclaim or dedicate to the public the entire term, or any terminal part of the term, of a patent to be granted. Such terminal disclaimer is binding upon the grantee and its successors or assigns. The terminal disclaimer, to be recorded in the Patent and Trademark Office, must:

- (1) Be signed:
 - (i) By the applicant, or
 - (ii) If there is an assignee of record of an undivided part interest, by the applicant and such assignee, or
 - (iii) If there is an assignee of record of the entire interest, by such assignee, or
 - (iv) By an attorney or agent of record;
- (2) Specify the portion of the term of the patent being disclaimed;
- (3) State the present extent of applicant's or assignee's ownership interest in the patent to be granted; and
- (4) Be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.20(d).

(c) A terminal disclaimer, when filed to obviate a double patenting rejection in a patent application or in a reexamination proceeding, must:

- (1) Comply with the provisions of paragraphs (b)(2) through (b)(4) of this section;
- (2) Be signed in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section if filed in a patent application, or in accordance with paragraph (a)(1) of this section if filed in a reexamination proceeding; and
- (3) Include a provision that any patent granted on that application or any patent subject to the reexamination proceeding shall be enforceable only for and during such period that said patent is commonly owned with the application or patent which formed the basis for the rejection.



[47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; section 1.321 revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994; revised Nov. 16, 1993]

CORRECTION OF ERRORS IN PATENT

37 CFR 1.322 Certificate of correction of Office mistake.

(a) A certificate of correction under 35 U.S.C. 254 may be issued at the request of the patentee or the patentee's assignee. Such certificate will not be issued at the request or suggestion of anyone not owning an interest in the patent, nor on motion of the Office, without first notifying the patentee (including any assignee of record) and affording the patentee an opportunity to be heard. When the request relates to a patent involved in an interference, the request shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

(b) If the nature of the mistake on the part of the Office is such that a certificate of correction is deemed inappropriate in form, the Commissioner may issue a corrected patent in lieu thereof as a more appropriate form for certificate of correction, without expense to the patentee.

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 34 FR 5550, Mar. 22, 1969; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.323 Certificate of correction of applicant's mistake.

Whenever a mistake of a clerical or typographical nature or of minor character which was not the fault of the Office, appears in a patent and a showing is made that such mistake occurred in good faith, the Commissioner may, upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(a), issue a certificate, if the correction does not involve such changes in the patent as would constitute new matter or would require reexamination. A request for a certificate of correction of a patent involved in an interference shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.635.

[34 FR 5550, Mar. 22, 1969; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.324 Correction of inventorship in patent.

Whenever a patent is issued and it appears that the correct inventor or inventors were not named through error without deceptive intention on the part of the actual inventor or inventors, the Commissioner may, on petition of all the parties and the assignees and satisfactory proof of the facts and payment of the fee set forth in § 1.20(b), or on order of a court before which such matter is called in question, issue a certificate naming only the actual inventor or inventors. A request to correct inventorship of a patent involved in an interference shall comply with the requirements of this section and shall be accompanied by a motion under § 1.634.

[47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; 48 FR 2713, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 27, 1983; 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.325 Other mistakes not corrected.

Mistakes other than those provided for in §§ 1.322, 1.323, 1.324, and not affording legal grounds for reissue or for reexamination, will not be corrected after the date of the patent.

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983, effective date Feb. 27, 1983]

ARBITRATION AWARDS

37 CFR 1.331 [Reserved]

[24 FR 10332, Dec. 22, 1959; 43 FR 20465, May 11, 1978; 47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982; deleted, 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.332 [Reserved]

[47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982; deleted, 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.333 [Reserved]

[Deleted, 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]



37 CFR 1.334 [Reserved]

[47 FR 41281, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (c), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; deleted, 57 FR 29642, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 1.335 Filing of notice of arbitration awards.

(a) Written notice of any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office by the patentee or the patentee's assignee or licensee. If the award involves more than one patent a separate notice must be filed for placement in the file of each patent. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the award.

(b) If an award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 is modified by a court, the party requesting the modification must file in the Patent and Trademark Office, a notice of the modification for placement in the file of each patent to which the modification applies. The notice must set forth the patent number, the names of the inventor and patent owner, and the names and addresses of the parties to the arbitration. The notice must also include a copy of the court's order modifying the award.

(c) Any award by an arbitrator pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 294 shall be unenforceable until any notices required by paragraph (a) or (b) of this section are filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. If any required notice is not filed by the party designated in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, any party to the arbitration proceeding may file such a notice.

[48 FR 2718, Jan. 20, 1983, effective Feb. 8, 1983]

AMENDMENT OF RULES

37 CFR 1.351 Amendments to rules will be published.

All amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the Federal Register.

37 CFR 1.352 Publication of notice of proposed amendments.

(a) Whenever required by law, notice of proposed amendments to the regulations in this part will be published in the Official Gazette and in the Federal Register. If not published with the notice, copies of the text will be furnished to any person requesting the same. All comments, suggestions, and briefs received within a time specified in the notice will be considered before adoption of the proposed amendments which may be modified in the light thereof.

(b) Oral hearings may be held at the discretion of the Commissioner.

[para. (a) amended, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994]

MAINTENANCE FEES

37 CFR 1.362 Time for payment of maintenance fees.

(a) Maintenance fees as set forth in § 1.20(e) through (g) are required to be paid in all patents based on applications filed on or after December 12, 1980, except as noted in paragraph (b) of this section, to maintain a patent in force beyond 4, 8, and 12 years after the date of grant.

(b) Maintenance fees are not required for any plant patents or any design patents. Maintenance fees are not required for a reissue patent if the patent being reissued did not require maintenance fees.

(c) The application filing dates for purposes of payment of maintenance fees are as follows:

- (1) For an application not claiming benefit of an earlier application, the actual United States filing date of the application.
- (2) For an application claiming benefit of an earlier foreign application under 35 U.S.C. 119, the United States filing date of the application.
- (3) For a continuing (continuation, division, continuation-in-part) application claiming the benefit of a prior patent application under 35 U.S.C. 120, the actual United States filing date of the continuing application.



- (4) For a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application claiming the benefit of a reissue application under 35 U.S.C. 120, the United States filing date of the original non-reissue application on which the patent reissued is based.
- (5) For an international application which has entered the United States as a Designated Office under 35 U.S.C. 371, the international filing date granted under Article 11(1) of the Patent Cooperation Treaty which is considered to be the United States filing date under 35 U.S.C. 363.

(d) Maintenance fees may be paid in patents without surcharge during the periods extending respectively from:

- (1) 3 years through 3 years and 6 months after grant for the first maintenance fee,
- (2) 7 years through 7 years and 6 months after grant for the second maintenance fee, and
- (3) 11 years through 11 years and 6 months after grant for the third maintenance fee.

(e) Maintenance fees may be paid with the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(h) during the respective grace periods after:

- (1) 3 years and 6 months and through the day of the 4th anniversary of the grant for the first maintenance fee.
- (2) 7 years and 6 months and through the day of the 8th anniversary of the grant for the second maintenance fee, and
- (3) 11 years and 6 months and through the day of the 12th anniversary of the grant for the third maintenance fee.

(f) If the last day for paying a maintenance fee without surcharge set forth in paragraph (d) of this section, or the last day for paying a maintenance fee with surcharge set forth in paragraph (e) of this section, falls on a Saturday, Sunday, or a federal holiday within the District of Columbia, the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge may be paid under paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) respectively on the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, or Federal holiday.

(g) Unless the maintenance fee and any applicable surcharge is paid within the time periods set forth in paragraphs (d), (e) or (f) of this section, the patent will expire as of the end of the grace period set forth in paragraph (e) of this section. A patent which expires for the failure to pay the maintenance fee will expire at the end of the same date (anniversary date) the patent was granted in the 4th, 8th, or 12th year after grant.

(h) The periods specified in §§ 1.362 (d) and (e) with respect to a reissue application, including a continuing reissue application thereof, are counted from the date of grant of the original non-reissue application on which the reissued patent is based.

[49 FR 34724, Aug. 31, 1984, added effective Nov. 1, 1984; paras. (a) and (e), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (c)(4) and (e) revised and para. (h) added, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994]¹

37 CFR 1.363 Fee address for maintenance fee purposes.

(a) All notices, receipts, refunds, and other communications relating to payment or refund of maintenance fees will be directed to the correspondence address used during prosecution of the application as indicated in § 1.33(a) unless:

- (1) A “fee address” for purposes of payment of maintenance fees is set forth when submitting the issue fee, or
- (2) A change in the correspondence address for all purposes is filed after payment of the issue fee, or
- (3) A “fee address” or a change in the “fee address” is filed for purposes of receiving notices, receipts, and other correspondence relating to the payment of maintenance fees after the payment of the issue fee, in which instance, the latest such address will be used.

¹ (Editor’s note: The time periods set forth in paras. (e)(1)–(3) are incorrect. The correct time periods for payment of maintenance fees with surcharge are: (1) 3 years and 6 months and through the day of the 4th anniversary of the grant for the first maintenance fee, (2) 7 years and 6 months and through the day of the 8th anniversary of the grant for the second maintenance fee, and (3) 11 years and 6 months and through the day of the 12th anniversary of the grant for the third maintenance fee.)



(b) An assignment of a patent application or patent does not result in a change of the “correspondence address” or fee address for maintenance fee purposes.

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984, added effective Nov. 1, 1984]

37 CFR 1.366 Submission of maintenance fees.

(a) The patentee may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, or any person or organization may pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of a patentee. Authorization by the patentee need not be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office to pay maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges on behalf of the patentee.

(b) A maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge submitted for a patent must be submitted in the amount due on the date the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge are paid and may be paid in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account established pursuant to § 1.25. Payment of a maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge or the authorization to charge a deposit account must be submitted within the periods set forth in § 1.362(d), (e), or (f). Any payment or authorization of maintenance fees and surcharges filed at any other time will not be accepted and will not serve as a payment of the maintenance fee except insofar as a delayed payment of the maintenance fee is accepted by the Commissioner in an expired patent pursuant to a petition filed under § 1.378. Any authorization to charge a deposit account must authorize the immediate charging of the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge to the deposit account. Payment of less than the required amount, payment in a manner other than that set forth in § 1.23, or the filing of an authorization to charge a deposit account having insufficient funds will not constitute payment of a maintenance fee or surcharge on a patent. The certificate procedures of either §§ 1.8 or 1.10 may be utilized in paying maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges.

(c) In submitting maintenance fees and any necessary surcharges, identification of the patents for which maintenance fees are being paid must include the following:

- (1) The patent number, and
- (2) The serial number of the United States application for the patent on which the maintenance fee is being paid.

(d) Payments of maintenance fees and any surcharges should identify the fee being paid for each patent as to whether it is the 3 1/2, 7 1/2, or 11 1/2 year fee, whether small entity status is being changed or claimed, the amount of the maintenance fee and any surcharge being paid, any assigned payor number, the patent issue date and the United States application filing date. If the maintenance fee and any necessary surcharge is being paid on a reissue patent, the payment must identify the reissue patent by reissue patent number and reissue application serial number as required by paragraph (c) of this section and should also include the original patent number, the original patent issue date, and the original United States application filing date.

(e) Maintenance fee payments and surcharge payments relating thereto must be submitted separate from any other payments for fees or charges, whether submitted in the manner set forth in § 1.23 or by an authorization to charge a deposit account. If maintenance fee and surcharge payments for more than one patent are submitted together, they should be submitted on as few sheets as possible with the patent numbers listed in increasing patent number order. If the payment submitted is insufficient to cover the maintenance fees and surcharges for all the listed patents, the payment will be applied in the order the patents are listed, beginning at the top of the listing.

(f) Notification of any change in status resulting in loss of entitlement to small entity status must be filed in a patent prior to paying, or at the time of paying, the earliest maintenance fee due after the date on which status as a small entity is no longer appropriate. See § 1.28(b).

(g) Maintenance fees and surcharges relating thereto will not be refunded except in accordance with § 1.26 and § 1.28(a).

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984, added effective Nov. 1, 1984; para. (b) amended, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993.]

37 CFR 1.377 Review of decision refusing to accept and record payment of a maintenance fee filed prior to expiration of patent.

(a) Any patentee who is dissatisfied with the refusal of the Patent and Trademark Office to accept and record a maintenance fee which was filed prior to the expiration of the patent may petition the Commissioner to accept and record the maintenance fee.

(b) Any petition under this section must be filed within 2 months of the action complained of, or within such other time as may be set in the action complained of, and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h). The petition may include a request that the petition fee be refunded if the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

(c) Any petition filed under this section must comply with the requirements of paragraph (b) of § 1.181 and must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest. Such petition must be in the form of a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

[49 FR 34725, Aug. 31, 1984, added effective Nov. 1, 1984]

37 CFR 1.378 Acceptance of delayed payment of maintenance fee in expired patent to reinstate patent.

(a) The Commissioner may accept the payment of any maintenance fee due on a patent after expiration of the patent if, upon petition, the delay in payment of the maintenance fee is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner to have been unavoidable (paragraph (b) of this section) or unintentional (paragraph (c) of this section) and if the surcharge required by § 1.20(i) is paid as a condition of accepting payment of the maintenance fee. If the Commissioner accepts payment of the maintenance fee upon petition, the patent shall be considered as not having expired, but will be subject to the conditions set forth in 35 U.S.C. 41(c)(2).

(b) Any petition to accept an unavoidably delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must include:

- (1) the required maintenance fee set forth in § 1.20 (e)–(g);
- (2) the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i)(1); and
- (3) a showing that the delay was unavoidable since reasonable care was taken to ensure that the maintenance fee would be paid timely and that the petition was filed promptly after the patentee was notified of, or otherwise became aware of, the expiration of the patent. The showing must enumerate the steps taken to ensure timely payment of the maintenance fee, the date, and the manner in which patentee became aware of the expiration of the patent, and the steps taken to file the petition promptly.

(c) Any petition to accept an unintentionally delayed payment of a maintenance fee filed under paragraph (a) of this section must be filed within twenty-four months after the six-month grace period provided in § 1.362(e) and must include:

- (1) the required maintenance fee set forth in § 1.20 (e)–(g);
- (2) the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i)(2); and
- (3) a statement that the delay in payment of the maintenance fee was unintentional.

(d) Any petition under this section must be signed by an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office, or by the patentee, the assignee, or other party in interest. Such petition must be in the form of a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office.

(e) Reconsideration of a decision refusing to accept a maintenance fee upon petition filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section may be obtained by filing a petition for reconsideration within two months of, or such other time as set in, the decision refusing to accept the delayed payment of the maintenance fee. Any such petition for reconsideration must be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h). After decision on the petition for reconsideration, no further reconsideration or review of the matter will be undertaken by the Commissioner. If the delayed payment of the maintenance fee is not accepted, the maintenance fee and the surcharge set forth in § 1.20(i) will be refunded following the decision on the petition for reconsideration, or after the expiration of the time for filing such a petition for reconsideration,



if none is filed. Any petition fee under this section will not be refunded unless the refusal to accept and record the maintenance fee is determined to result from an error by the Patent and Trademark Office.

[49 FR 34726, Aug. 31, 1984, added effective Nov. 1, 1984; para. (a), 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; paras. (b) and (c), 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; paras. (a)–(c) and (e), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)–(c) and (e), 58 FR 44277, Aug. 20, 1993, effective Sept. 20, 1993]

SUBPART C-INTERNATIONAL PROCESSING PROVISIONS

GENERAL INFORMATION

37 CFR 1.401 Definitions of terms under the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

- (a) The abbreviation “PCT” and the term “Treaty” mean the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
- (b) “International Bureau” means the World Intellectual Property Organization located in Geneva, Switzerland.
- (c) “Administrative Instructions” means that body of instructions for operating under the Patent Cooperation Treaty referred to in PCT Rule 89.
- (d) “Request,” when capitalized, means that element of the international application described in PCT Rules 3 and 4.
- (e) “International application,” as used in this subchapter is defined in § 1.9(b).
- (f) “Priority date” for the purpose of computing time limits under the Patent Cooperation Treaty is defined in PCT Art. 2(xi). Note also § 1.465.
- (g) “Demand,” when capitalized, means that document filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority which requests an international preliminary examination.
- (h) “Annexes” means amendments made to the claims, description or the drawings before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.
- (i) Other terms and expressions in this Subpart C not defined in this section are to be taken in the sense indicated in PCT Article 2 and 35 U.S.C. 351.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

37 CFR 1.412 The United States Receiving Office.

- (a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office is a Receiving Office only for applicants who are residents or nationals of the United States of America.
- (b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Receiving Office, will be identified by the full title “United States Receiving Office” or by the abbreviation “RO/US.”
- (c) The major functions of the Receiving Office include:
 - (1) According of international filing dates to international applications meeting the requirements of PCT Art. 11(1) and PCT Rule 20;
 - (2) Assuring that international applications meet the standards for format and content of PCT Art. 14(1), PCT Rule 9, 26, 29.1, 37, 38, 91, and portions of PCT Rules 3 through 11;
 - (3) Collecting and, when required, transmitting fees due for processing international applications (PCT Rule 14, 15, 16);
 - (4) Transmitting the record and search copies to the International Bureau and International Searching Authority, respectively (PCT Rules 22 and 23); and
 - (5) Determining compliance with applicable requirements of Part 5 of this chapter.
 - (6) Reviewing and, where the United States Receiving Office is not the competent Receiving Office under § 1.421(a) and PCT Rule 19.1 or 19.2, transmitting the international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a receiving Office unless prescriptions concerning national security prevent the application from being so transmitted (PCT Rule 19.4).

[Para. (c)(6) added, 60 FR 21438, May 2, 1995, effective June 1, 1995]



37 CFR 1.413 The United States International Searching Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an

International Searching Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau (PCT Art. 16(3)(b)).

(b) The Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Searching Authority, will be identified by the full title "United States International Searching Authority" or by the abbreviation "ISA/US."

(c) The major functions of the International Searching Authority include:

- (1) Approving or establishing the title and abstract;
- (2) Considering the matter of unity of invention;
- (3) Conducting international and international-type searches and preparing international and international-type search reports (PCT Art. 15, 17, and 18, and PCT Rules 25, 33 to 45 and 47); and
- (4) Transmitting the international search report to the applicant and the International Bureau.

37 CFR 1.414 The United States Patent and Trademark Office as a Designated Office or Elected Office.

(a) The United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as a Designated Office or Elected Office for international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected as a State in which patent protection is desired.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as a Designated Office or Elected Office during international processing will be identified by the full title "United States Designated Office" or by the abbreviation "DO/US" or by the full title "United States Elected Office" or by the abbreviation "EO/US."

(c) The major functions of the United States Designated Office or Elected Office in respect to international applications in which the United States of America has been designated or elected, include:

- (1) Receiving various notifications throughout the international stage; and
- (2) Accepting for national stage examination international applications which satisfy the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371.

[52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

37 CFR 1.415 The International Bureau.

(a) The International Bureau is the World Intellectual Property Organization located at Geneva, Switzerland. It is the international intergovernmental organization which acts as the coordinating body under the Treaty and the Regulations (PCT Art. 2 (xix) and 35 U.S.C. 351(h)).

(b) The major functions of the International Bureau include:

- (1) Publishing of international applications and the International Gazette;
- (2) Transmitting copies of international applications to Designated Offices;
- (3) Storing and maintaining record copies; and
- (4) Transmitting information to authorities pertinent to the processing of specific international applications.

37 CFR 1.416 The United States International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Pursuant to appointment by the Assembly, the United States Patent and Trademark Office will act as an International Preliminary Examining Authority for international applications filed in the United States Receiving Office and in other Receiving Offices as may be agreed upon by the Commissioner, in accordance with agreement between the Patent and Trademark Office and the International Bureau.

(b) The United States Patent and Trademark Office, when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority, will be identified by the full title "United States International Preliminary Examining Authority" or by the abbreviation "IPEA/US."



- (c) The major functions of the International Preliminary Examining Authority include:
- (1) Receiving and checking for defects in the Demand;
 - (2) Collecting the handling fee for the International Bureau and the preliminary examination fee for the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority;
 - (3) Informing applicant of receipt of the Demand;
 - (4) Considering the matter of unity of invention;
 - (5) Providing an international preliminary examination report which is a non-binding opinion on the questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be nonobvious), and to be industrially applicable; and
 - (6) Transmitting the international preliminary examination report to applicant and the International Bureau.

[Added 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

WHO MAY FILE AN INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

37 CFR 1.421 Applicant for international application.

(a) Only residents or nationals of the United States of America may file international applications in the United States Receiving Office. If an international application does not include an applicant who is indicated as being a resident or national of the United States of America, and at least one applicant:

- (1) has indicated a residence or nationality in a PCT Contracting State, or
- (2) has no residence or nationality indicated, applicant will be so notified and, if the international application includes a fee amount equivalent to that required by § 1.445(a)(5), the international application will be forwarded for processing to the International Bureau acting as a Receiving Office. (See also § 1.412(c)(6)).

(b) Although the United States Receiving Office will accept international applications filed by any resident or national of the United States of America for international processing, an international application designating the United States of America will be accepted by the Patent and Trademark Office for the national stage only if filed by the inventor or as provided in §§ 1.422, 1.423 or 1.425.

(c) International applications which do not designate the United States of America may be filed by the assignee or owner.

(d) The attorney or agent of the applicant may sign the international application Request and file the international application for the applicant if the international application when filed is accompanied by a separate power of attorney to that attorney or agent from the applicant. The separate power of attorney from the applicant may be submitted after filing if sufficient cause is shown for not submitting it at the time of filing. Note that paragraph (b) of this section requires that the applicant be the inventor if the United States of America is designated.

(e) Any indication of different applicants for the purpose of different Designated Offices must be shown on the Request portion of the international application.

(f) Changes in the person, name, or address of the applicant of an international application shall be made in accordance with PCT Rule 92bis.

(g) The wording of PCT Rule 92bis is as follows:

PCT Rule 92bis—Recording of Changes in Certain Indications in the Request or the Demand

92bis Recording of Changes by the International Bureau

- (a) The International Bureau shall, on the request of the applicant or the receiving Office, record changes in the following indications appearing in the request or demand:
 - (i) person name, residence, nationality or address of the applicant,
 - (ii) person, name or address of the agent, the common representative or the inventor.



- (b) The International Bureau shall not record the requested change if the request for recording is received by it after the expiration:
 - (i) of the time limit referred to in Article 22(1), where Article 39(1) is not applicable with respect to any Contracting State;
 - (ii) of the time limit referred to in Article 39(1)(a), where Article 39(1) is applicable with respect to at least one Contracting State.

[Paras. (f) and (g), 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; para. (a) amended, 60 FR 21438, May 2, 1995, effective June 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.422 When the inventor is dead.

In case of the death of the inventor, the legal representative (executor, administrator, etc.) of the deceased inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

37 CFR 1.423 When the inventor is insane or legally incapacitated.

In case an inventor is insane or otherwise legally incapacitated, the legal representative (guardian, conservator, etc.) of such inventor may file an international application which designates the United States of America.

37 CFR 1.424 Joint inventors.

Joint inventors must jointly file an international application which designates the United States of America; the signature of either of them alone, or less than the entire number, will be insufficient for an invention invented by them jointly, except as provided in § 1.425.

37 CFR 1.425 Filing by other than inventor.

(a) If a joint inventor refuses to join in an international application which designates the United States of America or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, the international application which designates the United States of America may be filed by the other inventor on behalf of himself or herself and the omitted inventor. Such an international application which designates the United States of America must be accompanied by proof of the pertinent facts and must state the last known address of the omitted inventor. The Patent and Trademark Office shall forward notice of the filing of the international application to the omitted inventor at said address.

(b) Whenever an inventor refuses to execute an international application which designates the United States of America, or cannot be found or reached after diligent effort, a person to whom the inventor has assigned or agreed in writing to assign the invention or who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter justifying such action may file the international application on behalf of and as agent for the inventor. Such an international application which designates the United States of America must be accompanied by proof of the pertinent facts and a showing that such action is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties or to prevent irreparable damage and must state the last known address of the inventor. The assignment, written agreement to assign or other evidence of proprietary interest, or a verified copy thereof, must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. The Office shall forward notice of the filing of the application to the inventor at the address stated in the application.

THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

37 CFR 1.431 International application requirements.

(a) An international application shall contain, as specified in the Treaty and the Regulations, a Request, a description, one or more claims, an abstract, and one or more drawings (where required). (PCT Art. 3(2) and Section 207 of the Administrative Instructions.)

(b) An international filing date will be accorded by the United States Receiving Office, at the time of receipt of the international application, provided that:

- (1) At least one applicant is a United States resident or national and the papers filed at the time of receipt of the international application so indicate (35 U.S.C. 361(a), PCT Art. 11(1)(i)).

- (2) The international application is in the English language (35 U.S.C. 361(c), PCT Art. 11(1)(ii)).
- (3) The international application contains at least the following elements (PCT Art. 11(1)(iii)):
 - (i) An indication that it is intended as an international application (PCT Rule 4.2);
 - (ii) The designation of at least one Contracting State of the International Patent Cooperation Union (§ 1.432);
 - (iii) The name of the applicant, as prescribed (note §§ 1.421–1.424);
 - (iv) A part which on the face of it appears to be a description; and
 - (v) A part which on the face of it appears to be a claim.

(c) Payment of the basic portion of the international fee (PCT Rule 15.2) and the transmittal and search fees (§ 1.445) may be made in full at the time the international application papers required by paragraph (b) of this section are deposited or within one month thereafter. If the basic, transmittal and search fees are not paid within one month from the date of receipt of the international application, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of:

- (1) 50% of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or
- (2) an amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis).

The one-month time limit set in the notice to pay deficient fees may not be extended.

(d) If the payment needed to cover the transmittal fee, the basic fee, the search fee, one designation fee and the late payment fee pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section is not timely made, the Receiving Office will declare the international application withdrawn under PCT Article 14(3)(a).

[43 FR 20486, May 11, 1978; paras. (b), (c), (d) and (e), 50 FR 9383, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (d) amended 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; paras. (b)(1), (b)(3)(ii), (c) and (d) amended, para. (e) deleted, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.432 Designation of States and payment of designation fees.

(a) The designation of States including an indication that applicant wishes to obtain a regional patent, where applicable, shall appear in the Request upon filing and must be indicated as set forth in PCT Rule 4.9 and section 115 of the Administrative Instructions. Applicant must specify at least one national or regional designation on filing of the international application for a filing date to be granted.

(b) If the fees necessary to cover all the national and regional designations specified in the Request are not paid by the applicant within one year from the priority date or within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, applicant will be notified and given one month within which to pay the deficient designation fees plus a late payment fee equal to the greater of 50% of the amount of the deficient fees up to a maximum amount equal to the basic fee, or an amount equal to the transmittal fee (PCT Rule 16bis). The one-month time limit set in the notification of deficient designation fees may not be extended. Failure to timely pay at least one designation fee will result in the withdrawal of the international application. The one designation fee may be paid:

- (1) within one year from the priority date,
- (2) within one month from the date of receipt of the international application if that month expires after the expiration of one year from the priority date, or
- (3) with the late payment fee defined in this paragraph within the time set in the notification of the deficient designation fees. If after a notification of deficient designation fees the applicant makes timely payment, but the amount paid is not sufficient to cover the late payment fee and all designation fees, the Receiving Office will, after allocating payment for the basic, search, transmittal and late payment fees, allocate the amount paid in accordance with PCT Rule 16bis.1(c) and withdraw the unpaid designations. The notification of deficient designation fees pursuant to this paragraph may be made simultaneously with any notification pursuant to § 1.431(c).

(c) On filing the international application, in addition to specifying at least one national or regional designation under PCT Rule 4.9(a), applicant may also indicate under PCT Rule 4.9(b) that all other designations permitted under the Treaty are made. The latter indication under PCT Rule 4.9(b) must be made in a statement on the Request that any designation made under this paragraph is subject to confirmation (PCT Rule 4.9(c)) not later than the expiration of 15 months from the priority date by:

- (1) Filing a written notice with the United States Receiving Office specifying the national and/or regional designations being confirmed;
- (2) Paying the designation fee for each designation being confirmed; and
- (3) Paying the confirmation fee specified in § 1.445(a)(4).

Unconfirmed designations will be considered withdrawn. If the amount submitted is not sufficient to cover the designation fee and the confirmation fee for each designation being confirmed, the Receiving Office will allocate the amount paid in accordance with any priority of designations specified by applicant. If applicant does not specify any priority of designations, the allocation of the amount paid will be made in accordance with PCT Rule 16 bis.1(c).

[43 FR 20486, May 11, 1978; para. (b) amended 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; paras. (a), (b) amended and para. (c) added, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.433 Physical requirements of international application.

- (a) The international application and each of the documents that may be referred to in the check list of the Request (PCT Rule 3.3(a)(ii)) shall be filed in one copy only.
- (b) All sheets of the international application must be on A4 size paper (21.0 × 29.7 cm.).
- (c) Other physical requirements for international applications are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and sections 201–207 of the Administrative Instructions.

37 CFR 1.434 The request.

- (a) The request shall be made on a standardized form (PCT Rules 3 and 4). Copies of printed Request forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed forms should be marked “Box PCT.”
- (b) The Check List portion of the Request form should indicate each document accompanying the international application on filing.
- (c) All information, for example, addresses, names of States and dates, shall be indicated in the Request as required by PCT Rule 4 and Administrative Instructions 110 and 201.
- (d) International applications which designate the United States of America shall include:
 - (1) The name, address and signature of the inventor, except as provided by §§ 1.421(d), 1.422, 1.423 and 1.425;
 - (2) A reference to any copending national application or international application designating the United States of America, if the benefit of the filing date for the prior copending application is to be claimed.

[Para. (a) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.435 The description.

- (a) Requirements as to the content and form of the description are set forth in PCT Rules 5, 9, 10, and 11 and Administrative Instruction 204 and shall be adhered to.
- (b) In international applications designating the United States the description must contain upon filing an indication of the best mode contemplated by the inventor for carrying out the claimed invention.

37 CFR 1.436 The claims.

The requirements as to the content and format of claims are set forth in PCT Art. 6 and PCT Rules 6, 9, 10, and 11 and shall be adhered to. The number of the claims shall be reasonable, considering the nature of the invention claimed.



37 CFR 1.437 The drawings.

(a) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, when drawings are necessary for the understanding of the invention, or are mentioned in the description, they must be part of an international application as originally filed in the United States Receiving Office in order to maintain the international filing date during the national stage (PCT Art. 7).

(b) Drawings missing from the application upon filing will be accepted if such drawings are received within 30 days of the date of first receipt of the incomplete papers. If the missing drawings are received within the 30-day period, the international filing date shall be the date on which such drawings are received. If such drawings are not timely received, all references to drawings in the international application shall be considered nonexistent (PCT Art. 14(2), Administrative Instruction 310).

(c) The physical requirements for drawings are set forth in PCT Rule 11 and shall be adhered to.

37 CFR 1.438 The abstract.

(a) Requirements as to the content and form of the abstract are set forth in PCT Rule 8, and shall be adhered to.

(b) Lack of an abstract upon filing of an international application will not affect the granting of a filing date. However, failure to furnish an abstract within one month from the date of the notification by the Receiving Office will result in the international application being declared withdrawn.

FEES

37 CFR 1.445 International application filing, processing, and search fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international applications are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

- (1) A transmittal fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 14) \$220.00
- (2) A search fee (see 35 U.S.C. 361(d) and PCT Rule 16) where:
 - (i) No corresponding prior United States national application with basic filing fee has been filed \$660.00
 - (ii) A corresponding prior United States national application with basic filing fee has been filed \$430.00
- (3) A supplemental search fee when required, per additional invention \$190.00
- (4) A confirmation fee (PCT Rule 96) equal to 50% of the sum of designation fees for the national and regional designations being confirmed (§ 1.432(c)).
- (5) A fee equivalent to the transmittal fee in paragraph (a)(1) of this section for transmittal of an international application to the International Bureau for processing in its capacity as a Receiving Office (PCT Rule 19.4).

(b) The basic fee and designation fee portion of the international fee shall be as prescribed in PCT Rule 15.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; para. (a), 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (a)(4)–(6), 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; para. (a) amended 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; paras. (a)(2) and (3), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, 54 FR 9432, March 7, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 27, 1991; para. (a), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (a)(4) added, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993; paras. (a)(1)–(3), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; para. (a)(5) added, 60 FR 21438, May 2, 1995, effective June 1, 1995; para. (a) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.446 Refund of international application filing and processing fees.

(a) Money paid for international application fees, where paid by actual mistake or in excess, such as a payment not required by law or Treaty and its Regulations, will be refunded.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Refund of the supplemental search fees will be made if such refund is determined to be warranted by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee acting under PCT Rule 40.2(c).

(d) The international and search fees will be refunded if no international filing date is accorded or if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the record copy to the International Bureau (PCT Rules 15.6 and 16.2). The search fee will be refunded if the application is withdrawn before transmittal of the search copy to the International Searching Authority. The transmittal fee will not be refunded.

(e) The handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) will be refunded (PCT Rule 57.6) only if:

- (1) The Demand is withdrawn before the Demand has been sent by the International Preliminary Examining Authority to the International Bureau, or
- (2) The Demand is considered not to have been submitted (PCT Rule 54.4(a)).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; para. (b), 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (b), 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; 50 FR 31826, Aug. 6, 1985, effective Oct. 5, 1985; para. (d) amended and para. (e) added, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

PRIORITY

37 CFR 1.451 The priority claim and priority document in an international application.

(a) The claim for priority must be made on the Request (PCT Rule 4.10) in a manner complying with sections 110 and 115 of the Administrative Instructions.

(b) Whenever the priority of an earlier United States national application is claimed in an international application, the applicant may request in a letter of transmittal accompanying the international application upon filing with the United States Receiving Office, or in a separate letter filed in the Receiving Office not later than 16 months after the priority date, that the Patent and Trademark Office prepare a certified copy of the national application for transmittal to the International Bureau (PCT Art. 8 and PCT Rule 17). The fee for preparing a certified copy is stated in § 1.19(b)(1).

(c) If a certified copy of the priority document is not submitted together with the international application on filing, or if the priority application was filed in the United States and a request and appropriate payment for preparation of such a certified copy do not accompany the international application on filing or are not filed within 16 months of the priority date, the certified copy of the priority document must be furnished by the applicant to the International Bureau or to the United States Receiving Office within the time limit specified in PCT Rule 17.1(a).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 47 FR 40140, Sept. 10, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; para. (b), 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982; paras. (b) & (c), 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985; para. (b), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

REPRESENTATION

37 CFR 1.455 Representation in international applications.

(a) Applicants of international applications may be represented by attorneys or agents registered to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office or by an applicant appointed as a common representative (PCT Art. 49, Rules 4.8 and 90 and § 10.10). If applicants have not appointed an attorney or agent or one of the applicants to represent them, and there is more than one applicant, the applicant first named in the request and who is entitled to file in the U.S. Receiving Office shall be considered to be the common representative of all the applicants. An attorney or agent having the right to practice before a national office with which an international application is filed and for which the United States is an International Searching Authority or International Preliminary Examining Authority may be appointed to represent the applicants in the international application before that authority. An attorney or agent may appoint an associate attorney or agent who shall also then be of record (PCT Rule 90.1(d)). The appointment of an attorney or agent, or of a common representative, revokes any earlier appointment unless otherwise indicated (PCT Rule 90.6(b) and (c)).

(b) Appointment of an agent, attorney, or common representative (PCT Rule 4.8) must be effected either in the Request form, signed by all applicants, or in a separate power of attorney submitted either to the United States Receiving Office or to the International Bureau.

(c) Powers of attorney and revocations thereof should be submitted to the United States Receiving Office until the issuance of the international search report.



(d) The addressee for correspondence will be as indicated in section 108 of the Administrative Instructions.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; 50 FR 5171, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

TRANSMITTAL OF RECORD COPY

37 CFR 1.461 Procedures for transmittal of record copy to the International Bureau.

(a) Transmittal of the record copy of the international application to the International Bureau shall be made by the United States Receiving Office.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) No copy of an international application may be transmitted to the International Bureau, a foreign Designated Office, or other foreign authority by the United States Receiving Office or the applicant, unless the applicable requirements of Part 5 of this chapter have been satisfied.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; paras. (a) and (b), 50 FR 9384, Mar. 7, 1985, effective May 8, 1985]

TIMING

37 CFR 1.465 Timing of application processing based on the priority date.

(a) For the purpose of computing time limits under the Treaty, the priority date shall be defined as in PCT Art. 2(xi).

(b) When a claimed priority date is cancelled under PCT Rule 4.10(d), or considered not to have been made under PCT Rule 4.10(b), the priority date for the purposes of computing time limits will be the date of the earliest valid remaining priority claim of the international application, or if none, the international filing date.

(c) When corrections under PCT Art. 11(2), Art. 14(2) or PCT Rule 20.2(a) (i) or (iii) are timely submitted, and the date of receipt of such corrections falls later than one year from the claimed priority date or dates, the Receiving Office shall proceed under PCT Rule 4.10(d).

37 CFR 1.468 Delays in meeting time limits.

Delays in meeting time limits during international processing of international applications may only be excused as provided in PCT Rule 82. For delays in meeting time limits in a national application, see § 1.137.

AMENDMENTS

37 CFR 1.471 Corrections and amendments during international processing.

(a) All corrections submitted to the United States Receiving Office must be in the form of replacement sheets and be accompanied by a letter that draws attention to the differences between the replaced sheets and the replacement sheets, except that the deletion of lines of text, the correction of simple typographical errors, and one addition or change of not more than five words per sheet may be stated in a letter and the United States Receiving Office will make the deletion or transfer the correction to the international application, provided that such corrections do not adversely affect the clarity and direct reproducibility of the application (PCT Rule 26.4).

(b) Amendments of claims submitted to the International Bureau shall be as prescribed by PCT Rule 46.

37 CFR 1.472 Changes in person, name, or address of applicants and inventors.

All requests for a change in person, name or address of applicants and inventor should be sent to the United States Receiving Office until the time of issuance of the international search report. Thereafter requests for such changes should be submitted to the International Bureau.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; redesignated at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

UNITY OF INVENTION

37 CFR 1.475 Unity of invention before the International Searching Authority, the International Preliminary Examining Authority, and during the national stage.

(a) An international and a national stage application shall relate to one invention only or to a group of inventions so linked as to form a single general inventive concept (“requirement of unity of invention”). Where a group of inventions is claimed in an application, the requirement of unity of invention shall be fulfilled only when there is a technical relationship among those inventions involving one or more of the same or corresponding special technical features. The expression “special technical features” shall mean those technical features that define a contribution which each of the claimed inventions, considered as a whole, makes over the prior art.

(b) An international or a national stage application containing claims to different categories of invention will be considered to have unity of invention if the claims are drawn only to one of the following combinations of categories:

- (1) A product and a process specially adapted for the manufacture of said product; or
- (2) A product and process of use of said product; or
- (3) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and a use of the said product; or
- (4) A process and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process; or
- (5) A product, a process specially adapted for the manufacture of the said product, and an apparatus or means specifically designed for carrying out the said process.

(c) If an application contains claims to more or less than one of the combinations of categories of invention set forth in paragraph (b) of this section, unity of invention might not be present.

(d) If multiple products, processes of manufacture, or uses are claimed, the first invention of the category first mentioned in the claims of the application and the first recited invention of each of the other categories related thereto will be considered as the main invention in the claims, see PCT Article 17(3)(a) and § 1.476(c).

(e) The determination whether a group of inventions is so linked as to form a single general inventive concept shall be made without regard to whether the inventions are claimed in separate claims or as alternatives within a single claim.

[Added 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; paras. (a)–(e) amended and para. (f) deleted, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.476 Determination of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) Before establishing the international search report, the International Searching Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in § 1.475.

(b) If the International Searching Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it shall inform the applicant accordingly and invite the payment of additional fees (note § 1.445 and PCT Art. 17(3)(a) and PCT Rule 40). The applicant will be given a time period in accordance with PCT Rule 40.3 to pay the additional fees due.

(c) In the case of noncompliance with unity of invention and where no additional fees are paid, the international search will be performed on the invention first mentioned (main invention) in the claims.

(d) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Searching Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]



37 CFR 1.477 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Searching Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Searching Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are considered excessive, or both (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international search report when forwarded to the Designated Offices may notify the International Searching Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international search report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau (PCT Rule 40.2(c)).

[43 FR 20466, May 11, 1978; redesignated and amended at 52 FR 20047, May 28, 1987]

INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION

37 CFR 1.480 Demand for international preliminary examination.

(a) On the filing of a Demand and payment of the fees for international preliminary examination (§ 1.482), the international application shall be the subject of an international preliminary examination. The preliminary examination fee (§ 1.482(a)(1)) and the handling fee (§ 1.482(b)) shall be due at the time of filing of the Demand.

(b) The Demand shall be made on a standardized form. Copies of the printed Demand forms are available from the Patent and Trademark Office. Letters requesting printed Demand forms should be marked "Box PCT."

(c) If the Demand is made prior to the expiration of the 19th month from the priority date and the United States of America is elected, the provisions of § 1.495 shall apply rather than § 1.494.

(d) Withdrawal of a proper Demand prior to the start of the international preliminary examination will entitle applicant to a refund of the preliminary examination fee minus the amount of the transmittal fee set forth in § 1.445(a)(1).

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987; para. (d), 53 FR 47810, Nov. 28, 1988, effective Jan. 1, 1989; para. (b) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.482 International preliminary examination fees.

(a) The following fees and charges for international preliminary examination are established by the Commissioner under the authority of 35 U.S.C. 376:

- (1) A preliminary examination fee is due on filing the Demand:
 - (i) Where an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority, a preliminary examination fee of \$470.00
 - (ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office, a preliminary examination fee of \$710.00
- (2) An additional preliminary examination fee when required, per additional invention:
 - (i) Where the international Searching Authority for the international application was the United States Patent and Trademark Office \$140.00
 - (ii) Where the International Searching Authority for the international application was an authority other than the United States Patent and Trademark Office \$250.00

(b) The handling fee is due on filing the Demand. (35 U.S.C. 6, 376)

[52 FR 20048, May 28, 1987; para. (a), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 27, 1991; paras. (a)(1) and (a)(2)(ii), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; paras. (a)(2)(i) and (b) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993; paras. (a)(1) and (a)(2)(ii), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; paras. (a)(1)(i), (a)(1)(ii) & (a)(2)(ii) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.484 Conduct of international preliminary examination.

(a) An international preliminary examination will be conducted to formulate a non-binding opinion as to whether the claimed invention has novelty, involves inventive step (is non-obvious) and is industrially applicable.

(b) International preliminary examination will begin promptly upon receipt of a Demand which requests examination based on the application as filed or as amended by an amendment which has been received by the United States International Preliminary Examining Authority. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 19 amendment which has not been received, examination may begin at 20 months without receipt of a PCT Article 19 amendment. Where a Demand requests examination based on a PCT Article 34 amendment which has not been received, applicant will be notified and given a time period within which to submit the amendment. Examination will begin after the earliest of:

- (1) Receipt of the amendment;
- (2) Receipt of applicant's statement that no amendment will be made; or
- (3) Expiration of the time period set in the notification.

No international preliminary examination report will be established prior to issuance of an international search report.

(c) No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.

(d) The International Preliminary Examining Authority will establish a written opinion if any defect exists or if the claimed invention lacks novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability and will set a non-extendable time limit in the written opinion for the applicant to respond.

(e) If no written opinion under paragraph (d) of this section is necessary, or after any written opinion and the response thereto or the expiration of the time limit for response to such written opinion, an international preliminary examination report will be established by the International Preliminary Examining Authority. One copy will be submitted to the International Bureau and one copy will be submitted to the applicant.

(f) An applicant will be permitted a personal or telephone interview with the examiner, which must be conducted during the non-extendable time limit for response by the applicant to a written opinion. Additional interviews may be conducted where the examiner determines that such additional interviews may be helpful to advancing the international preliminary examination procedure. A summary of any such personal or telephone interview must be filed by the applicant as a part of the response to the written opinion or, if applicant files no response, be made of record in the file by the examiner.

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987; para. (b) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.485 Amendments by applicant during international preliminary examination.

(a) The applicant may make amendments at the time of filing of the Demand and within the time limit set by the International Preliminary Examining Authority for response to any notification under § 1.484(b) or to any written opinion. Any such amendments must:

- (1) Be made by submitting a replacement sheet for every sheet of the application which differs from the sheet it replaces unless an entire sheet is cancelled, and
- (2) Include a description of how the replacement sheet differs from the replaced sheet.

(b) If an amendment cancels an entire sheet of the international application, that amendment shall be communicated in a letter.

[Added 52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987; amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.487 [Reserved]

[Added 52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.488 Determination of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) Before establishing any written opinion or the international preliminary examination report, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will determine whether the international application complies with the requirement of unity of invention as set forth in § 1.475.



- (b) If the International Preliminary Examining Authority considers that the international application does not comply with the requirement of unity of invention, it may:
- (1) Issue a written opinion and/or an international preliminary examination report, in respect of the entire international application and indicate that unity of invention is lacking and specify the reasons therefor without extending an invitation to restrict or pay additional fees. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority.
 - (2) Invite the applicant to restrict the claims or pay additional fees, pointing out the categories of the invention found, within a set time limit which will not be extended. No international preliminary examination will be conducted on inventions not previously searched by an International Searching Authority, or
 - (3) If applicant fails to restrict the claims or pay additional fees within the time limit set for response, the International Preliminary Examining Authority will issue a written opinion and/or establish an international preliminary examination report on the main invention and shall indicate the relevant facts in the said report. In case of any doubt as to which invention is the main invention, the invention first mentioned in the claims and previously searched by an International Searching Authority shall be considered the main invention.

(c) Lack of unity of invention may be directly evident before considering the claims in relation to any prior art, or after taking the prior art into consideration, as where a document discovered during the search shows the invention claimed in a generic or linking claim lacks novelty or is clearly obvious, leaving two or more claims joined thereby without a common inventive concept. In such a case the International Preliminary Examining Authority may raise the objection of lack of unity of invention.

[52 FR 20049, May 28, 1987; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.489 Protest to lack of unity of invention before the International Preliminary Examining Authority.

(a) If the applicant disagrees with the holding of lack of unity of invention by the International Preliminary Examining Authority, additional fees may be paid under protest, accompanied by a request for refund and a statement setting forth reasons for disagreement or why the required additional fees are excessive, or both.

(b) Protest under paragraph (a) of this section will be examined by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee. In the event that the applicant's protest is determined to be justified, the additional fees or a portion thereof will be refunded.

(c) An applicant who desires that a copy of the protest and the decision thereon accompany the international preliminary examination report when forwarded to the Elected Offices, may notify the International Preliminary Examining Authority to that effect any time prior to the issuance of the international preliminary examination report. Thereafter, such notification should be directed to the International Bureau.

[Added 52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

NATIONAL STAGE

37 CFR 1.491 Entry into the national stage.

An international application enters the national stage when the applicant has filed the documents and fees required by 35 U.S.C. 371(c) within the periods set in §§ 1.494 or 1.495.

[Added 52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987]



37 CFR 1.492 National stage fees.

The following fees and charges are established for international applications entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371:

(a) The basic national fee:

- (1) Where an international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:
By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$340.00
By other than a small entity \$680.00
- (2) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, but an international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office as an International Searching Authority:
By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$375.00
By other than a small entity \$750.00
- (3) Where no international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid and no international search fee as set forth in § 1.445(a)(2) has been paid on the international application to the United States Patent and Trademark Office:
By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$505.00
By other than a small entity \$1,010.00
- (4) Where the international preliminary examination fee as set forth in § 1.482 has been paid to the United States Patent and Trademark Office and the international preliminary examination report states that the criteria of novelty, inventive step (non-obviousness), and industrial applicability, as defined in PCT Article 33(1) to (4) have been satisfied for all the claims presented in the application entering the national stage (see § 1.496(b)):
By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$47.00
By other than a small entity \$94.00
- (5) Where a search report on the international application has been prepared by the European Patent Office or the Japanese Patent Office:
By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$440.00
By other than a small entity \$880.00

(b) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each independent claim in excess of three:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$39.00
- By other than a small entity \$78.00

(c) In addition to the basic national fee, for filing or later presentation of each claim (whether independent or dependent) in excess of 20 (Note that § 1.75(c) indicates how multiple dependent claims are considered for fee calculation purposes.):

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$11.00
- By other than a small entity \$22.00

(d) In addition to the basic national fee, if the application contains, or is amended to contain, a multiple dependent claim(s), per application:

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$125.00
- By other than a small entity \$250.00

(If the additional fees required by paragraph (b), (c), and (d) are not paid on presentation of the claims for which the additional fees are due, they must be paid or the claims cancelled by amendment, prior to the expiration of the time period set for response by the Office in any notice of fee deficiency.)

(e) Surcharge for filing the oath or declaration later than 20 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.494(c) or later than 30 months from the priority date pursuant to § 1.495(c):

- By a small entity (§ 1.9(f)) \$65.00
- By other than a small entity \$130.00

(f) For filing an English translation of an international application later than 20 months after the priority date (§ 1.494(c)) or filing an English translation of the international application or of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report later than 30 months after the priority date (§ 1.495(c) and (e)) \$130.00

(35 U.S.C. 6, 376)

[52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; paras. (a)(1)–(3), (b), (d)–(f), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; para. (a)(5) added, 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; revised, 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991; paras. (a)(1)–(a)(3), (a)(5) and (b)–(d), 57 FR 38190, Aug. 21, 1992, effective Oct. 1, 1992; para. (e) amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993; paras. (a), (b) and (d), 59 FR 43736, Aug. 25, 1994, effective Oct. 1, 1994; paras. (a), (b), & (d) amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug 11, 1995, effective, Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 1.494 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as a Designated Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has not been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date (see § 1.495), the applicant must fulfill the requirements of PCT Article 22 and 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraph (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 20 months from the priority date:

- (1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and
- (2) The basic national fee (see § 1.492(a)). The 20-month time limit may not be extended.

(c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of 20 months from the priority date but omits:

- (1) A translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) and/or
- (2) The oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4); see § 1.497), applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in § 1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of 20 months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in § 1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of 20 months after the priority date. A copy of the notification mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office.

(d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 20 months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of 20 months from the priority date will be considered to be cancelled. The 20-month time limit may not be extended.

(e) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.

(f) The documents and fees submitted under paragraph (b) and (c) of this section must be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, otherwise the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111.

(g) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States 20 months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within 20 months from the priority date where the United States has been designated but not elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within 20 months from the priority date but any required translation of the international application as filed

and/or the oath or declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[Added 52 FR 20050, May 28, 1987; paras. (a)–(d) and (g) amended and para. (h) deleted, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.495 Entering the national stage in the United States of America as an Elected Office.

(a) Where the United States of America has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date, the applicant must fulfill the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371 within the time periods set forth in paragraph (b) and (c) of this section in order to prevent the abandonment of the international application as to the United States of America. International applications for which those requirements are timely fulfilled will enter the national stage and obtain an examination as to the patentability of the invention in the United States of America.

(b) To avoid abandonment of the application, the applicant shall furnish to the United States Patent and Trademark Office not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date:

- (1) A copy of the international application, unless it has been previously communicated by the International Bureau or unless it was originally filed in the United States Patent and Trademark Office; and
- (2) The basic national fee (see § 1.492(a)). The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(c) If applicant complies with paragraph (b) of this section before expiration of 30 months from the priority date but omits:

- (1) A translation of the international application, as filed, into the English language, if it was originally filed in another language (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) and/or
- (2) The oath or declaration of the inventor (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4); see § 1.497), applicant will be so notified and given a period of time within which to file the translation and/or oath or declaration in order to prevent abandonment of the application. The payment of the processing fee set forth in § 1.492(f) is required for acceptance of an English translation later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. The payment of the surcharge set forth in § 1.492(e) is required for acceptance of the oath or declaration of the inventor later than the expiration of 30 months after the priority date. A copy of the notification mailed to applicant should accompany any response thereto submitted to the Office.

(d) A copy of any amendments to the claims made under PCT Article 19, and a translation of those amendments into English, if they were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Amendments under PCT Article 19 which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date will be considered to be cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(e) A translation into English of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report, if the annexes were made in another language, must be furnished not later than the expiration of 30 months from the priority date. Translations of the annexes which are not received by the expiration of 30 months from the priority date may be submitted within any period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section accompanied by the processing fee set forth in § 1.492(f). Annexes for which translations are not timely received will be considered cancelled. The 30-month time limit may not be extended.

(f) Verification of the translation of the international application or any other document pertaining to an international application may be required where it is considered necessary, if the international application or other document was filed in a language other than English.

(g) The documents submitted under paragraph (b) and (c) of this section must be clearly identified as a submission to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, otherwise the submission will be considered as being made under 35 U.S.C. 111.

(h) An international application becomes abandoned as to the United States 30 months from the priority date if the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section have not been complied with within 30 months from the priority date where the United States has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date. If the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are complied with within 30 months from the priority date but any required translation of the international application as filed and/or the oath or



declaration are not timely filed, an international application will become abandoned as to the United States upon expiration of the time period set pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section.

[Added 52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; paras. (a)–(e) & (h) amended and para. (i) deleted, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.496 Examination of international applications in the national stage.

(a) International applications which have complied with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 371(c) will be taken up for action based on the date on which such requirements were met. However, unless an express request for early processing has been filed under 35 U.S.C. 371(f), no action may be taken prior to one month after entry into the national stage.

(b) A national stage application filed under 35 U.S.C. 371 may have paid therein the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) if it contains, or is amended to contain, at the time of entry into the national stage, only claims which have been indicated in an international preliminary examination report prepared by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as satisfying the criteria of PCT Article 33(1)–(4) as to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) has been paid may be amended subsequent to the date of entry into the national stage only to the extent necessary to eliminate objections as to form or to cancel rejected claims. Such national stage applications in which the basic national fee as set forth in § 1.492(a)(4) has been paid will be taken up out of order.

[Added 52 FR 20051, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

37 CFR 1.497 Oath or declaration under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4).

(a) When an applicant of an international application, if the inventor, desires to enter the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 pursuant to §§ 1.494 or 1.495, he or she must file an oath or declaration in accordance with § 1.63.

(b) If the international application was made as provided in §§ 1.422, 1.423 or 1.425, the applicant shall state his or her relationship to the inventor and, upon information and belief, the facts which the inventor is required by § 1.63 to state.

[Added 52 FR 20052, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987]

37 CFR 1.499 Unity of invention during the national stage.

If the examiner find that a national stage application lacks unity of invention under § 1.475, the examiner may in an Office action require the applicant in the response to that action to elect the invention to which the claims shall be restricted. Such requirement may be made before any action on the merits but may be made at any time before the final action at the discretion of the examiner. Review of any such requirement is provided under §§ 1.143 and 1.144.

[Added 52 FR 20052, May 28, 1987, effective July 1, 1987; amended, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

SUBPART D-REEXAMINATION OF PATENTS

CITATION OF PRIOR ART

37 CFR 1.501 Citation of prior art in patent files.

(a) At any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, any person may cite to the Patent and Trademark Office in writing prior art consisting of patents or printed publications which that person states to be pertinent and applicable to the patent and believes to have a bearing on the patentability of any claim of a particular patent. If the citation is made by the patent owner, the explanation of pertinency and applicability may include an explanation of how the claims differ from the prior art. Citations by the patent owner under § 1.555 and by a reexamination requester under either §§ 1.510 or 1.535 will be entered in the patent file during a reexamination proceeding. The entry in the patent file of citations submitted after the date of an order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525 by persons other than the patent owner, or a reexamination requester under either §§ 1.510 or 1.535, will be delayed until the reexamination proceedings have been terminated.



(b) If the person making the citation wishes his or her identity to be excluded from the patent file and kept confidential, the citation papers must be submitted without any identification of the person making the submission.

(c) Citations of patent or printed publications by the public in patent files should either:

(1) Reflect that a copy of the same has been mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c); or in the event service is not possible

(2) be filed with the Office in duplicate.

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

REQUEST FOR REEXAMINATION

37 CFR 1.510 Request for reexamination.

(a) Any person may, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, file a request for reexamination by the Patent and Trademark Office of any claim of the patent on the basis of prior art patents or printed publications cited under § 1.501. The request must be accompanied by the fee for requesting reexamination set in § 1.20(c).

(b) Any request for reexamination must include the following parts:

(1) A statement pointing out each substantial new question of patentability based on prior patents and printed publications.

(2) An identification of every claim for which reexamination is requested, and a detailed explanation of the pertinency and manner of applying the cited prior art to every claim for which reexamination is requested. If appropriate the party requesting reexamination may also point out how claims distinguish over cited prior art.

(3) A copy of every patent or printed publication relied upon or referred to in paragraph (b)(1) and (2) of this section accompanied by an English language translation of all the necessary and pertinent parts of any non-English language patent or printed publication.

(4) The entire specification (including claims) and drawings of the patent for which reexamination is requested must be furnished in the form of cut-up copies of the original patent with only a single column of the printed patent securely mounted or reproduced in permanent form on one side of a separate paper. A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent must also be included.

(5) A certification that a copy of the request filed by a person other than the patent owner has been served in its entirety on the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). The name and address of the party served must be indicated. If service was not possible, a duplicate copy must be supplied to the Office.

(c) If the request does not include the fee for requesting reexamination or all of the parts required by paragraph (b) of this section, the person identified as requesting reexamination will be so notified and given an opportunity to complete the request within a specified time. If the fee for requesting reexamination has been paid but the defect in the request is not corrected within the specified time, the determination whether or not to institute reexamination will be made on the request as it then exists. If the fee for requesting reexamination has not been paid, no determination will be made and the request will be placed in the patent file as a citation if it complies with the requirements of § 1.501(a).

(d) The filing of the request is:

(1) The date on which the request including the entire fee for requesting reexamination is received in the Patent and Trademark Office; or

(2) the date on which the last portion of the fee for requesting reexamination is received.

(e) A request filed by the patent owner may include a proposed amendment in accordance with § 1.121(f).

(f) If a request is filed by an attorney or agent identifying another party on whose behalf the request is being filed, the attorney or agent must have a power of attorney from that party or be acting in a representative capacity pursuant to § 1.34(a).

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981; para. (a), 47 FR 41282, Sept. 17, 1982, effective Oct. 1, 1982]

37 CFR 1.515 Determination of the request for reexamination.

(a) Within three months following the filing date of a request for reexamination, an examiner will consider the request and determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability affecting any claim of the patent is raised by the request and the prior art cited therein, with or without consideration of other patents or printed publications. The examiner's determination will be based on the claims in effect at the time of the determination and will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c) and to the person requesting reexamination.

(b) Where no substantial new question of patentability has been found, a refund of a portion of the fee for requesting reexamination will be made to the requester in accordance with § 1.26(c).

(c) The requester may seek review by a petition to the Commissioner under § 1.181 within one month of the mailing date of the examiner's determination refusing reexamination. Any such petition must comply with § 1.181(b). If no petition is timely filed or if the decision on petition affirms that no substantial new question of patentability has been raised, the determination shall be final and non-appellable.

[46 FR 29185, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.520 Reexamination at the initiative of the Commissioner.

The Commissioner, at any time during the period of enforceability of a patent, may determine whether or not a substantial new question of patentability is raised by patents or printed publications which have been discovered by the Commissioner or which have been brought to the Commissioner's attention even though no request for reexamination has been filed in accordance with § 1.510. The Commissioner may initiate reexamination without a request for reexamination pursuant to § 1.510. Normally requests from outside the Patent and Trademark Office that the Commissioner undertake reexamination on his own initiative will not be considered. Any determination to initiate reexamination under this section will become a part of the official file of the patent and will be given or mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c).

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

REEXAMINATION

37 CFR 1.525 Order to reexamine.

(a) If a substantial new question of patentability is found pursuant to § 1.515 or § 1.520, the determination will include an order for reexamination of the patent for resolution of the question. If the order for reexamination resulted from a petition pursuant to § 1.515(c), the reexamination will ordinarily be conducted by an examiner other than the examiner responsible for the initial determination under § 1.515(a).

(b) If the order for reexamination of the patent mailed to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c) is returned to the Office undelivered, the notice published in the Official Gazette under § 1.11(c) will be considered to be constructive notice and reexamination will proceed.

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.530 Statement and amendment by patent owner.

(a) Except as provided in § 1.510(e), no statement or other response by the patent owner shall be filed prior to the determinations made in accordance with §§ 1.515 or 1.520. If a premature statement or other response is filed by the patent owner it will not be acknowledged or considered in making the determination.

(b) The order for reexamination will set a period of not less than two months from the date of the order within which the patent owner may file a statement on the new question of patentability including any proposed amendments the patent owner wishes to make.



(c) Any statement filed by the patent owner shall clearly point out why the subject matter as claimed is not anticipated or rendered obvious by the prior art patents or printed publications, either alone or in any reasonable combinations. Any statement filed must be served upon the reexamination requester in accordance with § 1.248.

(d) Any proposed amendment to the description and claims must be made in accordance with § 1.121(f). No amendment may enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent or introduce new matter. No amended or new claims may be proposed for entry in an expired patent. Moreover, no amended or new claims will be incorporated into the patent by certificate issued after the expiration of the patent.

(e) Although the Office actions will treat proposed amendments as though they have been entered, the proposed amendments will not be effective until the reexamination certificate is issued.

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.535 Reply by requester.

A reply to the patent owner's statement under 1.530 may be filed by the reexamination requester within two months from the date of service of the patent owner's statement. Any reply by the requester must be served upon the patent owner in accordance with § 1.248. If the patent owner does not file a statement under § 1.530, no reply or other submission from the reexamination requester will be considered.

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.540 Consideration of responses.

The failure to timely file or serve the documents set forth in §§ 1.530 or in 1.535 may result in their being refused consideration. No submissions other than the statement pursuant to § 1.530 and the reply by the requester pursuant to § 1.535 will be considered prior to examination.

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.550 Conduct of reexamination proceedings.

(a) All reexamination proceedings, including any appeals to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences, will be conducted with special dispatch within the Office. After issuance of the reexamination order and expiration of the time for submitting any responses thereto, the examination will be conducted in accordance with §§ 1.104 through 1.119 and will result in the issuance of a reexamination certificate under § 1.570.

(b) The patent owner will be given at least 30 days to respond to any Office action. Such response may include further statements in response to any rejections and/or proposed amendments or new claims to place the patent in a condition where all claims, if amended as proposed, would be patentable.

(c) The time for taking any action by a patent owner in a reexamination proceeding will be extended only for sufficient cause, and for a reasonable time specified. Any request for such extension must be filed on or before the day on which action by the patent owner is due, but in no case will the mere filing of a request effect any extension. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action.

(d) If the patent owner fails to file a timely and appropriate response to any Office action, the reexamination proceeding will be terminated and the Commissioner will proceed to issue a certificate under § 1.570 in accordance with the last action of the Office.

(e) The reexamination requester will be sent copies of Office actions issued during the reexamination proceeding. Any document filed by the patent owner must be served on the requester in the manner provided in § 1.248. The document must reflect service or the document may be refused consideration by the Office. The active participation of the reexamination requester ends with the reply pursuant to § 1.535, and no further submissions on behalf of the reexamination requester will be acknowledged or considered. Further, no submissions on behalf of any third parties will be acknowledged or considered unless such submissions are

(1) in accordance with § 1.510 or

(2) entered in the patent file prior to the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525.

Submissions by third parties, filed after the date of the order to reexamine pursuant to § 1.525, must meet the requirements of and will be treated in accordance with § 1.501(a).



[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981; para. (c), 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; para. (a), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (c), 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989]

37 CFR 1.552 Scope of reexamination in reexamination proceedings.

- (a) Patent claims will be reexamined on the basis of patents or printed publications.
- (b) Amended or new claims presented during a reexamination proceeding must not enlarge the scope of the claims of the patent and will be examined on the basis of patents or printed publications and also for compliance with the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112 and the new matter prohibition of 35 U.S.C. 132.
- (c) Questions other than those indicated in paragraph (a) and (b) of this section will not be resolved in a reexamination proceeding. If such questions are discovered during a reexamination proceeding, the existence of such questions will be noted by the examiner in an Office action, in which case the patent owner may desire to consider the advisability of filing a reissue application to have such questions considered and resolved.

[46 FR 29186, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.555 Information material to patentability in reexamination proceedings.

(a) A patent by its very nature is affected with a public interest. The public interest is best served, and the most effective reexamination occurs when, at the time a reexamination proceeding is being conducted, the Office is aware of and evaluates the teachings of all information material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. Each individual associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding has a duty of candor and good faith in dealing with the Office, which includes a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to that individual to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding. The individuals who have a duty to disclose to the Office all information known to them to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding are the patent owner, each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner, and every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose the information exists with respect to each claim pending in the reexamination proceeding until the claim is cancelled. Information material to the patentability of a cancelled claim need not be submitted if the information is not material to patentability of any claim remaining under consideration in the reexamination proceeding. The duty to disclose all information known to be material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding is deemed to be satisfied if all information known to be material to patentability of any claim in the patent after issuance of the reexamination certificate was cited by the Office or submitted to the Office in an information disclosure statement. However, the duties of candor, good faith, and disclosure have not been complied with if any fraud on the Office was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or intentional misconduct by, or on behalf of, the patent owner in the reexamination proceeding. Any information disclosure statement must be filed with the items listed in § 1.98(a) as applied to individuals associated with the patent owner in a reexamination proceeding, and should be filed within two months of the date of the order for reexamination, or as soon thereafter as possible.

- (b) Under this section, information is material to patentability in a reexamination proceeding when it is not cumulative to information of record or being made of record in the reexamination proceeding, and
 - (1) It is a patent or printed publication that establishes, by itself or in combination with other patents or printed publications, a prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim; or
 - (2) It refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the patent owner takes in:
 - (i) Opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Office, or
 - (ii) Asserting an argument of patentability.

A prima facie case of unpatentability of a claim pending in a reexamination proceeding is established when the information compels a conclusion that a claim is unpatentable under the preponderance of evidence, burden-of-proof standard, giving each term in the claim its broadest reasonable construction consistent with the specification, and before any consideration is given to evidence which may be submitted in an attempt to establish a contrary conclusion of patentability.

- (c) The responsibility for compliance with this section rests upon the individuals designated in paragraph (a) of this section and no evaluation will be made by the Office in the reexamination proceeding



as to compliance with this section. If questions of compliance with this section are discovered during a reexamination proceeding, they will be noted as unresolved questions in accordance with § 1.552(c).

[46 FR 29187, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981; 47 FR 21752, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; paras. (a) and (b), 49 FR 556, Jan. 4, 1984, effective Apr. 1, 1984; revised 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992]

37 CFR 1.560 Interviews in reexamination proceedings.

(a) Interviews in reexamination proceedings pending before the Office between examiners and the owners of such patents or their attorneys or agents of record must be had in the Office at such times, within Office hours, as the respective examiners may designate. Interviews will not be permitted at any other time or place without the authority of the Commissioner. Interviews for the discussion of the patentability of claims in patents involved in reexamination proceedings will not be had prior to the first official action thereon. Interviews should be arranged for in advance. Requests that reexamination requesters participate in interviews with examiners will not be granted.

(b) In every instance of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the patent owner. An interview does not remove the necessity for response to Office actions as specified in § 1.111.

[46 FR 29187, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981]

37 CFR 1.565 Concurrent office proceedings.

(a) In any reexamination proceeding before the Office, the patent owner shall call the attention of the Office to any prior or concurrent proceedings in which the patent is or was involved such as interferences, reissue, reexaminations, or litigation and the results of such proceedings.

(b) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in litigation or a reissue application for the patent is filed or pending, the Commissioner shall determine whether or not to stay the reexamination or reissue proceeding.

(c) If reexamination is ordered while a prior reexamination proceeding is pending, the reexamination proceedings will be consolidated and result in the issuance of a single certificate under § 1.570.

(d) If a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding on which an order pursuant to § 1.525 has been mailed are pending concurrently on a patent, a decision will normally be made to merge the two proceedings or to stay one of the two proceedings. Where merger of a reissue application and a reexamination proceeding is ordered, the merged examination will be conducted in accordance with § 1.171 through § 1.179 and the patent owner will be required to place and maintain the same claims in the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding during the pendency of the merged proceeding. The examiner's actions and any responses by the patent owner in a merged proceeding will apply to both the reissue application and the reexamination proceeding and be physically entered into both files. Any reexamination proceeding merged with a reissue application shall be terminated by the grant of the reissued patent.

(e) If a patent in the process of reexamination is or becomes involved in an interference, the Commissioner may stay reexamination or the interference. The Commissioner will not consider a request to stay an interference unless a motion (§ 1.635) to stay the interference has been presented to, and denied by, an examiner-in-chief and the request is filed within ten (10) days of a decision by an examiner-in-chief denying the motion for a stay or such other time as the examiner-in-chief may set.

[46 FR 29187, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981; paras. (b) and (d), 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982, effective July 1, 1982; paras. (b) & (e), 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, effective Feb. 11, 1985]

CERTIFICATE

37 CFR 1.570 Issuance of reexamination certificate after reexamination proceedings.

(a) Upon the conclusion of reexamination proceedings, the Commissioner will issue a certificate in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 307 setting forth the results of the reexamination proceeding and the content of the patent following the reexamination proceeding.



(b) A certificate will be issued in each patent in which a reexamination proceeding has been ordered under § 1.525. Any statutory disclaimer filed by the patent owner will be made part of the certificate.

(c) The certificate will be mailed on the day of its date to the patent owner at the address as provided for in § 1.33(c). A copy of the certificate will also be mailed to the requester of the reexamination proceeding.

(d) If a certificate has been issued which cancels all of the claims of the patent, no further Office proceedings will be conducted with regard to that patent or any reissue applications or reexamination requests relating thereto.

(e) If the reexamination proceeding is terminated by the grant of a reissued patent as provided in § 1.565(d) the reissued patent will constitute the reexamination certificate required by this section and 35 U.S.C. 307.

(f) A notice of the issuance of each certificate under this section will be published in the Official Gazette on its date of issuance.

[46 FR 29187, May 29, 1981, effective July 1, 1981; para. (e), 47 FR 21753, May 19, 1982, effective date July 1, 1982]

SUBPART E—INTERFERENCES

37 CFR 1.601 Scope of rules, definitions.

This subpart governs the procedure in patent interferences in the Patent and Trademark Office. This subpart shall be construed to secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of every interference. For the meaning of terms in the Federal Rules of Evidence as applied to interferences, see § 1.671(c). Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this subpart:

(a) Additional discovery is discovery to which a party may be entitled under § 1.687 in addition to discovery to which the party is entitled as a matter of right under § 1.673(a) and (b).

(b) Affidavit means affidavit, declaration under § 1.68, or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. § 1746. A transcript of an ex parte deposition may be used as an affidavit.

(c) Board means the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences.

(d) Case-in-chief means that portion of a party's case where the party has the burden of going forward with evidence.

(e) Case-in-rebuttal means that portion of a party's case where the party presents evidence in rebuttal to the case-in-chief of another party.

(f) A count defines the interfering subject matter between two or more applications or between one or more applications and one or more patents. At the time the interference is initially declared, a count should be broad enough to encompass all of the claims that are patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count. When there is more than one count, each count shall define a separate patentable invention. Any claim of an application or patent that is designated to correspond to a count is a claim involved in the interference within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 135(a). A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count and is identical to the count is said to correspond exactly to the count. A claim of a patent or application that is designated to correspond to a count but is not identical to the count is said to correspond substantially to the count. When a count is broader in scope than all claims which correspond to the count, the count is a phantom count.

(g) The effective filing date of an application is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the application under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application. The effective filing date of a patent is the filing date of an earlier application, benefit of which is accorded to the patent under 35 U.S.C. 119, 120, 121, or 365 or, if no benefit is accorded, the filing date of the application which issued as the patent.

(h) In the case of an application, filing date means the filing date assigned to the application. In the case of a patent, "filing date" means the filing date assigned to the application which issued as the patent.

(i) An interference is a proceeding instituted in the Patent and Trademark Office before the Board to determine any question of patentability and priority of invention between two or more parties claiming the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between two or more pending applications



naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, the applications contain claims for the same patentable invention. An interference may be declared between one or more pending applications and one or more unexpired patents naming different inventors when, in the opinion of an examiner, any application and any unexpired patent contain claims for the same patentable invention.

(j) An interference-in-fact exists when at least one claim of a party that is designated to correspond to a count and at least one claim of an opponent that is designated to correspond to the count define the same patentable invention.

(k) A lead attorney or agent is a registered attorney or agent of record who is primarily responsible for prosecuting an interference on behalf of a party and is the attorney or agent whom an administrative patent judge may contact to set times and take other action in the interference.

(l) A party is an applicant or patentee involved in the interference or a legal representative or an assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of an applicant or patentee involved in an interference. Where acts of a party are normally performed by an attorney or agent, "party" may be construed to mean the attorney or agent. An inventor is the individual named as inventor in an application involved in an interference or the individual named as inventor in a patent involved in an interference.

(m) A senior party is the party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts or, if there is no party with the earliest effective filing date as to all counts, the party with the earliest filing date. A junior party is any other party.

(n) Invention "A" is the same patentable invention as an invention "B" when invention "A" is the same as (35 U.S.C. 102) or is obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention "B" assuming invention "B" is prior art with respect to invention "A". Invention "A" is a separate patentable invention with respect to invention "B" when invention "A" is new (35 U.S.C. 102) and non-obvious (35 U.S.C. 103) in view of invention "B" assuming invention "B" is prior art with respect to invention "A".

(o) Sworn means sworn or affirmed.

(p) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

(q) A final decision is a decision awarding judgment as to all counts. An interlocutory order is any other action taken by an administrative patent judge or the Board in an interference, including the notice declaring an interference.

(r) NAFTA country means NAFTA country as defined in section 2(4) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act, Pub. L. 103-182, 107 Stat. 2060 (19 U.S.C. 3301).

(s) WTO member country means WTO member country as defined in section 2(10) of the Uruguay Round Agreements Act, Pub. L. 103-465, 108 Stat. 4813 (19 U.S.C. 3501).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23123, May. 31, 1985; para. (q) added, 58 FR 49432, Sept. 23, 1993, effective Oct. 25, 1993; paras. (f), (g), (j)-(n), and (q) revised, paras. (r) and (s) added, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.602 Interest in applications and patents involved in an interference.

(a) Unless good cause is shown, an interference shall not be declared or continued between

(1) applications owned by a single party or

(2) applications and an unexpired patent owned by a single party.

(b) The parties, within 20 days after an interference is declared, shall notify the Board of any and all right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference unless the right, title, and interest is set forth in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) If a change of any right, title, and interest in any application or patent involved or relied upon in the interference occurs after notice is given declaring the interference and before the time expires for seeking judicial review of a final decision of the Board, the parties shall notify the Board of the change within 20 days after the change.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (c) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.603 Interference between applications; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between two or more applications, the examiner must be of the opinion that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the applications which is patentable to each

applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter shall be defined by one or more counts. Each application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. All claims in the applications which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count.

[Added, 49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.604 Request for interference between applications by an applicant.

- (a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared with an application of another by,
 - (1) Suggesting a proposed count and presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim in its application that corresponds to the proposed count,
 - (2) Identifying the other application and, if known, a claim in the other application which corresponds to the proposed count, and
 - (3) Explaining why an interference should be declared.

(b) When an applicant presents a claim known to the applicant to define the same patentable invention claimed in a pending application of another, the applicant shall identify that pending application, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where it appears an applicant may have failed to comply with the provisions of this paragraph.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a)(1) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.605 Suggestion of claim to applicant by examiner.

(a) If no claim in an application is drawn to the same patentable invention claimed in another application or patent, the examiner may suggest that an applicant present a claim drawn to an invention claimed in another application or patent for the purpose of an interference with another application or a patent. The applicant to whom the claim is suggested shall amend the application by presenting the suggested claim within a time specified by the examiner, not less than one month. Failure or refusal of an applicant to timely present the suggested claim shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by the applicant of the invention defined by the suggested claim. At the time the suggested claim is presented, the applicant may also call the examiner's attention to other claims already in the application or presented with the suggested claim and explain why the other claims would be more appropriate to be designated to correspond to a count in any interference which may be declared.

(b) The suggestion of a claim by the examiner for the purpose of an interference will not stay the period for response to any outstanding Office action. When a suggested claim is timely presented, ex parte proceedings in the application will be stayed pending a determination of whether an interference will be declared.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.606 Interference between an application and a patent; subject matter of the interference.

Before an interference is declared between an application and an unexpired patent, an examiner must determine that there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in the interference. The interfering subject matter will be defined by one or more counts. The application must contain, or be amended to contain, at least one claim that is patentable over the prior art and corresponds to each count. The claim in the application need not be, and most often will not be, identical to a claim in the patent. All claims in the application and patent which define the same patentable invention as a count shall be designated to correspond to the count. At the time an interference is initially declared (§ 1.611), a count shall not be narrower in scope than any application claim that is patentable over the prior art and designated to correspond to the count or any patent claim designated to correspond to the count. Any single patent claim designated to correspond to the count will be presumed, subject to a motion under § 1.633(c), not to contain separate patentable inventions.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.607 Request by applicant for interference with patent.

- (a) An applicant may seek to have an interference declared between an application and an unexpired patent by,
- (1) Identifying the patent,
 - (2) Presenting a proposed count,
 - (3) Identifying at least one claim in the patent corresponding to the proposed count,
 - (4) Presenting at least one claim corresponding to the proposed count or identifying at least one claim already pending in its application that corresponds to the proposed count, and, if any claim of the patent or application identified as corresponding to the proposed count does not correspond exactly to the proposed count, explaining why each such claim corresponds to the proposed count, and
 - (5) Applying the terms of any application claim
 - (i) Identified as corresponding to the count and
 - (ii) Not previously in the application to the disclosure of the application.
 - (6) Explaining how the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 135(b) are met, if the claim presented or identified under paragraph (a)(4) of this section was not present in the application until more than one year after the issue date of the patent.

(b) When an applicant seeks an interference with a patent, examination of the application, including any appeal to the Board, shall be conducted with special dispatch within the Patent and Trademark Office. The examiner shall determine whether there is interfering subject matter claimed in the application and the patent which is patentable to the applicant subject to a judgment in an interference. If the examiner determines that there is any interfering subject matter, an interference will be declared. If the examiner determines that there is no interfering subject matter, the examiner shall state the reasons why an interference is not being declared and otherwise act on the application.

(c) When an applicant presents a claim which corresponds exactly or substantially to a claim of a patent, the applicant shall identify the patent and the number of the patent claim, unless the claim is presented in response to a suggestion by the examiner. The examiner shall notify the Commissioner of any instance where an applicant fails to identify the patent.

(d) A notice that an applicant is seeking to provoke an interference with a patent will be placed in the file of the patent and a copy of the notice will be sent to the patentee. The identity of the applicant will not be disclosed unless an interference is declared. If a final decision is made not to declare an interference, a notice to that effect will be placed in the patent file and will be sent to the patentee.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) amended 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (a)(5)(i) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan. 3, 1994; para. (a)(4) revised, para. (a)(6) added, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.608 Interference between an application and a patent; prima facie showing by applicant.

(a) When the effective filing date of an application is three months or less after the effective filing date of a patent, before an interference will be declared, either the applicant or the applicant's attorney or agent of record shall file a statement alleging that there is a basis upon which the applicant is entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee.

(b) When the effective filing date of an application is more than three months after the effective filing date of a patent, the applicant, before an interference will be declared, shall file evidence which may consist of patents or printed publications, other documents, and one or more affidavits which demonstrate that applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee and an explanation stating with particularity the basis upon which the applicant is prima facie entitled to the judgment. Where the basis upon which an applicant is entitled to judgment relative to a patentee is priority of invention, the evidence shall include affidavits by the applicant, if possible, and one or more corroborating witnesses, supported by documentary evidence, if available, each setting out a factual description of acts and circumstances performed or observed by the affiant, which collectively would prima facie entitle the applicant to judgment on priority with respect to the effective filing date of the patent. To facilitate preparation of a record § 1.653(g) for final hearing, an applicant should file affidavits on paper which is 21.8 by 27.9 cm.

(8 \times 11 inches). The significance of any printed publication or other document which is self-authenticating within the meaning of Rule 902 of the Federal Rules of Evidence or § 1.671(d) and any patent shall be discussed in an affidavit or the explanation. Any printed publication or other document which is not self-authenticating shall be authenticated and discussed with particularity in an affidavit. Upon a showing of good cause, an affidavit may be based on information and belief. If an examiner finds an application to be in condition for declaration of an interference, the examiner will consider the evidence and explanation only to the extent of determining whether a basis upon which the application would be entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee is alleged and, if a basis is alleged, an interference may be declared.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.609 Preparation of interference papers by examiner.

When the examiner determines that an interference should be declared, the examiner shall forward to the Board:

- (a) All relevant application and patent files and
- (b) A statement identifying:
 - (1) The proposed count or counts and, if there is more than one count proposed, explaining why the counts define different patentable inventions;
 - (2) The claims of any application or patent which correspond to each count, explaining why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count;
 - (3) The claims in any application or patent which do not correspond to each count and explaining why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and
 - (4) Whether an applicant or patentee is entitled to the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application and, if so, sufficient information to identify the earlier application.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (b)(1)–(b)(3) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.610 Assignment of interference to administrative patent judge, time period for completing interference.

(a) Each interference will be declared by an administrative patent judge who may enter all interlocutory orders in the interference, except that only the Board shall hear oral argument at final hearing, enter a decision under §§ 1.617, 1.640(e), 1.652, 1.656(i) or 1.658, or enter any other order which terminates the interference.

(b) As necessary, another administrative patent judge may act in place of the one who declared the interference. At the discretion of the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference, a panel consisting of two or more members of the Board may enter interlocutory orders.

(c) Unless otherwise provided in this subpart, times for taking action by a party in the interference will be set on a case-by-case basis by the administrative patent judge assigned to the interference. Times for taking action shall be set and the administrative patent judge shall exercise control over the interference such that the pendency of the interference before the Board does not normally exceed two years.

(d) An administrative patent judge may hold a conference with the parties to consider simplification of any issues, the necessity or desirability of amendments to counts, the possibility of obtaining admissions of fact and genuineness of documents which will avoid unnecessary proof, any limitations on the number of expert witnesses, the time and place for conducting a deposition (§ 1.673(g)), and any other matter as may aid in the disposition of the interference. After a conference, the administrative patent judge may enter any order which may be appropriate.

(e) The administrative patent judge may determine a proper course of conduct in an interference for any situation not specifically covered by this part.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.611 Declaration of interference.

- (a) Notice of declaration of an interference will be sent to each party.



(b) When a notice of declaration is returned to the Patent and Trademark Office undelivered, or in any other circumstance where appropriate, an administrative patent judge may send a copy of the notice to a patentee named in a patent involved in an interference or the patentee's assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office or order publication of an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette.

(c) The notice of declaration shall specify:

- (1) The name and residence of each party involved in the interference;
- (2) The name and address of record of any attorney or agent of record in any application or patent involved in the interference;
- (3) The name of any assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office;
- (4) The identity of any application or patent involved in the interference;
- (5) Where a party is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier application, the identity of the earlier application;
- (6) The count or counts and, if there is more than one count, the examiner's explanation why the counts define different patentable inventions;
- (7) The claim or claims of any application or any patent which correspond to each count;
- (8) The examiner's explanation as to why each claim designated as corresponding to a count is directed to the same patentable invention as the count and why each claim designated as not corresponding to any count is not directed to the same patentable invention as any count; and
- (9) The order of the parties.

(d) The notice of declaration may also specify the time for:

- (1) Filing a preliminary statement as provided in § 1.621(a);
- (2) Serving notice that a preliminary statement has been filed as provided in § 1.621(b); and
- (3) Filing preliminary motions authorized by § 1.633.

(e) Notice may be given in the Official Gazette that an interference has been declared involving a patent.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23123, May 31, 1985, paras. (b), (c)(6), (c)(7), (c)(8), (c)(9) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.612 Access to applications.

(a) After an interference is declared, each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of the files of any application set out in the notice declaring the interference, except for affidavits filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation under § 1.608 filed separate from an amendment. A party seeking access to any abandoned or pending application referred to in the opponent's involved application or access to any pending application referred to in the opponent's patent must file a motion under § 1.635. See § 1.11(e) concerning public access to interference files.

(b) After preliminary motions under § 1.633 are decided (§ 1.640(b)), each party shall have access to and may obtain copies of any affidavit filed under § 1.131 and any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in any application set out in the notice declaring the interference.

(c) Any evidence and explanation filed under § 1.608 in the file of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference shall be served when required by § 1.617(b).

(d) The parties at any time may agree to exchange copies of papers in the files of any application identified in the notice declaring the interference.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; para. (a) amended 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.613 Lead attorney, same attorney representing different parties in an interference, withdrawal of attorney or agent.

(a) Each party may be required to designate one attorney or agent of record as the lead attorney or agent.

(b) The same attorney or agent or members of the same firm of attorneys or agents may not represent two or more parties in an interference except as may be permitted in this Chapter.

(c) An administrative patent judge may make necessary inquiry to determine whether an attorney or agent should be disqualified from representing a party in an interference. If an administrative patent judge is of the opinion that an attorney or agent should be disqualified, the administrative patent judge shall refer the matter to the Commissioner. The Commissioner will make a final decision as to whether any attorney or agent should be disqualified.

(d) No attorney or agent of record in an interference may withdraw as attorney or agent of record except with the approval of an administrative patent judge and after reasonable notice to the party on whose behalf the attorney or agent has appeared. A request to withdraw as attorney or agent of record in an interference shall be made by motion (§ 1.635).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (c) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.614 Jurisdiction over interference.

(a) The Board acquires jurisdiction over an interference when the interference is declared under § 1.611.

(b) When the interference is declared the interference is a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24.

(c) The examiner shall have jurisdiction over any pending application until the interference is declared. An administrative patent judge may for a limited purpose restore jurisdiction to the examiner over any application involved in the interference.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) & (c) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.615 Suspension of ex parte prosecution.

(a) When an interference is declared, ex parte prosecution of an application involved in the interference is suspended. Amendments and other papers related to the application received during pendency of the interference will not be entered or considered in the interference without the consent of an administrative patent judge.

(b) Ex parte prosecution as to specified matters may be continued concurrently with the interference with the consent of the administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.616 Sanctions for failure to comply with rules or order or for taking and maintaining a frivolous position.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose an appropriate sanction against a party who fails to comply with the regulations of this part or any order entered by an administrative patent judge or the Board. An appropriate sanction may include among others entry of an order:

- (1) Holding certain facts to have been established in the interference;
- (2) Precluding a party from filing a paper;
- (3) Precluding a party from presenting or contesting a particular issue;
- (4) Precluding a party from requesting, obtaining, or opposing discovery;
- (5) Awarding compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees; or
- (6) Granting judgment in the interference.

(b) An administrative patent judge or the Board may impose a sanction, including a sanction in the form of compensatory expenses and/or compensatory attorney fees, against a party for taking and maintaining a frivolous position in papers filed in the interference.

(c) To the extent that an administrative patent judge or the Board has authorized a party to compel the taking of testimony or the production of documents or things from an individual or entity located in a NAFTA country or a WTO member country concerning knowledge, use, or other activity relevant to proving or disproving a date of invention (§ 1.671(h)), but the testimony, documents or things have not been produced for use in the interference to the same extent as such information could be made available in the United States, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall draw such adverse inferences as may be

appropriate under the circumstances, or take such other action permitted by statute, rule, or regulation, in favor of the party that requested the information in the interference, including imposition of appropriate sanctions under paragraph (a) of this section.

(d) A party may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order imposing sanctions, the drawing of adverse inferences or other action under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section. Where an administrative patent judge or the Board on its own initiative determines that a sanction, adverse inference or other action against a party may be appropriate under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of this section, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall enter an order for the party to show cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action is not appropriate. The Board shall take action in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party files a paper which shows good cause why the sanction, adverse inference or other action would not be appropriate.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.617 Summary judgment against applicant.

(a) An administrative patent judge shall review any evidence filed by an applicant under § 1.608(b) to determine if the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the administrative patent judge determines that the evidence shows the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the interference shall proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this part. If in the opinion of the administrative patent judge the evidence fails to show that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the administrative patent judge shall, concurrently with the notice declaring the interference, enter an order stating the reasons for the opinion and directing the applicant, within a time set in the order, to show cause why summary judgment should not be entered against the applicant.

(b) The applicant may file a response to the order, which may include an appropriate preliminary motion under § 1.633(c), (f) or (g), and state any reasons why summary judgment should not be entered. Any request by the applicant for a hearing before the Board shall be made in the response. Additional evidence shall not be presented by the applicant or considered by the Board unless the applicant shows good cause why any additional evidence was not initially presented with the evidence filed under § 1.608(b). At the time an applicant files a response, the applicant shall serve a copy of any evidence filed under § 1.608(b) and this paragraph.

(c) If a response is not timely filed by the applicant, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant.

(d) If a response is timely filed by the applicant, all opponents may file a statement and may oppose any preliminary motion filed under § 1.633(c), (f) or (g) by the applicant within a time set by the administrative patent judge. The statement may set forth views as to why summary judgment should be granted against the applicant, but the statement shall be limited to discussing why all the evidence presented by the applicant does not overcome the reasons given by the administrative patent judge for issuing the order to show cause. Except as required to oppose a motion under § 1.633(c), (f) or (g) by the applicant, evidence shall not be filed by any opponent. An opponent may not request a hearing.

(e) Within a time authorized by the administrative patent judge, an applicant may file a reply to any statement or opposition filed by any opponent.

(f) When more than two parties are involved in an interference, all parties may participate in summary judgment proceedings under this section.

(g) If a response by the applicant is timely filed, the administrative patent judge or the Board shall decide whether the evidence submitted under § 1.608(b) and any additional evidence properly submitted under paragraphs (b) and (e) of this section shows that the applicant is prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee. If the applicant is not prima facie entitled to a judgment relative to the patentee, the Board shall enter a final decision granting summary judgment against the applicant. Otherwise, an interlocutory order shall be entered authorizing the interference to proceed in the normal manner under the regulations of this subpart.

(h) Only an applicant who filed evidence under § 1.608(b) may request a hearing. If that applicant requests a hearing, the Board may hold a hearing prior to entry of a decision under paragraph (g) of this section. The administrative patent judge shall set a date and time for the hearing. Unless otherwise ordered

by the administrative patent judge or the Board, the applicant and any opponent will each be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at the hearing.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a), (b), (d), (e), (g) & (h) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.618 Return of unauthorized papers.

(a) An administrative patent judge or the Board shall return to a party any paper presented by the party when the filing of the paper is not authorized by, or is not in compliance with the requirements of, this subpart. Any paper returned will not thereafter be considered in the interference. A party may be permitted to file a corrected paper under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by an administrative patent judge or the Board.

(b) When presenting a paper in an interference, a party shall not submit with the paper a copy of a paper previously filed in the interference.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; amended 60 FR 14488-536, Mar. 17, 1995]

37 CFR 1.621 Preliminary statement, time for filing, notice of filing.

(a) Within the time set for filing preliminary motions under § 1.633, each party may file a preliminary statement. The preliminary statement may be signed by any individual having knowledge of the facts recited therein or by an attorney or agent of record.

(b) When a party files a preliminary statement, the party shall also simultaneously file and serve on all opponents in the interference a notice stating that a preliminary statement has been filed. A copy of the preliminary statement need not be served until ordered by the administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.622 Preliminary statement, who made invention, where invention made.

(a) A party's preliminary statement must identify the inventor who made the invention defined by each count and must state on behalf of the inventor the facts required by paragraph (a) of §§ 1.623, 1.624, and 1.625 as may be appropriate. When an inventor identified in the preliminary statement is not an inventor named in the party's application or patent, the party shall file a motion under § 1.634 to correct inventorship.

(b) The preliminary statement shall state whether the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country (and, if so, which NAFTA country), a WTO member country (and, if so, which WTO member country), or in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement shall state whether the party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.623 Preliminary statement; invention made in United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, or a party is entitled to the benefit of 35 U.S.C. 104(a)(2), the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

- (1) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.
- (2) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.
- (3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.
- (4) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.
- (5) The date on which the invention was first actually reduced to practice. If the invention was not actually reduced to practice by or on behalf of the inventor prior to the party's filing date, the preliminary statement shall so state.
- (6) The date after the inventor's conception of the invention when active exercise of reasonable diligence toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.624 Preliminary statement; invention made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.

(a) When the invention was made in a place other than the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country and a party intends to rely on introduction of the invention into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary statement must state the following facts as to the invention defined by each count:

- (1) The date on which a drawing of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- (2) The date on which a written description of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- (3) The date on which the invention was first disclosed to another person in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- (4) The date on which the inventor's conception of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country.
- (5) The date on which an actual reduction to practice of the invention was first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country. If an actual reduction to practice of the invention was not introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, the preliminary amendment shall so state.
- (6) The date after introduction of the inventor's conception into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country when active exercise of reasonable diligence in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country toward reducing the invention to practice began.

(b) If a party intends to prove derivation, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.625.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(1) of this section that a drawing was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a written description of the invention was introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country, a copy of that written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a copy of the first drawing or first written description introduced in the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; para. (a) & (c) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.625 Preliminary statement; derivation by an opponent

(a) When a party intends to prove derivation by an opponent from the party, the preliminary statement must state the following as to the invention defined by each count:

- (1) The name of the opponent.
- (2) The date on which the first drawing of the invention was made.
- (3) The date on which the first written description of the invention was made.
- (4) The date on which the invention was first disclosed by the inventor to another person.
- (5) The date on which the invention was first conceived by the inventor.
- (6) The date on which the invention was first communicated to the opponent.

(b) If a party intends to prove priority, the preliminary statement must also comply with § 1.623 or § 1.624.

(c) When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(2) of this section that a drawing was made, a copy of the first drawing shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. When a party alleges under paragraph (a)(3) of this section that a written description of the invention was made, a copy of the first written description shall be filed with and identified in the preliminary statement. See § 1.628(b) when a first drawing or first written description cannot be filed with the preliminary statement.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.626 Preliminary statement; earlier application.

When a party does not intend to present evidence to prove a conception or an actual reduction to practice and the party intends to rely solely on the filing date of an earlier filed application to prove a constructive reduction to practice, the preliminary statement may so state and identify the earlier filed application with particularity.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.627 Preliminary statement; sealing before filing, opening of statement.

(a) The preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description shall be filed in a sealed envelope bearing only the name of the party filing the statement and the style (e.g., Jones v. Smith) and number of the interference. The sealed envelope should contain only the preliminary statement and copies of any drawing or written description. If the preliminary statement is filed through the mail, the sealed envelope should be enclosed in an outer envelope addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks in accordance with § 1.1(e).

(b) A preliminary statement may be opened only at the direction of an administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.628 Preliminary statement; correction of error.

(a) A material error arising through inadvertence or mistake in connection with a preliminary statement or drawings or a written description submitted therewith or omitted therefrom, may be corrected by a motion (§ 1.635) for leave to file a corrected statement. The motion shall be supported by an affidavit stating the date the error was first discovered, shall be accompanied by the corrected statement and shall be filed as soon as practical after discovery of the error. If filed on or after the date set by the administrative patent judge for service of preliminary statements, the motion shall also show that correction of the error is essential to the interest of justice.

(b) When a party cannot attach a copy of a drawing or a written description to the party's preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c), or § 1.625(c), the party shall show good cause and explain in the preliminary statement why a copy of the drawing or written description cannot be attached to the preliminary statement and shall attach to the preliminary statement the earliest drawing or written description made in or introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country which is available. The party shall file a motion (§ 1.635) to amend its preliminary statement promptly after the first drawing, first written description, or drawing or written description first introduced into the United States, a NAFTA country, or a WTO member country becomes available. A copy of the drawing or written description may be obtained, where appropriate, by a motion (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687 or during a testimony period.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.629 Effect of preliminary statement.

(a) A party shall be strictly held to any date alleged in the preliminary statement. Doubts as to definiteness or sufficiency of any allegation in a preliminary statement or compliance with formal requirements will be resolved against the party filing the statement by restricting the party to its effective filing date or to the latest date of a period alleged in the preliminary statement, as may be appropriate. A party may not correct a preliminary statement except as provided by § 1.628.

(b) Evidence which shows that an act alleged in the preliminary statement occurred prior to the date alleged in the statement shall establish only that the act occurred as early as the date alleged in the statement.



- (c) If a party does not file a preliminary statement, the party:
 - (1) Shall be restricted to the party's effective filing date and
 - (2) Will not be permitted to prove that:
 - (i) The party made the invention prior to the party's filing date or
 - (ii) Any opponent derived the invention from the party.

(d) If a party files a preliminary statement which contains an allegation of a date of first drawing or first written description and the party does not file a copy of the first drawing or written description with the preliminary statement as required by § 1.623(c), § 1.624(c), or § 1.625(c), the party will be restricted to the party's effective filing date as to that allegation unless the party complies with § 1.628(b). The content of any drawing or written description submitted with a preliminary statement will not normally be evaluated or considered by the Board.

(e) A preliminary statement shall not be used as evidence on behalf of the party filing the statement.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a), (c)(1) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.630 Reliance on earlier application.

A party shall not be entitled to rely on the filing date of an earlier filed application unless the earlier application is identified (§ 1.611(c)(5)) in the notice declaring the interference or the party files a preliminary motion under § 1.633 seeking the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.631 Access to preliminary statement, service of preliminary statement.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, concurrently with entry of a decision on preliminary motions filed under § 1.633 any preliminary statement filed under § 1.621(a) shall be opened to inspection by the senior party and any junior party who filed a preliminary statement. Within a time set by the administrative patent judge, a party shall serve a copy of its preliminary statement on each opponent who served a notice under § 1.621(b).

(b) A junior party who does not file a preliminary statement shall not have access to the preliminary statement of any other party.

(c) If an interference is terminated before the preliminary statements have been opened, the preliminary statements will remain sealed and will be returned to the respective parties who submitted the statements.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.632 Notice of intent to argue abandonment, suppression or concealment by opponent.

A notice shall be filed by a party who intends to argue that an opponent has abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice (35 U.S.C. 102(g)). A party will not be permitted to argue abandonment, suppression, or concealment by an opponent unless the notice is timely filed. Unless authorized otherwise by an administrative patent judge, a notice is timely when filed within ten (10) days after the close of the testimony-in-chief of the opponent.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.633 Preliminary motions.

A party may file the following preliminary motions:

(a) A motion for judgment against an opponent's claim designated to correspond to a count on the ground that the claim is not patentable to the opponent. The motion shall separately address each claim alleged to be unpatentable. In deciding an issue raised in a motion filed under this paragraph (a), a claim will be construed in light of the specification of the application or patent in which it appears. A motion under this paragraph shall not be based on:

- (1) Priority of invention by the moving party as against any opponent or
- (2) Derivation of the invention by an opponent from the moving party. See § 1.637(a).



(b) A motion for judgment on the ground that there is no interference-in-fact. A motion under this paragraph is proper only if the interference involves a design application or patent or a plant application or patent or no claim of a party which corresponds to a count is identical to any claim of an opponent which corresponds to that count. See § 1.637(a). When claims of different parties are presented in “means plus function” format, it may be possible for the claims of the different parties not to define the same patentable invention even though the claims contain the same literal wording.

(c) A motion to redefine the interfering subject matter by

- (1) adding or substituting a count,
- (2) amending an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim in the moving party’s application to be designated to correspond to a count,
- (3) designating an application or patent claim to correspond to a count,
- (4) designating an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count, or
- (5) requiring an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and to designate the claim to correspond to a count. See § 1.637(a) and (c).

(d) A motion to substitute a different application owned by a party for an application involved in the interference. See § 1.637(a) and (d).

(e) A motion to declare an additional interference

- (1) between an additional application not involved in the interference and owned by a party and an opponent’s application or patent involved in the interference or
- (2) when an interference involves three or more parties, between less than all applications and patents involved in the interference. See § 1.637(a) and (e).

(f) A motion to be accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See § 1.637(a) and (f).

(g) A motion to attack the benefit accorded an opponent in the notice declaring the interference of the filing date of an earlier filed application. See § 1.637(a) and (g).

(h) When a patent is involved in an interference and the patentee has on file or files an application for reissue under § 1.171, a motion to add the application for reissue to the interference. See § 1.637(a) and (h).

(i) When a motion is filed under paragraph (a), (b), or (g) of this section, an opponent, in addition to opposing the motion, may file a motion to redefine the interfering subject matter under paragraph (c) of this section, a motion to substitute a different application under paragraph (d) of this section, or a motion to add a reissue application to the interference under paragraph (h) of this section.

(j) When a motion is filed under paragraph (c)(1) of this section an opponent, in addition to opposing the motion, may file a motion for benefit under paragraph (f) of this section as to the count to be added or substituted.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a), (b), (f), (g) & (i) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.634 Motion to correct inventorship.

A party may file a motion to

(a) amend its application involved in an interference to correct inventorship as provided by § 1.48

or

(b) correct inventorship of its patent involved in an interference as provided in § 1.324. See § 1.637(a).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.635 Miscellaneous motions.

A party seeking entry of an order relating to any matter other than a matter which may be raised under § 1.633 or 1.634 may file a motion requesting entry of the order. See § 1.637 (a) and (b).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]



37 CFR 1.636 Motions, time for filing.

(a) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(a) through (h) shall be filed within a time period set by an administrative patent judge.

(b) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(i) or (j) shall be filed within 20 days of the service of the preliminary motion under § 1.633(a), (b), (c)(1), or (g) unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(c) A motion under § 1.634 shall be diligently filed after an error is discovered in the inventorship of an application or patent involved in an interference unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

(d) A motion under § 1.635 shall be filed as specified in this subpart or when appropriate unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.637 Content of motions.

(a) A party filing a motion has the burden of proof to show that it is entitled to the relief sought in the motion. Each motion shall include a statement of the precise relief requested, a statement of the material facts in support of the motion, in numbered paragraphs, and a full statement of the reasons why the relief requested should be granted. If a party files a motion for judgment under § 1.633(a) against an opponent based on the ground of unpatentability over prior art, and the dates of the cited prior art are such that the prior art appears to be applicable to the party, it will be presumed, without regard to the dates alleged in the preliminary statement of the party, that the cited prior art is applicable to the party unless there is included with the motion an explanation, and evidence if appropriate, as to why the prior art does not apply to the party.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, a motion under § 1.635 shall contain a certificate by the moving party stating that the moving party has conferred with all opponents in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion. The certificate shall indicate whether any opponent plans to oppose the motion. The provisions of this paragraph do not apply to a motion to suppress evidence (§ 1.656(h)).

(c) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(c) shall explain why the interfering subject matter should be redefined.

(1) A preliminary motion seeking to add or substitute a count shall:

- (i) Propose each count to be added or substituted.
- (ii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.
- (iii) Identify all claims in an opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claims to the opponent and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
- (iv) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.
- (v) Show that each proposed count defines a separate patentable invention from every other count proposed to remain in the interference.
- (vi) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit of the earlier filed application is desired with respect to a proposed count.
- (vii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent

is not entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

- (2) A preliminary motion seeking to amend an application claim corresponding to a count or adding a claim to be designated to correspond to a count shall:
 - (i) Propose an amended or added claim.
 - (ii) Show that the claim proposed to be amended or added defines the same patentable invention as the count.
 - (iii) Show the patentability to the applicant of each claim proposed to be amended or added and apply the terms of the claim proposed to be amended or added to the disclosure of the application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion a proposed amendment to the application amending the claim corresponding to the count or adding the proposed additional claim to the application.
- (3) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim to correspond to a count shall:
 - (i) Identify the claim and the count.
 - (ii) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as another claim whose designation as corresponding to the count the moving party does not dispute.
- (4) A preliminary motion seeking to designate an application or patent claim as not corresponding to a count shall:
 - (i) Identify the claim and the count.
 - (ii) Show that the claim does not define the same patentable invention as any other claim whose designation in the notice declaring the interference as corresponding to the count the party does not dispute.
- (5) A preliminary motion seeking to require an opponent who is an applicant to add a claim and designate the claim as corresponding to a count shall:
 - (i) Propose a claim to be added by the opponent.
 - (ii) Show the patentability to the opponent of the claim and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
 - (iii) Identify the count to which the claim shall be designated to correspond.
 - (iv) Show the claim defines the same patentable invention as the count to which it will be designated to correspond.
- (d) A preliminary motion under § 1.633(d) to substitute a different application of the moving party shall:
 - (1) Identify the different application.
 - (2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the different application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.
 - (3) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the different application which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the different application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding a claim to the different application.
- (e) A preliminary motion to declare an additional interference under § 1.633(e) shall explain why an additional interference is necessary.
 - (1) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(1), the motion shall:
 - (i) Identify the additional application.
 - (ii) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the additional application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents.
 - (iii) Propose a count for the additional interference.



- (iv) Show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the additional application which correspond to each proposed count for the additional interference and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the additional application; when necessary the applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any claim to the additional application.
 - (v) When the opponent is an applicant, show the patentability to the opponent of any claims in, or proposed to be added to, the opponent's application which correspond to the proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
 - (vi) Identify all claims in the opponent's application or patent which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if the opponent's application does not contain any such claim, the motion shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application.
 - (vii) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts of the interference in which the motion is filed.
 - (viii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.
 - (ix) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.
- (2) When the preliminary motion seeks an additional interference under § 1.633(e)(2), the motion shall:
- (i) Identify any application or patent to be involved in the additional interference.
 - (ii) Propose a count for the additional interference.
 - (iii) When the moving party is an applicant, show the patentability to the applicant of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the party's application which correspond to each proposed count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the party's application; when necessary a moving party applicant shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application.
 - (iv) Identify all claims in any opponent's application which should be designated to correspond to each proposed count; if an opponent's application does not contain such a claim, the moving party shall propose a claim to be added to the opponent's application. The moving party shall show the patentability of any proposed claim to the opponent and apply the terms of the claim to the disclosure of the opponent's application.
 - (v) Designate the claims of any patent involved in the interference which define the same patentable invention as each proposed count.
 - (vi) Show that each proposed count for the additional interference defines a separate patentable invention from all counts in the interference in which the motion is filed.
 - (vii) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application, if benefit is desired with respect to a proposed count.
 - (viii) If an opponent is accorded the benefit of the filing date of an earlier filed application in the notice of declaration of the interference, show why the opponent is not also entitled to benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count. Otherwise, the opponent will be presumed to be entitled to the benefit of the earlier filed application with respect to the proposed count.

- (f) A preliminary motion for benefit under § 1.633(f) shall:
- (1) Identify the earlier application.
 - (2) When the earlier application is an application filed in the United States, certify that a complete copy of the file of the earlier application, except for documents filed under § 1.131 or § 1.608, has been served on all opponents. When the earlier application is an application filed in a foreign country, certify that a copy of the application has been served on all opponents. If the earlier filed application is not in English, the requirements of § 1.647 must also be met.
 - (3) Show that the earlier application constitutes a constructive reduction to practice of each count.
- (g) A preliminary motion to attack benefit under § 1.633(g) shall explain, as to each count, why the opponent should not be accorded the benefit of the filing date of the earlier application.
- (h) A preliminary motion to add an application for reissue under § 1.633(h) shall:
- (1) Identify the application for reissue.
 - (2) Certify that a complete copy of the file of the application for reissue has been served on all opponents.
 - (3) Show the patentability of all claims in, or proposed to be added to, the application for reissue which correspond to each count and apply the terms of the claims to the disclosure of the application for reissue; when necessary a moving applicant for reissue shall file with the motion an amendment adding any proposed claim to the application for reissue.
 - (4) Be accompanied by a motion under § 1.633(f) requesting the benefit of the filing date of any earlier filed application, if benefit is desired.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; para. (e)(1)(vi) revised 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 49432, Sept. 23, 1993, effective Oct. 25, 1993; paras. (a), (b), (c)(1)(v), (c)(1)(vi), (c)(2)(ii), (c)(2)(iii), (c)(3)(ii), (c)(4)(ii), (d), (e)(1)(viii), (e)(2)(vii), (f)(2) & (h)(4) revised, paras.(c)(2)(iv), (c)(3)(iii) & (d)(4) removed, paras. (c)(1)(vii), (e)(1)(ix) & (e)(2)(viii) added, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.638 Opposition and reply; time for filing opposition and reply.

(a) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any opposition to any motion shall be filed within 20 days after service of the motion. An opposition shall identify any material fact set forth in the motion which is in dispute and include an argument why the relief requested in the motion should be denied.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any reply shall be filed within 15 days after service of the opposition. A reply shall be directed only to new points raised in the opposition.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.639 Evidence in support of motion, opposition, or reply.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) through (g) of this section, proof of any material fact alleged in a motion, opposition, or reply must be filed and served with the motion, opposition, or reply unless the proof relied upon is part of the interference file or the file of any patent or application involved in the interference or any earlier application filed in the United States of which a party has been accorded or seeks to be accorded benefit.

(b) Proof may be in the form of patents, printed publications, and affidavits. The pages of any affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers, which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits in the event they are included in the party's record (§ 1.653). Any patents and printed publications submitted under this paragraph and any exhibits identified in affidavits submitted under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers in the event the patents, printed publications and exhibits are filed with the party's record (§ 1.653).

(c) If a party believes that additional evidence in the form of testimony that is unavailable to the party is necessary to support or oppose a preliminary motion under § 1.633 or a motion to correct inventorship under § 1.634, the party shall describe the nature of any proposed testimony as specified in

paragraphs (d) through (g) of this section. If the administrative patent judge finds that testimony is needed to decide the motion, the administrative patent judge may grant appropriate interlocutory relief and enter an order authorizing the taking of testimony and deferring a decision on the motion to final hearing.

(d) When additional evidence in the form of expert-witness testimony is needed in support of or opposition to a preliminary motion, the moving party or opponent should:

- (1) Identify the person whom it expects to use as an expert;
- (2) State the field in which the person is alleged to be an expert; and
- (3) State:
 - (i) the subject matter on which the person is expected to testify;
 - (ii) the facts and opinions to which the person is expected to testify; and
 - (iii) a summary of the grounds and basis for each opinion.

(e) When additional evidence in the form of fact-witness testimony is necessary, state the facts to which the witness is expected to testify.

(f) If the opponent is to be called, or if evidence in the possession of the opponent is necessary, explain the evidence sought, what it will show, and why it is needed.

(g) When inter partes tests are expected to be performed, describe the tests stating what they will be expected to show.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (c) revised, 58 FR 49432, Sept. 23, 1993, effective Oct. 25, 1993; paras. (d)–(g) added, 58 FR 49432, Sept. 23, 1993, effective Oct. 25, 1993; paras. (a)–(d)(1) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.640 Motions, hearing and decision, redeclaration of interference, order to show cause.

(a) A hearing on a motion may be held in the discretion of the administrative patent judge. The administrative patent judge shall set the date and time for any hearing. The length of oral argument at a hearing on a motion is a matter within the discretion of the administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may direct that a hearing take place by telephone.

(b) Unless an administrative patent judge or the Board is of the opinion that an earlier decision on a preliminary motion would materially advance the resolution of the interference, decision on a preliminary motion shall be deferred to final hearing. Motions not deferred to final hearing will be decided by an administrative patent judge. An administrative patent judge may consult with an examiner in deciding motions. An administrative patent judge may take up motions for decision in any order, may grant, deny, or dismiss any motion, and may take such other action which will secure the just, speedy, and inexpensive determination of the interference. A matter raised by a party in support of or in opposition to a motion that is deferred to final hearing will not be entitled to consideration at final hearing unless the matter is raised in the party's brief at final hearing. If the administrative patent judge determines that the interference shall proceed to final hearing on the issue of priority or derivation, a time shall be set for each party to file a paper identifying any decisions on motions or on matters raised sua sponte by the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed at final hearing as well as identifying any deferred motions that the party wishes to have considered at final hearing. Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified by the party or by an opponent for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under § 1.671(e) during the testimony-in-chief period of the party.

- (1) When appropriate after the time expires for filing replies to oppositions to preliminary motions, the administrative patent judge will set a time for filing any amendment to an application involved in the interference and for filing a supplemental preliminary statement as to any new counts which may become involved in the interference if a preliminary motion to amend or substitute a count has been filed. Failure or refusal of a party to timely present an amendment required by an administrative patent judge shall be taken without further action as a disclaimer by that party of the invention involved. A supplemental preliminary statement shall meet the requirements specified in §§ 1.623, 1.624, 1.625, or 1.626, but need not be filed if a party states that it intends to rely on a preliminary statement previously filed under § 1.621(a). At an appropriate time in the interference, and when necessary, an order will be entered redeclaring the interference.

(2) After the time expires for filing preliminary motions, a further preliminary motion under § 1.633 will not be considered except as provided by § 1.645(b).

(c) When a decision on any motion under §§ 1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 or on any matter raised *sua sponte* by an administrative patent judge is entered which does not result in the issuance of an order to show cause under paragraph (d) of this section, a party may file a request for reconsideration within 14 days after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall be filed and served by hand or Express Mail. The filing of a request for reconsideration will not stay any time period set by the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. A decision ordinarily will not be modified unless an opposition has been requested by an administrative patent judge or the Board. The request for reconsideration normally will be acted on by the administrative patent judge or the panel of the Board which issued the decision.

(d) An administrative patent judge may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against a party when:

- (1) A decision on a motion or on a matter raised *sua sponte* by an administrative patent judge is entered which is dispositive of the interference against the party as to any count;
- (2) The party is a junior party who fails to file a preliminary statement; or
- (3) The party is a junior party whose preliminary statement fails to overcome the effective filing date of another party.

(e) When an order to show cause is issued under paragraph (d) of this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 20 days after the date of the order, the party against whom the order issued files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order.

- (1) If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the paper may:
 - (i) Request that final hearing be set to review any decision which is the basis for the order as well as any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at final hearing or
 - (ii) Fully explain why judgment should not be entered.
- (2) Any opponent may file a response to the paper within 20 days of the date of service of the paper. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the party's paper includes a request for final hearing, the opponent's response must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. If the order was issued under paragraph (d)(1) of this section and the paper does not include a request for final hearing, the opponent's response may include a request for final hearing, which must identify every decision of the administrative patent judge that the opponent wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing. Where only the opponent's response includes a request for a final hearing, the party filing the paper shall, within 14 days from the date of service of the opponent's response, file a reply identifying any other decision of the administrative patent judge that the party wishes to have reviewed by the Board at a final hearing.
- (3) The paper or the response should be accompanied by a motion (§ 1.635) requesting a testimony period if either party wishes to introduce any evidence to be considered at final hearing (§ 1.671). Any evidence that a party wishes to have considered with respect to the decisions and deferred motions identified for consideration or review at final hearing shall be filed or, if appropriate, noticed under § 1.671(e) during the testimony period of the party. A request for a testimony period shall be construed as including a request for final hearing.
- (4) If the paper contains an explanation of why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order, and if no party has requested a final hearing, the decision that is the basis for the order shall be reviewed based on the contents of the paper and the response. If the paper fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party against whom the order issued.



[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a)–(e) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.641 Unpatentability discovered by administrative patent judge.

(a) During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of a reason why a claim designated to correspond to a count may not be patentable, the administrative patent judge may enter an order notifying the parties of the reason and set a time within which each party may present its views, including any argument and any supporting evidence, and, in the case of the party whose claim may be unpatentable, any appropriate preliminary motions under §§ 1.633(c), (d) and (h).

(b) If a party timely files a preliminary motion in response to the order of the administrative patent judge, any opponent may file an opposition (§ 1.638(a)). If an opponent files an opposition, the party may reply (§ 1.638(b)).

(c) After considering any timely filed views, including any timely filed preliminary motions under § 1.633, oppositions and replies, the administrative patent judge shall decide how the interference shall proceed.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.642 Addition of application or patent to interference.

During the pendency of an interference, if the administrative patent judge becomes aware of an application or a patent not involved in the interference which claims the same patentable invention as a count in the interference, the administrative patent judge may add the application or patent to the interference on such terms as may be fair to all parties.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.643 Prosecution of interference by assignee.

(a) An assignee of record in the Patent and Trademark Office of the entire interest in an application or patent involved in an interference is entitled to conduct prosecution of the interference to the exclusion of the inventor.

(b) An assignee of a part interest in an application or patent involved in an interference may file a motion (§ 1.635) for entry of an order authorizing it to prosecute the interference. The motion shall show the inability or refusal of the inventor to prosecute the interference or other cause why it is in the interest of justice to permit the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference. The administrative patent judge may allow the assignee of a part interest to prosecute the interference upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.644 Petitions in interferences.

(a) There is no appeal to the Commissioner in an interference from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board. The Commissioner will not consider a petition in an interference unless:

- (1) The petition is from a decision of an administrative patent judge or the Board and the administrative patent judge or the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision involves a controlling question of procedure or an interpretation of a rule as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and that an immediate decision on petition by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the interference;
- (2) The petition seeks to invoke the supervisory authority of the Commissioner and does not relate to the merits of priority of invention or patentability or the admissibility of evidence under the Federal Rules of Evidence;
- (3) The petition seeks relief under § 1.183.

(b) A petition under paragraph (a)(1) of this section filed more than 15 days after the date of the decision of the administrative patent judge or the Board may be dismissed as untimely. A petition under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall not be filed prior to the party's brief for final hearing (see § 1.656). Any petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be timely if it is filed simultaneously with a proper



motion under § 1.633, 1.634, or 1.635 when granting the motion would require waiver of a rule. Any opposition to a petition under paragraphs (a)(1) or (a)(2) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition. Any opposition to a petition under paragraph (a)(3) of this section shall be filed within 20 days of the date of service of the petition or the date an opposition to the motion is due, whichever is earlier.

(c) The filing of a petition shall not stay the proceeding unless a stay is granted in the discretion of the administrative patent judge, the Board, or the Commissioner.

(d) Any petition must contain a statement of the facts involved, in numbered paragraphs, and the point or points to be reviewed and the action requested. The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the administrative patent judge or the Board, and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record in the interference shall not be submitted with the petition or opposition.

(e) Any petition under paragraph (a) of this section shall be accompanied by the petition fee set forth in § 1.17(h).

(f) Any request for reconsideration of a decision by the Commissioner shall be filed within 14 days of the decision of the Commissioner and must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h). No opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed unless requested by the Commissioner. The decision will not ordinarily be modified unless such an opposition has been requested by the Commissioner.

(g) Where reasonably possible, service of any petition, opposition, or request for reconsideration shall be such that delivery is accomplished within one working day. Service by hand or Express Mail complies with this paragraph.

(h) An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

(i) The Commissioner may delegate to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office employees the determination of petitions under this section.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a)–(a)(2), (b)–(g) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.645 Extension of time, late papers, stay of proceedings.

(a) Except to extend the time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action, a party may file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking an extension of time to take action in an interference. See § 1.304(a) for extensions of time for filing a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or for commencing a civil action. The motion shall be filed within sufficient time to actually reach the administrative patent judge before expiration of the time for taking action. A moving party should not assume that the motion will be granted even if there is no objection by any other party. The motion will be denied unless the moving party shows good cause why an extension should be granted. The press of other business arising after an administrative patent judge sets a time for taking action will not normally constitute good cause. A motion seeking additional time to take testimony because a party has not been able to procure the testimony of a witness shall set forth the name of the witness, any steps taken to procure the testimony of the witness, the dates on which the steps were taken, and the facts expected to be proved through the witness.

(b) Any paper belatedly filed will not be considered except upon motion (§ 1.635) which shows good cause why the paper was not timely filed, or where an administrative patent judge or the Board, sua sponte, is of the opinion that it would be in the interest of justice to consider the paper. See § 1.304(a) for exclusive procedures relating to belated filing of a notice of appeal to the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or belated commencement of a civil action.

(c) The provisions of § 1.136 do not apply to time periods in interferences.

(d) An administrative patent judge may stay proceedings in an interference.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a) and (b), 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; paras. (a), (b) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.646 Service of papers, proof of service.

(a) A copy of every paper filed in the Patent and Trademark Office in an interference or an application or patent involved in the interference shall be served upon all other parties except:

- (1) Preliminary statements when filed under § 1.621; preliminary statements shall be served when service is ordered by an administrative patent judge.
- (2) Certified transcripts and exhibits which accompany the transcripts filed under § 1.676; copies of transcripts shall be served as part of a party's record under § 1.653(c).

(b) Service shall be on an attorney or agent for a party. If there is no attorney or agent for the party, service shall be on the party. An administrative patent judge may order additional service or waive service where appropriate.

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, or except as otherwise provided by this subpart, service of a paper shall be made as follows:

- (1) By handing a copy of the paper or causing a copy of the paper to be handed to the person served.
- (2) By leaving a copy of the paper with someone employed by the person at the person's usual place of business.
- (3) When the person served has no usual place of business, by leaving a copy of the paper at the person's residence with someone of suitable age and discretion then residing therein.
- (4) By mailing a copy of the paper by first class mail; when service is by first class mail the date of mailing is regarded as the date of service.
- (5) By mailing a copy of the paper by Express Mail; when service is by Express Mail the date of deposit with the U.S. Postal Service is regarded as the date of service.
- (6) When it is shown to the satisfaction of an administrative patent judge that none of the above methods of obtaining or serving the copy of the paper was successful, the administrative patent judge may order service by publication of an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette.

(d) An administrative patent judge may order that a paper be served by hand or Express Mail.

(e) The due date for serving a paper is the same as the due date for filing the paper in the Patent and Trademark Office. Proof of service must be made before a paper will be considered in an interference. Proof of service may appear on or be affixed to the paper. Proof of service shall include the date and manner of service. In the case of personal service under paragraphs (c)(1) through (c)(3) of this section, proof of service shall include the names of any person served and the person who made the service. Proof of service may be made by an acknowledgment of service by or on behalf of the person served or a statement signed by the party or the party's attorney or agent containing the information required by this section. A statement of an attorney or agent attached to, or appearing in, the paper stating the date and manner of service will be accepted as prima facie proof of service.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a)(1)–(c)(1), (c)(4)–(c)(5) revised, para. (c)(6) added, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.647 Translation of document in foreign language.

When a party relies on a document or is required to produce a document in a language other than English, a translation of the document into English and an affidavit attesting to the accuracy of the translation shall be filed with the document.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a) and (d), 56 FR 42528, Aug. 28, 1991, effective Sept. 27, 1991; 56 FR 46823, Sept. 16, 1991; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.651 Setting times for discovery and taking testimony, parties entitled to take testimony.

(a) At an appropriate stage in an interference, an administrative patent judge shall set a time for filing motions (§ 1.635) for additional discovery under § 1.687(c) and testimony periods for taking any necessary testimony.

(b) Where appropriate, testimony periods will be set to permit a party to:

- (1) Present its case-in-chief and/or case-in-rebuttal and/or
- (2) Cross-examine an opponent's case-in-chief and/or a case-in-rebuttal.

- (c) A party is not entitled to take testimony to present a case-in-chief unless:
- (1) The administrative patent judge orders the taking of testimony under § 1.639(c);
 - (2) The party alleges in its preliminary statement a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the senior party;
 - (3) A testimony period has been set to permit an opponent to prove a date of invention prior to the effective filing date of the party and the party has filed a preliminary statement alleging a date of invention prior to that date; or
 - (4) A motion (§ 1.635) is filed showing good cause why a testimony period should be set.
- (d) Testimony, including any testimony to be taken in a place outside the United States, shall be taken and completed during the testimony periods set under paragraph (a) of this section. A party seeking to extend the period for taking testimony must comply with §§ 1.635 and 1.645(a).

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a) and (d), 56 FR 42528, Aug. 28, 1991, effective Sept. 27, 1991; 56 FR 46823, Sept. 16, 1991; paras. (a), (c)(1)–(c)(3) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.652 Judgment for failure to take testimony or file record.

If a junior party fails to timely take testimony authorized under § 1.651, or file a record under § 1.653(c), an administrative patent judge, with or without a motion (§ 1.635) by another party, may issue an order to show cause why judgment should not be entered against the junior party. When an order is issued under this section, the Board shall enter judgment in accordance with the order unless, within 15 days after the date of the order, the junior party files a paper which shows good cause why judgment should not be entered in accordance with the order. Any other party may file a response to the paper within 15 days of the date of service of the paper. If the party against whom the order was issued fails to show good cause, the Board shall enter judgment against the party.

[49 FR 48416, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.653 Record and exhibits.

(a) Testimony shall consist of affidavits under § 1.672(b), (c) and (g), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) and 1.688(b), transcripts of depositions under §§ 1.671(g) and 1.672(a) when a deposition is authorized by an administrative patent judge, transcripts of depositions under § 1.672(d), 1.682(d), 1.683(c) and 1.688(c), agreed statements under § 1.672(h), transcripts of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories, and recorded answers and copies of written interrogatories and answers and written requests for admissions and answers under § 1.688(a).

(b) An affidavit shall be filed as set forth in § 1.677. A certified transcript of a deposition, including a deposition cross-examining an affiant, shall be filed as set forth in §§ 1.676, 1.677 and 1.678. An original agreed statement shall be filed as set forth in § 1.672(h).

(c) In addition to the items specified in paragraph (b) of this section and within a time set by an administrative patent judge, each party shall file three copies and serve one copy of a record consisting of:

- (1) An index of the names of the witnesses for the party, giving the pages of the record where the direct testimony and cross-examination of each witness begins.
- (2) An index of exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the page of the record where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.
- (3) The count or counts.
- (4) Each affidavit by a witness for the party, transcript, including transcripts of cross-examination of any affiant who testified for the party and transcripts of compelled deposition testimony by a witness for the party, agreed statement relied upon by the party, and transcript of interrogatories, cross-interrogatories and recorded answers.
- (5) [Reserved]
- (6) Any evidence from another interference, proceeding, or action relied upon by the party under § 1.683.
- (7) Each request for an admission and the admission and each written interrogatory and the answer upon which a party intends to rely under § 1.688.

(d) The pages of the record shall be consecutively numbered to the extent possible.



(e) The name of each witness shall appear at the top of each page of each affidavit or transcript.

(f) [Reserved]

(g) The record may be produced by standard typographical printing or by any other process capable of producing a clear black permanent image. All printed matter except on covers must appear in at least 11 point type on opaque, unglazed paper. Footnotes may not be printed in type smaller than 9 point. The page size shall be 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8 by 11 inches) (letter size) with printed matter 16.5 by 24.1 cm. (6 by 9 inches). The record shall be bound with covers at their left edges in such manner as to lie flat when open to any page and in one or more volumes of convenient size (approximately 100 pages per volume is suggested). When there is more than one volume, the numbers of the pages contained in each volume shall appear at the top of the cover for each volume.

(h) [Reserved]

(i) Each party shall file its exhibits with the record specified in paragraph (c) of this section. Exhibits include documents and things identified in affidavits or on the record during the taking of oral depositions as well as official records and publications filed by the party under § 1.682(a). One copy of each documentary exhibit shall be served. Documentary exhibits shall be filed in an envelope or folder and shall not be bound as part of the record. Physical exhibits, if not filed by an officer under § 1.676(d), shall be filed with the record. Each exhibit shall contain a label which identifies the party submitting the exhibit and an exhibit number, the style of the interference (e.g., Jones v. Smith), and the interference number. Where possible, the label should appear at the bottom right-hand corner of each documentary exhibit. Upon termination of an interference, an administrative patent judge may return an exhibit to the party filing the exhibit. When any exhibit is returned, an order shall be entered indicating that the exhibit has been returned.

(j) Any testimony, record, or exhibit which does not comply with this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

[49 FR 48466, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a), (b), (c), (c)(1), (c)(4), (d), (g) & (i) revised, paras. (c)(5), (f) & (h) removed, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.654 Final hearing.

(a) At an appropriate stage of the interference, the parties will be given an opportunity to appear before the Board to present oral argument at a final hearing. An administrative patent judge may set a date and time for final hearing. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge or the Board, each party will be entitled to no more than 30 minutes of oral argument at final hearing. A party who does not file a brief for final hearing (§ 1.656(a)) shall not be entitled to appear at final hearing.

(b) The opening argument of a junior party shall include a fair statement of the junior party's case and the junior party's position with respect to the case presented on behalf of any other party. A junior party may reserve a portion of its time for rebuttal.

(c) A party shall not be entitled to argue that an opponent abandoned, suppressed, or concealed an actual reduction to practice unless a notice under § 1.632 was timely filed.

(d) After final hearing, the interference shall be taken under advisement by the Board. No further paper shall be filed except under § 1.658(b) or as authorized by an administrative patent judge or the Board. No additional oral argument shall be had unless ordered by the Board.

[49 FR 48466, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a) & (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective April 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.655 Matters considered in rendering a final decision.

(a) In rendering a final decision, the Board may consider any properly raised issue, including priority of invention, derivation by an opponent from a party who filed a preliminary statement under § 1.625, patentability of the invention, admissibility of evidence, any interlocutory matter deferred to final hearing, and any other matter necessary to resolve the interference. The Board may also consider whether entry of any interlocutory order was an abuse of discretion. All interlocutory orders shall be presumed to have been correct, and the burden of showing an abuse of discretion shall be on the party attacking the order. When two or more interlocutory orders involve the same issue, the last entered order shall be presumed to have been correct.

(b) A party shall not be entitled to raise for consideration at final hearing any matter which properly could have been raised by a motion under §§ 1.633 or 1.634 unless the matter was properly raised



in a motion that was timely filed by the party under §§ 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was denied or deferred to final hearing, the matter was properly raised by the party in a timely filed opposition to a motion under §§ 1.633 or 1.634 and the motion was granted over the opposition or deferred to final hearing, or the party shows good cause why the issue was not properly raised by a timely filed motion or opposition. A party that fails to contest, by way of a timely filed preliminary motion under § 1.633(c), the designation of a claim as corresponding to a count, or fails to timely argue the separate patentability of a particular claim when the ground for unpatentability is first raised, may not subsequently argue to an administrative patent judge or the Board the separate patentability of claims designated to correspond to the count with respect to that ground.

(c) In the interest of justice, the Board may exercise its discretion to consider an issue even though it would not otherwise be entitled to consideration under this section.

[49 FR 48466, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 49432, Sept. 23, 1993, effective Oct. 25, 1993; revised 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.656 Briefs for final hearing.

(a) Each party shall be entitled to file briefs for final hearing. The administrative patent judge shall determine the briefs needed and shall set the time and order for filing briefs.

(b) The opening brief of a junior party shall contain under appropriate headings and in the order indicated:

- (1) A statement of interest indicating the full name of every party represented by the attorney in the interference and the name of the real party in interest if the party named in the caption is not the real party in interest.
- (2) A statement of related cases indicating whether the interference was previously before the Board for final hearing and the name and number of any related appeal or interference which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the Board, or which is pending before, or which has been decided by, the U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a district court in a proceeding under 35 U.S.C. 146. A related appeal or interference is one which will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the pending interference.
- (3) A table of contents, with page references, and a table of cases (alphabetically arranged), statutes, and other authorities cited, with references to the pages of the brief where they are cited.
- (4) A statement of the issues presented for decision in the interference.
- (5) A statement of the facts, in numbered paragraphs, relevant to the issues presented for decision with appropriate references to the record.
- (6) An argument, which may be preceded by a summary, which shall contain the contentions of the party with respect to the issues it is raising for consideration at final hearing, and the reasons therefor, with citations to the cases, statutes, other authorities, and parts of the record relied on.
- (7) A short conclusion stating the precise relief requested.
- (8) An appendix containing a copy of the counts.

(c) The opening brief of the senior party shall conform to the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section except:

- (1) A statement of the issues and of the facts need not be made unless the party is dissatisfied with the statement in the opening brief of the junior party and
- (2) An appendix containing a copy of the counts need not be included if the copy of the counts in the opening brief of the junior party is correct.

(d) Unless ordered otherwise by an administrative patent judge, briefs shall be double-spaced (except for footnotes, which may be single-spaced) and shall comply with the requirements of § 1.653(g) for records except the requirement for binding.

(e) An original and four copies of each brief must be filed.

(f) Any brief which does not comply with the requirements of this section may be returned under § 1.618(a).

(g) Any party, separate from its opening brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file an original and four copies of concise proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law. Any proposed findings of fact shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by specific references to the record. Any proposed conclusions of law shall be in numbered paragraphs and shall be supported by citation of cases, statutes, or other authority. Any opponent, separate from its opening or reply brief, but filed concurrently therewith, may file a paper accepting or objecting to any proposed findings of fact or conclusions of law; when objecting, a reason must be given. The Board may adopt the proposed findings of fact and conclusions of law in whole or in part.

(h) If a party wants the Board in rendering its final decision to rule on the admissibility of any evidence, the party shall file with its opening brief an original and four copies of a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the evidence. The provisions of § 1.637(b) do not apply to a motion to suppress under this paragraph. Any objection previously made to the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent is waived unless the motion required by this paragraph is filed. A party that failed to challenge the admissibility of the evidence of an opponent on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under § 1.672(c), 1.682(c), 1.683(b) or 1.688(b) may not move under this paragraph to suppress the evidence on that ground at final hearing. An original and four copies of an opposition to the motion may be filed with an opponent's opening brief or reply brief as may be appropriate.

(i) When a junior party fails to timely file an opening brief, an order may issue requiring the junior party to show cause why the Board should not treat failure to file the brief as a concession of priority. If the junior party fails to show good cause within a time period set in the order, judgment may be entered against the junior party.

[49 FR 48466, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; amended 60 FR 14488–536, Mar. 17, 1995; paras. (a), (b)(1)–(b)(8), (d), (e), (g), (h) & (i) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr., 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.657 Burden of proof as to date of invention.

(a) A rebuttable presumption shall exist that, as to each count, the inventors made their invention in the chronological order of their effective filing dates. The burden of proof shall be upon a party who contends otherwise.

(b) In an interference involving copending applications or involving a patent and an application having an effective filing date on or before the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by a preponderance of the evidence.

(c) In an interference involving an application and a patent and where the effective filing date of the application is after the date the patent issued, a junior party shall have the burden of establishing priority by clear and convincing evidence.

[49 FR 48466, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; amended 60 FR 14488–536, Mar. 17, 1995; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.658 Final decision.

(a) After final hearing, the Board shall enter a decision resolving the issues raised at final hearing. The decision may enter judgment, in whole or in part, remand the interference to an administrative patent judge for further proceedings, or take further action not inconsistent with law. A judgment as to a count shall state whether or not each party is entitled to a patent containing the claims in the party's patent or application which correspond to the count. When the Board enters a decision awarding judgment as to all counts, the decision shall be regarded as a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141–144, 146) unless a request for reconsideration under paragraph (b) of this section is timely filed.

(b) Any request for reconsideration of a decision under paragraph (a) of this section shall be filed within one month after the date of the decision. The request for reconsideration shall specify with particularity the points believed to have been misapprehended or overlooked in rendering the decision. Any opposition to a request for reconsideration shall be filed within 14 days of the date of service of the request for reconsideration. Service of the request for reconsideration shall be by hand or Express Mail. The Board shall enter a decision on the request for reconsideration. If the Board shall be of the opinion that the decision on the request for reconsideration significantly modifies its original decision under paragraph (a) of this section, the Board may designate the decision on the request for reconsideration as a new decision. A decision on reconsideration is a final decision for the purpose of judicial review (35 U.S.C. 141–144, 146).



- (c) A judgment in an interference settles all issues which
 - (1) were raised and decided in the interference,
 - (2) could have been properly raised and decided in the interference by a motion under § 1.633(a) through (d) and (f) through (j) or § 1.634 and
 - (3) could have been properly raised and decided in an additional interference with a motion under § 1.633(e).

A losing party who could have properly moved, but failed to move, under § 1.633 or 1.634, shall be estopped to take ex parte or inter partes action in the Patent and Trademark Office after the interference which is inconsistent with that party's failure to properly move, except that a losing party shall not be estopped with respect to any claims which correspond, or properly could have corresponded, to a count as to which that party was awarded a favorable judgment.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b), 54 FR 29553, July 13, 1989, effective Aug. 20, 1989; paras. (a) & (b) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.659 Recommendation.

(a) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for rejecting any application claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommended rejection of the claim. Upon resumption of ex parte prosecution of the application, the examiner shall be bound by the recommendation and shall enter and maintain the recommended rejection unless an amendment or showing of facts not previously of record is filed which, in the opinion of the examiner, overcomes the recommended rejection.

(b) Should the Board have knowledge of any ground for reexamination of a patent involved in the interference as to a patent claim not involved in the judgment of the interference, it may include in its decision a recommendation to the Commissioner that the patent be reexamined. The Commissioner will determine whether reexamination will be ordered.

(c) The Board may make any other recommendation to the examiner or the Commissioner as may be appropriate.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.660 Notice of reexamination, reissue, protest, or litigation.

(a) When a request for reexamination of a patent involved in an interference is filed, the patent owner shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the request was filed.

(b) When an application for reissue is filed by a patentee involved in an interference, the patentee shall notify the Board within 10 days of the day the application for reissue is filed.

(c) When a protest under § 1.291 is filed against an application involved in an interference, the applicant shall notify the Board within 10 days of receiving notice that the protest was filed.

(d) A party in an interference shall notify the Board promptly of any litigation related to any patent or application involved in an interference, including any civil action commenced under 35 U.S.C. 146.

(e) The notice required by this section is designed to assist the administrative patent judge and the Board in efficiently handling interference cases. Failure of a party to comply with the provisions of this section may result in sanctions under § 1.616. Knowledge by, or notice to, an employee of the Office other than an employee of the Board, of the existence of the reexamination, application for reissue, protest, or litigation shall not be sufficient. The notice contemplated by this section is notice addressed to the administrative patent judge in charge of the interference in which the application or patent is involved.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (e) added, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.661 Termination of interference after judgment.

After a final decision is entered by the Board, an interference is considered terminated when no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.662 Request for entry of adverse judgment; reissue filed by patentee.

(a) A party may, at any time during an interference, request and agree to entry of an adverse judgment. The filing by a party of a written disclaimer of the invention defined by a count, concession of priority or unpatentability of the subject matter of a count, abandonment of the invention defined by a count, or abandonment of the contest as to a count will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant or patentee as to all claims which correspond to the count. Abandonment of an application, other than an application for reissue having a claim of the patent sought to be reissued involved in the interference, will be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the applicant as to all claims corresponding to all counts. Upon the filing by a party of a request for entry of an adverse judgment, the Board may enter judgment against the party.

(b) If a patentee involved in an interference files an application for reissue during the interference and the reissue application does not include a claim that corresponds to a count, judgment may be entered against the patentee. A patentee who files an application for reissue which includes a claim that corresponds to a count shall, in addition to complying with the provisions of § 1.660(b), timely file a preliminary motion under § 1.633(h) or show good cause why the motion could not have been timely filed or would not be appropriate.

(c) The filing of a statutory disclaimer under 35 U.S.C. 253 by a patentee will delete any statutorily disclaimed claims from being involved in the interference. A statutory disclaimer will not be treated as a request for entry of an adverse judgment against the patentee unless it results in the deletion of all patent claims corresponding to a count.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (b) amended 53 FR 23735, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988; paras. (a) & (e) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.663 Status of claim of defeated applicant after interference.

Whenever an adverse judgment is entered as to a count against an applicant from which no appeal (35 U.S.C. 141) or other review (35 U.S.C. 146) has been or can be taken or had, the claims of the application corresponding to the count stand finally disposed of without further action by the examiner. Such claims are not open to further ex parte prosecution.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.664 Action after interference.

(a) After termination of an interference, the examiner will promptly take such action in any application previously involved in the interference as may be necessary. Unless entered by order of an administrative patent judge, amendments presented during the interference shall not be entered, but may be subsequently presented by the applicant subject to the provisions of this subpart provided prosecution of the application is not otherwise closed.

(b) After judgment, the application of any party may be held subject to further examination, including an interference with another application.

[49 FR 48467, Dec. 12, 1984, 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.665 Second interference.

A second interference between the same parties will not be declared upon an application not involved in an earlier interference for an invention defined by a count of the earlier interference. See § 1.658(c).

[49 FR 48468, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985]

37 CFR 1.666 Filing of interference settlement agreements.

(a) Any agreement or understanding between parties to an interference, including any collateral agreements referred to therein, made in connection with or in contemplation of the termination of the interference, must be in writing and a true copy thereof must be filed before the termination of the interference (§ 1.661) as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

(b) If any party filing the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section so requests, the copy will be kept separate from the file of the interference, and made available only to



Government agencies on written request, or to any person upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) and on a showing of good cause.

(c) Failure to file the copy of the agreement or understanding under paragraph (a) of this section will render permanently unenforceable such agreement or understanding and any patent of the parties involved in the interference or any patent subsequently issued on any application of the parties so involved. The Commissioner may, however, upon petition accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(h) and on a showing of good cause for failure to file within the time prescribed, permit the filing of the agreement or understanding during the six/month period subsequent to the termination of the interference as between the parties to the agreement or understanding.

[49 FR 48468, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; para. (b), 54 FR 6893, Feb. 15, 1989, effective Apr. 17, 1989; amended 60 FR 14488–536, Mar. 17, 1995; amended 60 FR 14488–536, Mar. 17, 1995; para. (a) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995; para. (b) amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.671 Evidence must comply with rules.

(a) Evidence consists of testimony and referenced exhibits, official records and publications filed under § 1.682, testimony and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action filed under § 1.683, discovery relied upon under § 1.688, and the specification (including claims) and drawings of any application or patent:

- (1) Involved in the interference.
- (2) To which a party has been accorded benefit in the notice declaring the interference or by a preliminary motion granted under § 1.633.
- (3) For which a party has sought, but has been denied, benefit by a preliminary motion under § 1.633.
- (4) For which benefit was rescinded by a preliminary motion granted under § 1.633.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in this subpart, the Federal Rules of Evidence shall apply to interference proceedings. Those portions of the Federal Rules of Evidence relating to criminal actions, juries, and other matters not relevant to interferences shall not apply.

(c) Unless the context is otherwise clear, the following terms of the Federal Rules of Evidence shall be construed as follows:

- (1) Courts of the United States, U.S. Magistrate, court, trial court, or trier of fact means administrative patent judge or Board as may be appropriate.
- (2) Judge means administrative patent judge.
- (3) Judicial notice means official notice.
- (4) Civil action, civil proceeding, action, or trial mean interference.
- (5) Appellate court means United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit or a United States district court when judicial review is under 35 U.S.C. 146.
- (6) Before the hearing in Rule 703 of the Federal Rules of Evidence means before giving testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.
- (7) The trial or hearing in Rules 803(24) and 804(5) of the Federal Rules of Evidence means the taking of testimony by affidavit or oral deposition.

(d) Certification is not necessary as a condition to admissibility when the record is a record of the Patent and Trademark Office to which all parties have access.

(e) A party may not rely on an affidavit (including any exhibits), patent or printed publication previously submitted by the party under § 1.639(b) unless a copy of the affidavit, patent or printed publication has been served and a written notice is filed prior to the close of the party's relevant testimony period stating that the party intends to rely on the affidavit, patent or printed publication. When proper notice is given under this paragraph, the affidavit, patent or printed publication shall be deemed as filed under §§ 1.640(b), 1.640(e)(3), 1.672(b) or 1.682(a), as appropriate.

(f) The significance of documentary and other exhibits identified by a witness in an affidavit or during oral deposition shall be discussed with particularity by a witness.

(g) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things under 35 U.S.C. 24 or from an opposing

party. The motion shall describe the general nature and the relevance of the testimony, document, or thing. If permission is granted, the party shall notice a deposition under § 1.673 and may proceed to take testimony.

(h) A party must file a motion (§ 1.635) seeking permission from an administrative patent judge prior to compelling testimony or production of documents or things in a foreign country.

(1) In the case of testimony, the motion shall:

- (i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the testimony;
- (ii) Identify the witness by name or title;
- (iii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes the witness can be compelled to testify in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel the testimony in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain the testimony; and
- (iv) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to secure the agreement of the witness to testify in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining the agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of the witness to travel to and testify in the United States.

(2) In the case of production of a document or thing, the motion shall:

- (i) Describe the general nature and relevance of the document or thing;
- (ii) Identify the foreign country and explain why the party believes production of the document or thing can be compelled in the foreign country, including a description of the procedures that will be used to compel production of the document or thing in the foreign country and an estimate of the time it is expected to take to obtain production of the document or thing; and
- (iii) Demonstrate that the party has made reasonable efforts to obtain the agreement of the individual or entity having possession, custody, or control of the document to produce the document or thing in the United States but has been unsuccessful in obtaining that agreement, even though the party has offered to pay the expenses of producing the document or thing in the United States.

(i) Evidence which is not taken or sought and filed in accordance with this subpart shall not be admissible.

(j) The weight to be given deposition testimony taken in a foreign country will be determined in view of all the circumstances, including the laws of the foreign country governing the testimony. Little, if any, weight may be given to deposition testimony taken in a foreign country unless the party taking the testimony proves by clear and convincing evidence, as a matter of fact, that knowingly giving false testimony in that country in connection with an interference proceeding in the United States Patent and Trademark Office is punishable under the laws of that country and that the punishment in that country for such false testimony is comparable to or greater than the punishment for perjury committed in the United States. The administrative patent judge and the Board, in determining foreign law, may consider any relevant material or source, including testimony, whether or not submitted by a party or admissible under the Federal Rules of Evidence.

[49 FR 48468, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; paras. (a), (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(6), (c)(7), (e)-(j) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.672 Manner of taking testimony.

(a) Unless testimony must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country, testimony of a witness shall be taken by affidavit in accordance with this subpart. Testimony which must be compelled under 35 U.S.C. 24, compelled from a party, or compelled in a foreign country shall be taken by oral deposition.

(b) A party presenting testimony of a witness by affidavit shall, within the time set by the administrative patent judge for serving affidavits, file a copy of the affidavit or, if appropriate, notice under § 1.671(e). If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its case-in-chief. If the affidavit relates to a party's case-in-rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits for its

case-in-rebuttal. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any document referred to in the affidavit unless a copy of the document is filed with the affidavit. A party shall not be entitled to rely on any thing mentioned in the affidavit unless the opponent is given reasonable access to the thing. A thing is something other than a document. The pages of affidavits filed under this paragraph and of any other testimony filed therewith under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers which shall also serve as the record page numbers for the affidavits and other testimony in the party's record to be filed under § 1.653. Exhibits identified in the affidavits or in any other testimony filed under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and any official records and printed publications filed under § 1.682(a) shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential exhibit numbers, which shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The affidavits, testimony filed under §§ 1.683(a) and 1.688(a) and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where the testimony of each witness begins, and by an index of the exhibits briefly describing the nature of each exhibit and giving the number of the page where each exhibit is first identified and offered into evidence.

(c) If an opponent objects to the admissibility of any evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit filed under paragraph (b) of this section, the opponent must, no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for filing objections under this paragraph, file objections stating with particularity the nature of each objection. An opponent that fails to object to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with an affidavit on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files objections, the party may, within 20 days of the due date for filing objections, file one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications to overcome the objections. No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits filed under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's testimony submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The page numbers assigned to the supplemental affidavits shall also serve as the record page numbers for the supplemental affidavits in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in supplemental affidavits and any supplemental official records and printed publications shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraph (b) of this section. The exhibit numbers shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when the exhibits are filed with the party's record. The supplemental affidavits shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(d) After the time expires for filing objections and supplemental affidavits, or earlier when appropriate, the administrative patent judge shall set a time within which any opponent may file a request to cross-examine an affiant on oral deposition. If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall notice a deposition at a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of the transcripts served under this paragraph shall, to the extent possible, be sequentially numbered beginning with the number following the last page number of the party's supplemental affidavits submitted under paragraph (c) of this section. The numbers assigned to the transcript pages shall also serve as the record page numbers for the transcripts in the party's record filed under § 1.653. Additional exhibits identified in the transcripts, shall, to the extent possible, be given sequential numbers beginning with the number following the last number of the exhibits submitted under paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. The exhibit numbers assigned to the additional exhibits shall also serve as the exhibit numbers when those exhibits are filed with the party's record. The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page



where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) [Reserved]

(f) When a deposition is authorized to be taken within the United States under this subpart and if the parties agree in writing, the deposition may be taken in any place within the United States, before any person authorized to administer oaths, upon any notice, and in any manner, and when so taken may be used like other depositions.

(g) If the parties agree in writing, the affidavit testimony of any witness may be submitted without opportunity for cross-examination.

(h) If the parties agree in writing, testimony may be submitted in the form of an agreed statement setting forth how a particular witness would testify, if called, or the facts in the case of one or more of the parties. The agreed statement shall be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office. See § 1.653(a).

(i) In an unusual circumstance and upon a showing that testimony cannot be taken in accordance with the provisions of this subpart, an administrative patent judge upon motion (§ 1.635) may authorize testimony to be taken in another manner.

[49 FR 48468, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.673 Notice of examination of witness.

(a) A party authorized to take testimony of a witness by deposition shall, after complying with paragraphs (b) and (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each deposition to be taken. Depositions to be taken in the United States may be noticed for a reasonable time and place in the United States. A deposition may not be noticed for any other place without approval of an administrative patent judge. The notice shall specify the name and address of each witness and the general nature of the testimony to be given by the witness. If the name of a witness is not known, a general description sufficient to identify the witness or a particular class or group to which the witness belongs may be given instead.

(b) Unless the parties agree or an administrative patent judge or the Board determine otherwise, a party shall serve, but not file, at least three working days prior to the conference required by paragraph (g) of this section, if service is made by hand or Express Mail, or at least 14 days prior to the conference if service is made by any other means, the following:

- (1) A list and copy of each document in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition and
- (2) A list of and a proffer of reasonable access to things in the party's possession, custody, or control and upon which the party intends to rely at any deposition.

(c) A party shall not be permitted to rely on any witness not listed in the notice, or any document not served or any thing not listed as required by paragraph (b) of this section:

- (1) Unless all opponents agree in writing or on the record to permit the party to rely on the witness, document or thing, or
- (2) Except upon a motion (§ 1.635) promptly filed which is accompanied by any proposed notice, additional documents, or lists and which shows good cause why the notice, documents, or lists were not served in accordance with this section.

(d) Each opponent shall have a full opportunity to attend a deposition and cross-examine.

(e) A party who has presented testimony by affidavit and is required to notice depositions for the purpose of cross-examination under § 1.672(b), shall, after complying with paragraph (g) of this section, file and serve a single notice of deposition stating the time and place of each cross-examination deposition to be taken.

(f) The parties shall not take depositions in more than one place at the same time or so nearly at the same time that reasonable opportunity to travel from one place of deposition to another cannot be had.

(g) Before serving a notice of deposition and after complying with paragraph (b) of this section, a party shall have an oral conference with all opponents to attempt to agree on a mutually acceptable time and place for conducting the deposition. A certificate shall appear in the notice stating that the oral conference



took place or explaining why the conference could not be had. If the parties cannot agree to a mutually acceptable place and time for conducting the deposition at the conference, the parties shall contact an administrative patent judge who shall then designate the time and place for conducting the deposition.

(h) A copy of the notice of deposition shall be attached to the certified transcript of the deposition filed under § 1.676(a).

[49 FR 48469, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (a)–(e) & (g) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.674 Persons before whom depositions may be taken.

(a) A deposition shall be taken before an officer authorized to administer oaths by the laws of the United States or of the place where the examination is held.

(b) Unless the parties agree in writing, the following persons shall not be competent to serve as an officer:

- (1) A relative or employee of a party,
- (2) a relative or employee of an attorney or agent of a party, or
- (3) a person interested, directly or indirectly, in the interference either as counsel, attorney, agent, or otherwise.

[49 FR 48469, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.675 Examination of witness, reading and signing transcript of deposition.

(a) Each witness before giving an oral deposition shall be duly sworn according to law by the officer before whom the deposition is to be taken.

(b) The testimony shall be taken in answer to interrogatories with any questions and answers recorded in their regular order by the officer or by some other person, who shall be subject to the provisions of § 1.674(b), in the presence of the officer unless the presence of the officer is waived on the record by agreement of all parties.

(c) All objections made at the time of the deposition to the qualifications of the officer taking the deposition, the manner of taking it, the evidence presented, the conduct of any party, and any other objection to the proceeding shall be noted on the record by the officer. Evidence objected to shall be taken subject to any objection.

(d) Unless the parties agree in writing or waive reading and signature by the witness on the record at the deposition, when the testimony has been transcribed a transcript of the deposition shall, unless the witness refuses to read and/or sign the transcript of the deposition, be read by the witness and then signed by the witness in the form of:

- (1) An affidavit in the presence of any notary or
- (2) A declaration.

[49 FR 48469, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; para. (d) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.676 Certification and filing by officer, marking exhibits.

(a) The officer shall prepare a certified transcript of the deposition by attaching to a transcript of the deposition a copy of the notice of deposition, any exhibits to be annexed to the certified transcript, and a certificate signed and sealed by the officer and showing:

- (1) The witness was duly sworn by the officer before commencement of testimony by the witness.
- (2) The transcript is a true record of the testimony given by the witness.
- (3) The name of the person by whom the testimony was recorded and, if not recorded by the officer, whether the testimony was recorded in the presence of the officer.
- (4) The presence or absence of any opponent.
- (5) The place where the deposition was taken and the day and hour when the deposition began and ended.
- (6) The officer is not disqualified under § 1.674.

(b) If the parties waived any of the requirements of paragraph (a) of this section, the certificate shall so state.

(c) The officer shall note on the certificate the circumstances under which a witness refuses to sign a transcript.

(d) Unless the parties agree otherwise in writing or on the record at the deposition, the officer shall securely seal the certified transcript in an envelope endorsed with the style of the interference (e.g., Smith v. Jones), the interference number, the name of the witness, and the date of sealing and shall promptly forward the envelope to BOX INTERFERENCE, Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Washington, D.C. 20231. Documents and things produced for inspection during the examination of a witness, shall, upon request of a party, be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript, and may be inspected and copied by any party, except that if the person producing the documents and things desires to retain them, the person may:

- (1) offer copies to be marked for identification and annexed to the certified transcript and to serve thereafter as originals if the person affords to all parties fair opportunity to verify the copies by comparison with the originals or
- (2) offer the originals to be marked for identification, after giving each party an opportunity to inspect and copy them, in which event the documents and things may be used in the same manner as if annexed to the certified transcript.

The exhibits shall then be filed as specified in § 1.653(i). If the weight or bulk of a document or thing shall reasonably prevent the document or thing from being annexed to the certified transcript, it shall, unless waived on the record at the deposition of all parties, be authenticated by the officer and forwarded to the Commissioner in a separate package marked and addressed as provided in this paragraph.

[49 FR 48469, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; para. (a)(4) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.677 Form of an affidavit or a transcript of deposition.

(a) An affidavit or a transcript of a deposition must be on opaque, unglazed, durable paper approximately 21.8 by 27.9 cm. (8½ by 11 inches) in size (letter size). The printed matter shall be double-spaced on one side of the paper in not smaller than 11 point type with a margin of 3.8 cm. (1½ inches) on the left-hand side of the page. The pages of each transcript must be consecutively numbered and the name of the witness shall appear at the top of each page (§ 1.653(e)). In transcripts of depositions, the questions propounded to each witness must be consecutively numbered unless paper with numbered lines is used and each question must be followed by its answer.

(b) Exhibits must be numbered consecutively to the extent possible and each must be marked as required by § 1.653(i).

[49 FR 48470, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.678 Time for filing transcript of deposition.

Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, a certified transcript of a deposition must be filed in the Patent and Trademark Office within one month after the date of deposition. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, the administrative patent judge or the Board may take appropriate action under § 1.616. If a party refuses to file a certified transcript, any opponent may move for leave to file the certified transcript and include a copy of the transcript as part of the opponent's record.

[49 FR 48470, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.679 Inspection of transcript.

A certified transcript of a deposition filed in the Patent and Trademark Office may be inspected by any party. The certified transcript may not be removed from the Patent and Trademark Office unless authorized by an administrative patent judge upon such terms as may be appropriate.

[49 FR 48470, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.682 Official records and printed publications.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, an official record or printed publication not identified in an affidavit or on the record during an oral deposition of a witness, by filing a

copy of the official record or printed publication or, if appropriate, a notice under § 1.671(e). If the official record or printed publication relates to the party's case-in-chief, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the official record or printed publication relates to rebuttal, it shall be filed or noticed together with any affidavits filed by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not file any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Official records and printed publications filed under this paragraph shall be assigned sequential exhibit numbers by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(b). The official record and printed publications shall be accompanied by a paper which shall:

- (1) Identify the official record or printed publication;
- (2) Identify the portion thereof to be introduced in evidence; and
- (3) Indicate generally the relevance of the portion sought to be introduced in evidence.

(b) [Reserved]

(c) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to object to the admissibility of the official record or printed publication on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond by filing one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the supplemental evidence shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(d) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (c) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit served by the party under § 1.672(b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file notice of a deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in § 1.672(b).

[49 FR 48470, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.683 Testimony in another interference, proceeding, or action.

(a) A party may introduce into evidence, if otherwise admissible, testimony by affidavit or oral deposition and referenced exhibits from another interference, proceeding, or action involving the same parties by filing a copy of the affidavit or a copy of the transcript of the oral deposition and the referenced

exhibits. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to the party's case-in-chief, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not file any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the testimony and referenced exhibits relate to rebuttal, they shall be filed together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not file any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal. Pages of affidavits and deposition transcripts served under this paragraph and any new exhibits served therewith shall be assigned sequential numbers by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(b). The testimony shall be accompanied by a paper which specifies with particularity the exact testimony to be used and demonstrates its relevance.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection by an opponent to the paper or the admissibility of the testimony and referenced exhibits filed under this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of the testimony or referenced exhibits on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond with one or more supplemental affidavits, official records or printed publications, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with a supplemental affidavit shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of an affidavit or supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under § 1.672(b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file a notice of deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in § 1.672(b).

[49 FR 48470, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.684 [Reserved]

37 CFR 1.685 Errors and irregularities in depositions.

(a) An error in a notice for taking a deposition is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to quash the notice is filed as soon as the error is, or could have been, discovered.

(b) An objection to a qualification of an officer taking a deposition is waived unless:

(1) The objection is made on the record of the deposition before a witness begins to testify.

(2) If discovered after the deposition, a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the objection is, or could have been, discovered.

(c) An error or irregularity in the manner in which testimony is transcribed, a certified transcript is signed by a witness, or a certified transcript is prepared, signed, certified, sealed, endorsed, forwarded, filed, or otherwise handled by the officer is waived unless a motion (§ 1.635) to suppress the deposition is filed as soon as the error of irregularity is, or could have been, discovered.

(d) An objection to the deposition on any grounds, such as the competency of a witness, admissibility of evidence, manner of taking the deposition, the form of questions and answers, any oath or affirmation, or conduct of any party at the deposition, is waived unless an objection is made on the record at the deposition stating the specific ground of objection. Any objection which a party wishes considered by the Board at final hearing shall be included in a motion to suppress under § 1.656(h).

(e) Nothing in this section precludes taking notice of plain errors affecting substantial rights although they were not brought to the attention of an administrative patent judge or the Board.

[49 FR 48471, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; 50 FR 23124, May 31, 1985; amended 60 FR 14488-536, Mar. 17, 1995]

37 CFR 1.687 Additional discovery.

(a) A party is not entitled to discovery except as authorized in this subpart.

(b) Where appropriate, a party may obtain production of documents and things during cross-examination of an opponent's witness or during the testimony period of the party's case-in-rebuttal.

(c) Upon a motion (§ 1.635) brought by a party within the time set by an administrative patent judge under § 1.651 or thereafter as authorized by § 1.645 and upon a showing that the interest of justice so requires, an administrative patent judge may order additional discovery, as to matters under the control of a party within the scope of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, specifying the terms and conditions of such additional discovery. See § 1.647 concerning translations of documents in a foreign language.

(d) The parties may agree to discovery among themselves at any time. In the absence of an agreement, a motion for additional discovery shall not be filed except as authorized by this subpart.

[49 FR 48471, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; paras. (d) & (e) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.688 Use of discovery.

(a) If otherwise admissible, a party may introduce into evidence, an answer to a written request for an admission or an answer to a written interrogatory obtained by discovery under § 1.687 by filing a copy of the request for admission or the written interrogatory and the answer. If the answer relates to a party's case-in-chief, the answer shall be served together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to serve affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-chief. If the answer relates to the party's rebuttal, the answer shall be served together with any affidavits served by the party under § 1.672(b) for the its case-in-rebuttal or, if the party does not serve any affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal, no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to serve affidavits under § 1.672(b) for its case-in-rebuttal.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, any written objection to the admissibility of an answer shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file any objections under § 1.672(c) to affidavits submitted by the party under § 1.672(b). An opponent who fails to challenge the admissibility of an answer on a ground that could have been raised in a timely objection under this paragraph will not be entitled to move under § 1.656(h) to suppress the evidence on that ground. If an opponent timely files an objection, the party may respond with one or more supplemental affidavits, which must be filed together with any supplemental evidence filed by the party under § 1.672(c) or, if the party does not file any supplemental evidence under § 1.672(c), no later than the date set by an administrative patent judge for the party to file supplemental affidavits under § 1.672(c). No objection to the admissibility of the evidence contained in or submitted with a supplemental affidavit shall be made, except as provided by § 1.656(h). The pages of supplemental affidavits and the exhibits filed under this section shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(c). The



supplemental affidavits and exhibits shall be accompanied by an index of witnesses and an index of exhibits of the type required by § 1.672(b).

(c) Any request by an opponent to cross-examine on oral deposition the affiant of a supplemental affidavit submitted under paragraph (b) of this section shall be filed no later than the date set by the administrative patent judge for the opponent to file a request to cross-examine an affiant with respect to an affidavit filed by the party under § 1.672(b) or (c). If any opponent requests cross-examination of an affiant, the party shall file a notice of deposition for a reasonable location within the United States under § 1.673(e) for the purpose of cross-examination by any opponent. Any redirect and recross shall take place at the deposition. At any deposition for the purpose of cross-examination of a witness, the party shall not be entitled to rely on any document or thing not mentioned in one or more of the affidavits filed under this paragraph, except to the extent necessary to conduct proper redirect. The party who gives notice of a deposition shall be responsible for providing a translator if the witness does not testify in English, for obtaining a court reporter, and for filing a certified transcript of the deposition as required by § 1.676. Within 45 days of the close of the period for taking cross-examination, the party shall serve (but not file) a copy of each deposition transcript on each opponent together with copies of any additional documentary exhibits identified by the witness during the deposition. The pages of deposition transcripts and exhibits served under this paragraph shall be sequentially numbered by the party in the manner set forth in § 1.672(d). The deposition transcripts shall be accompanied by an index of the names of the witnesses, giving the number of the page where cross-examination, redirect and recross of each witness begins, and an index of exhibits of the type specified in § 1.672(b).

(d) A party may not rely upon any other matter obtained by discovery unless it is introduced into evidence under this subpart.

[49 FR 48471, Dec. 12, 1984, added effective Feb. 11, 1985; revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]

37 CFR 1.690 Arbitration of interferences.

(a) Parties to a patent interference may determine the interference or any aspect thereof by arbitration. Such arbitration shall be governed by the provisions of Title 9, United States Code. The parties must notify the Board in writing of their intention to arbitrate. An agreement to arbitrate must be in writing, specify the issues to be arbitrated, the name of the arbitrator or a date not more than thirty (30) days after the execution of the agreement for the selection of the arbitrator, and provide that the arbitrator's award shall be binding on the parties and that judgment thereon can be entered by the Board. A copy of the agreement must be filed within twenty (20) days after its execution. The parties shall be solely responsible for the selection of the arbitrator and the rules for conducting proceedings before the arbitrator. Issues not disposed of by the arbitration will be resolved in accordance with the procedures established in this subpart, as determined by the administrative patent judge.

(b) An arbitration proceeding under this section shall be conducted within such time as may be authorized on a case-by-case basis by an administrative patent judge.

(c) An arbitration award will be given no consideration unless it is binding on the parties, is in writing and states in a clear and definite manner the issue or issues arbitrated and the disposition of each issue. The award may include a statement of the grounds and reasoning in support thereof. Unless otherwise ordered by an administrative patent judge, the parties shall give notice to the Board of an arbitration award by filing within twenty (20) days from the date of the award a copy of the award signed by the arbitrator or arbitrators. When an award is timely filed, the award shall, as to the parties to the arbitration, be dispositive of the issue or issues to which it relates.

(d) An arbitration award shall not preclude the Office from determining patentability of any invention involved in the interference.

(b) Proof may be in the form of patents, printed publications, and affidavits.

[Added 52 FR 13838, Apr. 27, 1987; paras. (a)–(c) revised, 60 FR 14488, Mar. 17, 1995, effective Apr. 21, 1995]



SUBPART F—EXTENSION OF PATENT TERM

37 CFR 1.701 Extension of patent term due to prosecution delay.

(a) A patent, other than for designs, issued on an application filed on or after June 8, 1995, is entitled to extension of the patent term if the issuance of the patent was delayed due to:

- (1) interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a); and/or
- (2) the application being placed under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181; and/or
- (3) appellate review by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal court under 35 U.S.C. 141 or 145, if the patent was issued pursuant to a decision reversing an adverse determination of patentability and if the patent is not subject to a terminal disclaimer due to the issuance of another patent claiming subject matter that is not patentably distinct from that under appellate review.

(b) The term of a patent entitled to extension under paragraph (a) of this section shall be extended for the sum of the periods of delay calculated under paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(3), and (d) of this section, to the extent that these periods are not overlapping, up to a maximum of five years. The extension will run from the expiration date of the patent.

(c)

- (1) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(1) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:
 - (i) with respect to each interference in which the application was involved, the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date the interference was declared or redeclared to involve the application in the interference and ending on the date that the interference was terminated with respect to the application; and
 - (ii) the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date prosecution in the application was suspended by the Patent and Trademark Office due to interference proceedings under 35 U.S.C. 135(a) not involving the application and ending on the date of the termination of the suspension.
- (2) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(2) of this section for an application is the sum of the following periods, to the extent that the periods are not overlapping:
 - (i) the number of days, if any, the application was maintained in a sealed condition under 35 U.S.C. 181;
 - (ii) the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of mailing of an examiner's answer under § 1.193 in the application under secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed;
 - (iii) the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date applicant was notified that an interference would be declared but for the secrecy order and ending on the date the secrecy order and any renewal thereof was removed; and
 - (iv) the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date of notification under § 5.3(c) and ending on the date of mailing of the notice of allowance under § 1.311.
- (3) The period of delay under paragraph (a)(3) of this section is the sum of the number of days, if any, in the period beginning on the date on which an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences was filed under 35 U.S.C. 134 and ending on the date of a final decision in favor of the applicant by the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences or by a Federal Court in an appeal under 35 U.S.C. 145.

(d) The period of delay set forth in paragraph (c)(3) shall be reduced by:

- (1) any time during the period of appellate review that occurred before three years from the filing of the first national application for patent presented for examination; and
- (2) any time during the period of appellate review, as determined by the Commissioner, during which the applicant for patent did not act with due diligence. In determining the due diligence of an applicant, the Commissioner may examine the facts and

circumstances of the applicant's actions during the period of appellate review to determine whether the applicant exhibited that degree of timeliness as may reasonably be expected from, and which is ordinarily exercised by, a person during a period of appellate review.

[Added, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 1.710 Patents subject to extension of the patent term.

(a) A patent is eligible for extension of the patent term if the patent claims a product as defined in paragraph (b) of this section, either alone or in combination with other ingredients that read on a composition that received permission for commercial marketing or use, or a method of using such a product, or a method of manufacturing such a product, and meets all other conditions and requirements of this subpart.

(b) The term "product" referred to in paragraph (a) of this section means—

- (1) The active ingredient of a new human drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Public Health Service Act) including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or
- (2) The active ingredient of a new animal drug or veterinary biological product (as those terms are used in the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act) that is not primarily manufactured using recombinant DNA, recombinant RNA, hybridoma technology, or other processes including site specific genetic manipulation techniques, including any salt or ester of the active ingredient, as a single entity or in combination with another active ingredient; or
- (3) Any medical device, food additive, or color additive subject to regulation under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

[Added 52 FR 9394, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; amended, July 20, 1989, 54 FR 30375, effective Aug. 22, 1989]

37 CFR 1.720 Conditions for extension of patent term.

The term of a patent may be extended if:

- (a) the patent claims a product or a method of using or manufacturing a product as defined in § 1.710;
- (b) the term of the patent has never been previously extended except for any interim extension issued pursuant to § 1.760;
- (c) an application for extension is submitted in compliance with § 1.740;
- (d) the product has been subject to a regulatory review period as defined in 35 U.S.C. 156(g) before its commercial marketing or use;
- (e) the product has received permission for commercial marketing or use and—
 - (1) The permission for the commercial marketing or use of the product is the first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review occurred, or
 - (2) In the case of a patent other than one directed to subject matter within § 1.710(b)(2) claiming a method of manufacturing the product that primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the permission for the commercial marketing or use is the first received permission for the commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent,
 - (3) In the case of a patent claiming a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals and in food-producing animals, and was not extended on the basis of the regulatory review period for use in non-food-producing animals, the permission for the commercial marketing or use of the drug or product after the regulatory review period for use in food-producing animals is the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal.

(f) The application is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date the product first received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provisions of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred; or in the case of a patent claiming a method of manufacturing the product which primarily uses recombinant DNA technology in the manufacture of the product, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of a product manufactured under the process claimed in the patent; or in the case of a patent that claims a new animal drug or a veterinary biological product that is not covered by the claims in any other patent that has been extended, and said drug or product has received permission for the commercial marketing or use in non-food-producing animals, the application for extension is submitted within the sixty-day period beginning on the date of the first permitted commercial marketing or use of the drug or product for administration to a food-producing animal;

(g) The term of the patent has not expired before the submission of an application in compliance with § 1.741; and

(h) No other patent term has been extended for the same regulatory review period for the product.

[Added 52 FR 9395, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; paras. (e) & (f) amended, July 20, 1989, 54 FR 30375, effective Aug. 22, 1989]

37 CFR 1.730 Applicant for extension of patent term.

Any application for extension of a patent term must be submitted by the owner of record of the patent or its agent and must comply with the requirements of § 1.740.

[Added 52 FR 9395, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987]

37 CFR 1.740 Application for extension of patent term.

(a) An application for extension of patent term must be made in writing to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. A formal application for the extension of patent term shall include:

- (1) A complete identification of the approved product as by appropriate chemical and generic name, physical structure or characteristics;
- (2) A complete identification of the Federal statute including the applicable provision of law under which the regulatory review occurred;
- (3) An identification of the date on which the product received permission for commercial marketing or use under the provision of law under which the applicable regulatory review period occurred;
- (4) In the case of a drug product, an identification of each active ingredient in the product and as to each active ingredient, a statement that it has not been previously approved for commercial marketing or use under the Federal Food Drug and Cosmetic Act, the Public Health Service Act, or the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act, or a statement of when the active ingredient was approved for commercial marketing or use (either alone or in combination with other active ingredients) the use for which it was approved, and the provision of law under which it was approved.
- (5) A statement that the application is being submitted within the sixty day period permitted for submission pursuant to § 1.720(f) and an identification of the date of the last day on which the application could be submitted;
- (6) A complete identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought by the name of the inventor, the patent number, the date of issue, and the date of expiration;
- (7) A copy of the patent for which an extension is being sought, including the entire specification (including claims) and drawings;
- (8) A copy of any disclaimer, certificate of correction, receipt of maintenance fee payment, or reexamination certificate issued in the patent;
- (9) A statement that the patent claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product, and a showing which lists each applicable patent claim and demonstrates the manner in which each applicable patent claim reads on the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product;

- (10) A statement beginning on a new page, of the relevant dates and information pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 156(g) in order to enable the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture, as appropriate, to determine the applicable regulatory review period as follows:
 - (i) For a patent claiming a human drug, antibiotic, or human biological product, the effective date of the investigational new drug (IND) application and the IND number; the date on which a new drug application (NDA) or a Product License Application (PLA) was initially submitted and the NDA or PLA number and the date on which the NDA was approved or the Product License issued;
 - (ii) For a patent claiming a new animal drug, the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and any available substantiation of the date or the date of an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for such animal drug; the date on which a new animal drug application (NADA) was initially submitted and the NADA number; and the date on which the NADA was approved;
 - (iii) For a patent claiming a veterinary biological product, the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective; the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and the date the license issued;
 - (iv) For a patent claiming a food or color additive, the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and any available substantiation of that date; the date on which a petition for product approval under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the petition number; and the date on which the FDA published a Federal Register notice listing the additive for use;
 - (v) For a patent claiming a medical device, the effective date of the investigational device exemption (IDE) and the IDE number, if applicable, or the date on which the applicant began the first clinical investigation involving the device if no IDE was submitted and any available substantiation of that date; the date on which the application for product approval or notice of completion of a product development protocol under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was initially submitted and the number of the application; and the date on which the application was approved or the protocol declared to be completed.
- (11) A brief description beginning on a new page of the significant activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities;
- (12) A statement beginning on a new page that in the opinion of the applicant the patent is eligible for the extension and a statement as to the length of extension claimed, including how the length of extension was determined;
- (13) A statement that applicant acknowledges a duty to disclose to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture any information which is material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought (see § 1.765);
- (14) The prescribed fee for receiving and acting upon the application for extension (see § 1.20(j));
- (15) The name, address, and telephone number of the person to whom inquiries and correspondence relating to the application for patent term extension are to be directed;
- (16) A duplicate of the application papers, certified as such; and
- (17) An oath or declaration as set forth in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Any oath or declaration submitted in compliance with paragraph (a) of this section must be signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent, specifically identify the papers and the patent for which an extension is sought and aver that the person signing the oath or declaration:

- (1) Is the owner, an official of a corporate owner authorized to obligate the corporation, or a patent attorney or agent authorized to practice before the Patent and Trademark Office and who has general authority from the owner to act on behalf of the owner in patent matters.
- (2) Has reviewed and understands the contents of the application being submitted pursuant to this section;
- (3) Believes the patent is subject to extension pursuant to § 1.710;
- (4) Believes an extension of the length claimed is justified under 35 U.S.C. 156 and the applicable regulations; and
- (5) Believes the patent for which the extension is being sought meets the conditions for extension of the term of a patent as set forth in § 1.720.

(c) If any application for extension of patent term submitted pursuant to this section is held to be informal, applicant may seek to have that holding reviewed by filing a petition with the required fee, as necessary, pursuant to §§ 1.181, 1.182 or 1.183, as appropriate, within such time as may be set in the notice that the application has been held to be informal, or if no time is set, within one month of the date on which the application was held informal. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136.

[Added 52 FR 9395, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; para. (a) amended July 20, 1989, 54 FR 30375, effective Aug. 22, 1989; para. (a)(14), 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991]

37 CFR 1.741 Filing date of application.

(a) The filing date of an application for extension of patent term is the date on which a complete application is received in the Patent and Trademark Office or filed pursuant to the “Certificate of Mailing or Transmission” provisions of 37 CFR 1.8 or “Express Mail” provisions of 37 CFR 1.10.

A complete application shall include:

- (1) An identification of the approved product;
- (2) An identification of each Federal statute under which regulatory review occurred;
- (3) An identification of the patent for which an extension is being sought;
- (4) An identification of each claim of the patent which claims the approved product or a method of using or manufacturing the approved product;
- (5) Sufficient information to enable the Commissioner to determine under 35 U.S.C. 156 subsections (a) and (b) the eligibility of a patent for extension and the rights that will be derived from the extension and information to enable the Commissioner and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture to determine the length of the regulatory review period; and
- (6) A brief description of the activities undertaken by the marketing applicant during the applicable regulatory review period with respect to the approved product and the significant dates applicable to such activities.

(b) If any application submitted pursuant to this section is held to be incomplete, applicant may seek to have this holding reviewed under § 1.181.

[Added 52 FR 9396, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; para. (a) amended 54 FR 30375, July 20, 1989, effective Aug. 22, 1989; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]



37 CFR 1.750 Determination of eligibility for extension of patent term.

A determination as to whether a patent is eligible for extension may be made by the Commissioner solely on the basis of the representations contained in the application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740 or § 1.790. This determination may be delegated to appropriate Patent and Trademark Office officials and may be made at any time before the certificate of extension is issued. The Commissioner or other appropriate officials may require from applicant further information or make such independent inquiries as desired before a final determination is made on whether a patent is eligible for extension. In an application for extension filed in compliance with § 1.740, a notice will be mailed to applicant containing the determination as to the eligibility of the patent for extension and the period of time of the extension, if any. This notice shall constitute the final determination as to the eligibility and any period of extension of the patent. A single request for reconsideration of a final determination may be made if filed by the applicant within such time as may be set in the notice of final determination or, if no time is set, within one month from the date of the final determination. The time periods set forth herein are subject to the provisions of § 1.136.

[Added 52 FR 9396, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

37 CFR 1.760 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(e)(2).

An applicant who has filed a formal application for extension in compliance with § 1.740 may request one or more interim extensions for periods of up to one year each pending a final determination on the application pursuant to § 1.750. Any such request should be filed at least three months prior to the expiration date of the patent. The Commissioner may issue interim extensions, without a request by the applicant, for periods of up to one year each until a final determination is made. The patent owner or agent will be notified when an interim extension is granted and notice of the extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. The notice will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period for extension to which the applicant would be eligible.

[Added 52 FR 9396, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; heading revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

37 CFR 1.765 Duty of disclosure in patent term extension proceedings.

(a) A duty of candor and good faith toward the Patent and Trademark Office and the Secretary of Health and Human Services or the Secretary of Agriculture rests on the patent owner or its agent, on each attorney or agent who represents the patent owner and on every other individual who is substantively involved on behalf of the patent owner in a patent term extension proceeding. All such individuals who are aware, or become aware, of material information adverse to a determination of entitlement to the extension sought, which has not been previously made of record in the patent term extension proceeding must bring such information to the attention of the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, as soon as it is practical to do so after the individual becomes aware of the information. Information is material where there is a substantial likelihood that the Office or the Secretary would consider it important in determinations to be made in the patent term extension proceeding.

(b) Disclosures pursuant to this section must be accompanied by a copy of each written document which is being disclosed. The disclosure must be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, unless the disclosure is material to determinations to be made by both the Office and the Secretary, in which case duplicate copies, certified as such, must be filed in the Office and with the Secretary. Disclosures pursuant to this section may be made to the Office or the Secretary, as appropriate, through an attorney or agent having responsibility on behalf of the patent owner or its agent for the patent term extension proceeding or through a patent owner acting on his or her own behalf. Disclosure to such an attorney, agent or patent owner shall satisfy the duty of any other individual. Such an attorney, agent or patent owner has no duty to transmit information which is not material to the determination of entitlement to the extension sought.

(c) No patent will be determined eligible for extension and no extension will be issued if it is determined that fraud on the Office or the Secretary was practiced or attempted or the duty of disclosure was violated through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding. If it is established by clear and convincing evidence that any fraud was practiced or attempted on the Office or the Secretary in connection with the patent term extension proceeding or that there was any violation of the

duty of disclosure through bad faith or gross negligence in connection with the patent term extension proceeding, a final determination will be made pursuant to § 1.750 that the patent is not eligible for extension.

(d) The duty of disclosure pursuant to this section rests on the individuals identified in paragraph (a) of this section and no submission on behalf of third parties, in the form of protests or otherwise, will be considered by the Office. Any such submissions by third parties to the Office will be returned to the party making the submission, or otherwise disposed of, without consideration by the Office.

[Added 52 FR 9396, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987, para. (a) amended 54 FR 30375, July 20, 1989, effective Aug. 22, 1989; para. (a) revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

37 CFR 1.770 Express withdrawal of application for extension of patent term.

An application for extension of patent term may be expressly withdrawn before a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 by filing in the Office, in duplicate, a written declaration of withdrawal signed by the owner of record of the patent or its agent. An application may not be expressly withdrawn after the date permitted for response to the final determination on the application. An express withdrawal pursuant to this section is effective when acknowledged in writing by the Office. The filing of an express withdrawal pursuant to this section and its acceptance by the Office does not entitle applicant to a refund of the filing fee (§ 1.20(j)) or any portion thereof.

[Added 52 FR 9397, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; 56 FR 65142, Dec. 13, 1991, effective Dec. 16, 1991]

37 CFR 1.775 Calculation of patent term extension for a drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug, or human biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(1)(B), it is the sum of—

- (1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved human drug product and ending on the date an application was initially submitted for such product under those sections or under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act; and
- (2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved product under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.

(d) The term of the patent as extended for a human drug, antibiotic drug or human biological product will be determined by—

- (1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:
 - (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
 - (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;

- (iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;
- (2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
- (3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act, or subsection (b) of section 505 or section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;
- (4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
- (5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,
 - (i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
- (6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and
 - (i) If no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—
 - (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
 - (ii) If a request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (i) of section 505 or subsection (d) of section 507 of the Federal Food, Drug, or Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—
 - (A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
 - (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier filing date.

[Added 52 FR 9397, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987]

37 CFR 1.776 Calculation of patent term extension for a food additive or color additive.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a food additive or color additive is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a food additive or color additive will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a food additive or color additive will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(2)(B), it is the sum of—

- (1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a major health or environmental effects test on the additive was initiated and ending on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product; and
- (2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a petition was initially submitted with respect to the approved product under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act requesting the issuance of a regulation for use of the product, and ending on the date such

regulation became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, ending on the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, ending on the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted.

- (d) The term of the patent as extended for a food additive or color additive will be determined by
- (1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:
 - (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
 - (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;
 - (iii) The number of days equal to one-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;
 - (2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
 - (3) By adding 14 years to the date a regulation for use of the product became effective or, if objections were filed to such regulation, to the date such objections were resolved and commercial marketing was permitted or, if commercial marketing was permitted and later revoked pending further proceedings as a result of such objections, to the date such proceedings were finally resolved and commercial marketing was permitted;
 - (4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,
 - (i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and
 - (i) If no major health or environmental effects test was initiated and no petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted before September 24, 1984, by
 - (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
 - (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
 - (ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a petition for a regulation or application for registration was submitted by September 24, 1984, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by—
 - (A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
 - (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[Added 52 FR 9397, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987]

37 CFR 1.777 Calculation of patent term extension for a medical device.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a medical device is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this

section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date as set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a medical device will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a medical device will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(3)(B), it is the sum of

- (1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun and ending on the date an application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and
 - (2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted with respect to the device under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, and ending on the date such application was approved under such Act or the period beginning on the date a notice of completion of a product development protocol was initially submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Act and ending on the date the protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act.
- (d) The term of the patent as extended for a medical device will be determined by—
- (1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section:
 - (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section which were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
 - (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;
 - (iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1) (i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;
 - (2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
 - (3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 515 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or the date a product development protocol was declared completed under section 515(f)(6) of the Act;
 - (4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (5) If the original patent was issued after September 24, 1984,
 - (i) By adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (ii) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (6) If the original patent was issued before September 24, 1984, and
 - (i) If no clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or no product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984, by—
 - (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
 - (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
 - (ii) If a clinical investigation on humans involving the device was begun or a product development protocol was submitted under section 515(f)(5) of the Federal Food,

Drug, and Cosmetic Act before September 24, 1984 and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before September 24, 1984, by

- (A) Adding 2 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
- (B) By comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[Added 52 FR 9398, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987]

37 CFR 1.778 Calculation of patent term extension for an animal drug product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for an animal drug is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for an animal drug will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the drug as determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for an animal drug will be determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(4)(B), it is the sum of—

- (1) The number of days in the period beginning on the earlier of the date a major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated or the date an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act became effective for the approved animal drug and ending on the date an application was initially submitted for such animal drug under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; and
 - (2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the application was initially submitted for the approved animal drug under subsection (b) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and ending on the date such application was approved under such section.
- (d) The term of the patent as extended for an animal drug will be determined by—
- (1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Health and Human Services to be in the regulatory review period:
 - (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
 - (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Health and Human Services that applicant did not act with due diligence;
 - (iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;
 - (2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
 - (3) By adding 14 years to the date of approval of the application under section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act;
 - (4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by—
 - (i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
 - (6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and

- (i) If no major health or environmental effects test on the drug was initiated and no request was submitted for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act before November 16, 1988, by—
 - (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
- (ii) If a major health or environmental effects test was initiated or a request for an exemption under subsection (j) of section 512 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the application for commercial marketing or use of the animal drug was not approved before November 16, 1988, by—
 - (A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer, and
 - (B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[Added July 20, 1989, 54 FR 30375, effective Aug. 22, 1989]

37 CFR 1.779 Calculation of patent term extension for a veterinary biological product.

(a) If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent for a veterinary biological product is eligible for extension, the term shall be extended by the time as calculated in days in the manner indicated by this section. The patent term extension will run from the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer (§ 1.321).

(b) The term of the patent for a veterinary biological product will be extended by the length of the regulatory review period for the product as determined by the Secretary of Agriculture, reduced as appropriate pursuant to paragraphs (d)(1) through (d)(6) of this section.

(c) The length of the regulatory review period for a veterinary biological product will be determined by the Secretary of Agriculture. Under 35 U.S.C. 156(g)(5)(B), it is the sum of—

- (1) The number of days in the period beginning on the date the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act became effective and ending on the date an application for a license was submitted under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act; and
 - (2) The number of days in the period beginning on the date an application for a license was initially submitted for approval under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act and ending on the date such license was issued.
- (d) The term of the patent as extended for a veterinary biological product will be determined by—
- (1) Subtracting from the number of days determined by the Secretary of Agriculture to be in the regulatory review period:
 - (i) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section that were on and before the date on which the patent issued;
 - (ii) The number of days in the periods of paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section during which it is determined under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(2)(B) by the Secretary of Agriculture that applicant did not act with due diligence;
 - (iii) One-half the number of days remaining in the period defined by paragraph (c)(1) of this section after that period is reduced in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (ii) of this section; half days will be ignored for purposes of subtraction;
 - (2) By adding the number of days determined in paragraph (d)(1) of this section to the original term of the patent as shortened by any terminal disclaimer;
 - (3) By adding 14 years to the date of the issuance of a license under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act;
 - (4) By comparing the dates for the ends of the periods obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(2) and (d)(3) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;

- (5) If the original patent was issued after November 16, 1988, by—
 - (i) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or any earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (ii) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(5)(i) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date;
- (6) If the original patent was issued before November 16, 1988, and
 - (i) If no request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, by—
 - (A) Adding 5 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(i)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date; or
 - (ii) If a request for the authority to prepare an experimental biological product under the Virus-Serum-Toxin Act was submitted before November 16, 1988, and the commercial marketing or use of the product was not approved before November 16, 1988, by—
 - (A) Adding 3 years to the original expiration date of the patent or earlier date set by terminal disclaimer; and
 - (B) Comparing the dates obtained pursuant to paragraphs (d)(4) and (d)(6)(ii)(A) of this section with each other and selecting the earlier date.

[Added 54 FR 30375, July 20, 1989, effective Aug. 22, 1989]

37 CFR 1.780 Certificate of extension of patent term.

If a determination is made pursuant to § 1.750 that a patent is eligible for extension and that the term of the patent is to be extended, a certificate of extension, under seal, or certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) will be issued to the applicant for the extension of the patent term. Such certificate will be recorded in the official file of the patent and will be considered as part of the original patent. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of extension will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office. Notification of the issuance of the certificate of interim extension under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5), including the identity of the product currently under regulatory review, will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office and in the Federal Register. No certificate of extension will be issued if the term of the patent cannot be extended, even though the patent is otherwise determined to be eligible for extension. In such situations the final determination made pursuant to § 1.750 will indicate that no certificate will issue.

[Added 52 FR 9399, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; para. (as revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995)]

37 CFR 1.785 Multiple applications for extension of term of the same patent or of different patents for the same regulatory review period for a product.

(a) Only one patent may be extended for a regulatory review period for any product § 1.720(h)). If more than one application for extension of the same patent is filed, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued based upon the first filed application for extension.

(b) If more than one application for extension is filed by a single applicant which seeks the extension of the term of two or more patents based upon the same regulatory review period, and the patents are otherwise eligible for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, in the absence of an election by the applicant, the certificate of extension of patent term, if appropriate, will be issued upon the application for extension of the patent term having the earliest date of issuance of those patents for which extension is sought.

(c) If an application for extension is filed which seeks the extension of the term of a patent based upon the same regulatory review period as that relied upon in one or more applications for extension pursuant to the requirements of this subpart, the certificate of extension of patent term will be issued on the application only if the patent owner or its agent is the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period.



(d) An application for extension shall be considered complete and formal regardless of whether it contains the identification of the holder of the regulatory approval granted with respect to the regulatory review period. When an application contains such information, or is amended to contain such information, it will be considered in determining whether an application is eligible for an extension under this section. A request may be made of any applicant to supply such information within a non-extendable period of not less than one (1) month whenever multiple applications for extension of more than one patent are received and rely upon the same regulatory review period. Failure to provide such information within the period for response set shall be regarded as conclusively establishing that the applicant is not the holder of the regulatory approval.

(e) Determinations made under this section shall be included in the notice of final determination of eligibility for extension of the patent term pursuant to § 1.750 and shall be regarded as part of that determination.

[Added 52 FR 9399, Mar. 24, 1987, effective May 26, 1987; para. (b) amended 54 FR 30375, July 20, 1989, effective Aug. 22, 1989; revised, 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

37 CFR 1.790 Interim extension of patent term under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5)

(a) An owner of record of a patent or its agent who reasonably expects that the applicable regulatory review period described in paragraph (1)(B)(ii), (2)(B)(ii), (3)(B)(ii), (4)(B)(ii), or (5)(B)(ii) of subsection (g) that began for a product that is the subject of such patent may extend beyond the expiration of the patent term in effect may submit one or more applications for interim extensions for periods of up to one year each. The initial application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 6 months and ending 15 days before the patent term is due to expire. Each subsequent application for interim extension must be filed during the period beginning 60 days before and ending 30 days before the expiration of the preceding interim extension. In no event will the interim extensions granted under this section be longer than the maximum period of extension to which the applicant would be entitled under 35 U.S.C. 156(c).

(b) A complete application for interim extension under this section shall include all of the information required for a formal application under § 1.740 and a complete application under § 1.741. Sections (a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(4), and (a)(6) – (a)(17) of § 1.740 and § 1.741 shall be read in the context of a product currently undergoing regulatory review. Sections (a)(3) and (a)(5) of § 1.740 are not applicable to an application for interim extension under this section.

(c) The content of each subsequent interim extension application may be limited to a request for a subsequent interim extension along with a statement that the regulatory review period has not been completed along with any materials or information required under § 1.740 and § 1.741 that are not present in the preceding interim extension application.

[Added 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

37 CFR 1.791 Termination of interim extension granted prior to regulatory approval of a product for commercial marketing or use.

Any interim extension granted under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(5) terminates at the end of the 60-day period beginning on the date on which the product involved receives permission for commercial marketing or use. If within that 60-day period the patent owner or its agent files an application for extension under § 1.740 and § 1.741 including any additional information required under 35 U.S.C. 156(d)(1) not contained in the application for interim extension, the patent shall be further extended in accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 156.

[Added 60 FR 25615, May 12, 1995, effective July 11, 1995]

SUBPART G—BIOTECHNOLOGY INVENTION DISCLOSURES

DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL

37 CFR 1.801 Biological material.

For the purposes of these regulations pertaining to the deposit of biological material for purposes of patents for inventions under 35 U.S.C. 101, the term biological material shall include material that is capable



of self-replication either directly or indirectly. Representative examples include bacteria, fungi including yeast, algae, protozoa, eukaryotic cells, cell lines, hybridomas, plasmids, viruses, plant tissue cells, lichens and seeds. Viruses, vectors, cell organelles and other non-living material existing in and reproducible from a living cell may be deposited by deposit of the host cell capable of reproducing the non-living material.

[Added 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.802 Need or opportunity to make a deposit.

(a) Where an invention is, or relies on, a biological material, the disclosure may include reference to a deposit of such biological material.

(b) Biological material need not be deposited unless access to such material is necessary for the satisfaction of the statutory requirements for patentability under 35 U.S.C. 112. If a deposit is necessary, it shall be acceptable if made in accordance with these regulations. Biological material need not be deposited, inter alia, if it is known and readily available to the public or can be made or isolated without undue experimentation. Once deposited in a depository complying with these regulations, a biological material will be considered to be readily available even though some requirement of law or regulation of the United States or of the country in which the depository institution is located permits access to the material only under conditions imposed for safety, public health or similar reasons.

(c) The reference to a biological material in a specification disclosure or the actual deposit of such material by an applicant or patent owner does not create any presumption that such material is necessary to satisfy 35 U.S.C. 112 or that deposit in accordance with these regulations is or was required.

[Added 54 FR 34880, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.803 Acceptable depository.

(a) A deposit shall be recognized for the purposes of these regulations if made in;

(1) any International Depository Authority (IDA) as established under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Micro-organisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure, or

(2) any other depository recognized to be suitable by the Office. Suitability will be determined by the Commissioner on the basis of the administrative and technical competence, and agreement of the depository to comply with the terms and conditions applicable to deposits for patent purposes. The Commissioner may seek the advice of impartial consultants on the suitability of a depository. The depository must:

(i) Have a continuous existence;

(ii) Exist independent of the control of the depositor;

(iii) Possess the staff and facilities sufficient to examine the viability of a deposit and store the deposit in a manner which ensures that it is kept viable and uncontaminated;

(iv) Provide for sufficient safety measures to minimize the risk of losing biological material deposited with it;

(v) Be impartial and objective;

(vi) Furnish samples of the deposited material in an expeditious and proper manner; and

(vii) Promptly notify depositors of its inability to furnish samples, and the reasons why.

(b) A depository seeking status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section must direct a communication to the Commissioner which shall:

(1) Indicate the name and address of the depository to which the communication relates;

(2) Contain detailed information as to the capacity of the depository to comply with the requirements of paragraph (a)(2) of this section, including information on its legal status, scientific standing, staff, and facilities;

(3) Indicate that the depository intends to be available, for the purposes of deposit, to any depositor under these same conditions;

- (4) Where the depository intends to accept for deposit only certain kinds of biological material, specify such kinds;
- (5) Indicate the amount of any fees that the depository will, upon acquiring the status of suitable depository under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, charge for storage, viability statements and furnishings of samples of the deposit.

(c) A depository having status under paragraph (a)(2) of this section limited to certain kinds of biological material may extend such status to additional kinds of biological material by directing a communication to the Commissioner in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section. If a previous communication under paragraph (b) of this section is of record, items in common with the previous communication may be incorporated by reference.

(d) Once a depository is recognized to be suitable by the Commissioner or has defaulted or discontinued its performance under this section, notice thereof will be published in the Official Gazette of the Patent and Trademark Office.

[Added 54 FR 34881, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.804 Time of making an original deposit.

(a) Whenever a biological material is specifically identified in an application for patent as filed, an original deposit thereof may be made at any time before filing the application for patent or, subject to § 1.809, during pendency of the application for patent.

(b) When the original deposit is made after the effective filing date of an application for patent, the applicant shall promptly submit a verified statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, and shall state, that the biological material which is deposited is a biological material specifically identified in the application as filed, except if the person is an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office, in which case the statement need not be verified.

[Added 54 FR 34881, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.805 Replacement or supplement of deposit.

(a) A depositor, after receiving notice during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, shall notify the Office in writing, in each application for patent or patent affected. In such a case, or where the Office otherwise learns, during the pendency of an application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding, that the depository possessing a deposit either cannot furnish samples thereof or can furnish samples thereof but the deposit has become contaminated or has lost its capability to function as described in the specification, the need for making a replacement or supplemental deposit will be governed by the same considerations governing the need for making an original deposit under the provisions set forth in § 1.802(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent shall not be accepted unless it meets the requirements for making an original deposit under these regulations, including the requirement set forth under § 1.804(b). A replacement or supplemental deposit made in connection with a patent, whether or not made during the pendency of an application for reissue patent or a reexamination proceeding or both, shall not be accepted unless a certificate of correction under § 1.323 is requested by the patent owner which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section.

(b) A request for certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the certificate identifies:

- (1) The accession number for the replacement or supplemental deposit;
- (2) The date of the deposit; and
- (3) The name and address of the depository.

(c) A request for a certificate of correction under this section shall not be granted unless the request is made promptly after the replacement or supplemental deposit has been made and:

- (1) Includes a verified statement of the reason for making the replacement or supplemental deposit;

- (2) Includes a verified statement from a person in a position to corroborate the fact, and shall state, that the replacement or supplemental deposit is of a biological material which is identical to that originally deposited;
- (3) Includes a verified showing that the patent owner acted diligently —
 - (i) In the case of a replacement deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that samples could no longer be furnished from an earlier deposit, or
 - (ii) In the case of a supplemental deposit, in making the deposit after receiving notice that the earlier deposit had become contaminated or had lost its capability to function as described in the specification;
- (4) Includes a verified statement that the term of the replacement or supplemental deposit expires no earlier than the term of the deposit being replaced or supplemented; and
- (5) Otherwise establishes compliance with these regulations, except that if the person making one or more of the required statements or showing is an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office, that statement or showing need not be verified.

(d) A depositor's failure to replace a deposit, or in the case of a patent, to diligently replace a deposit and promptly thereafter request a certificate of correction which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, after being notified that the depository possessing the deposit cannot furnish samples thereof, shall cause the application or patent involved to be treated in any Office proceeding as if no deposit were made.

(e) In the event a deposit is replaced according to these regulations, the Office will apply a rebuttable presumption of identity between the original and the replacement deposit where a patent making reference to the deposit is relied upon during any Office proceeding.

(f) A replacement or supplemental deposit made during the pendency of an application for patent may be made for any reason.

(g) In no case is a replacement or supplemental deposit of a biological material necessary where the biological material, in accordance with § 1.802(b), need not be deposited.

(h) No replacement deposit of a biological material is necessary where a depository can furnish samples thereof but the depository for national security, health or environmental safety reasons is unable to provide samples to requesters outside of the jurisdiction where the depository is located.

(i) The Office will not recognize in any Office proceeding a replacement deposit of a biological material made by a patent owner where the depository could furnish samples of the deposit being replaced.

[Added 54 FR 34881, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.806 Term of deposit.

A deposit made before or during pendency of an application for patent shall be made for a term of at least thirty (30) years and at least five (5) years after the most recent request for the furnishing of a sample of the deposit was received by the depository. In any case, samples must be stored under agreements that would make them available beyond the enforceable life of the patent for which the deposit was made.

[Added 54 FR 34882, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.807 Viability of deposit.

(a) A deposit of biological material that is capable of self-replication either directly or indirectly must be viable at the time of deposit and during the term of deposit. Viability may be tested by the depository. The test must conclude only that the deposited material is capable of reproduction. No evidence is necessarily required regarding the ability of the deposited material to perform any function described in the patent application.

(b) A viability statement for each deposit of a biological material defined in paragraph (a) of this section not made under the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purposes of Patent Procedure must be filed in the application and must contain:

- (1) The name and address of the depository;
- (2) The date of deposit;
- (3) The name and address of the depositor;



- (4) The identity of the deposit and the accession number given by the depository;
- (5) The date of the viability test;
- (6) The procedures used to obtain a sample if the test is not done by the depository; and
- (7) A statement that the deposit is capable of reproduction.

(c) If a viability test indicates that the deposit is not viable upon receipt, or the examiner cannot, for scientific or other valid reasons, accept the statement of viability received from the applicant, the examiner shall proceed as if no deposit has been made. The examiner will accept the conclusion set forth in a viability statement issued by a depository recognized under § 1.803(a).

[Added 54 FR 34882, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.808 Furnishing of samples.

- (a) A deposit must be made under conditions that assure that:
- (1) Access to the deposit will be available during pendency of the patent application making reference to the deposit to one determined by the Commissioner to be entitled thereto under § 1.14 and 35 U.S.C. 122, and
 - (2) Subject to paragraph (b) of this section, all restrictions imposed by the depositor on the availability to the public of the deposited material will be irrevocably removed upon the granting of the patent.

(b) The depositor may contract with the depository to require that samples of a deposited biological material shall be furnished only if a request for a sample, during the term of the patent:

- (1) Is in writing or other tangible form and dated;
- (2) Contains the name and address of the requesting party and the accession number of the deposit; and
- (3) Is communicated in writing by the depository to the depositor along with the date on which the sample was furnished and the name and address of the party to whom the sample was furnished.

(c) Upon request made to the Office, the Office will certify whether a deposit has been stated to have been made under conditions which make it available to the public as of the issue date of the patent grant provided the request contains:

- (1) The name and address of the depository;
- (2) The accession number given to the deposit;
- (3) The patent number and issue date of the patent referring to the deposit; and
- (4) The name and address of the requesting party.

[Added 54 FR 34882, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.809 Examination procedures.

(a) The examiner shall determine pursuant to § 1.104 in each application for patent, application for reissue patent or reexamination proceeding if a deposit is needed, and if needed, if a deposit actually made is acceptable for patent purposes. If a deposit is needed and has not been made or replaced or supplemented in accordance with these regulations, the examiner, where appropriate, shall reject the affected claims under the appropriate provision of 35 U.S.C. 112, explaining why a deposit is needed and/or why a deposit actually made cannot be accepted.

(b) The applicant for patent or patent owner shall respond to a rejection under paragraph (a) of this section by —

- (1) In the case of an applicant for patent, making an acceptable original or replacement or supplemental deposit or assuring the Office in writing that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before the date of payment of the issue fee, or, in the case of a patent owner, requesting a certificate of correction of the patent which meets the terms of paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 1.805, or
- (2) Arguing why a deposit is not needed under the circumstances of the application or patent considered and/or why a deposit actually made should be accepted. Other replies to the examiner's action shall be considered nonresponsive. The rejection will be repeated until



either paragraph (b)(1) of this section is satisfied or the examiner is convinced that a deposit is not needed.

(c) If an application for patent is otherwise in condition for allowance except for a needed deposit and the Office has received a written assurance that an acceptable deposit will be made on or before payment of the issue fee, the Office will mail to the applicant a Notice of Allowance and Issue Fee Due together with a requirement that the needed deposit be made within three months. The period for satisfying this requirement is extendable under § 1.136. Failure to make the needed deposit in accordance with this requirement will result in abandonment of the application for failure to prosecute.

(d) For each deposit made pursuant to these regulations, the specification shall contain:

- (1) The accession number for the deposit;
- (2) The date of the deposit;
- (3) A description of the deposited biological material sufficient to specifically identify it and to permit examination; and
- (4) The name and address of the depository.

[Added 54 FR 34882, Aug. 22, 1989, effective Jan. 1, 1990]

APPLICATION DISCLOSURES CONTAINING NUCLEOTIDE AND/OR AMINO ACID SEQUENCES

37 CFR 1.821 Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosures in patent applications.

(a) Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as used in §§ 1.821 through 1.825 is interpreted to mean an unbranched sequence of four or more amino acids or an unbranched sequence of ten or more nucleotides. Branched sequences are specifically excluded from this definition. Nucleotides and amino acids are further defined as follows:

- (1) Nucleotides are intended to embrace only those nucleotides that can be represented using the symbols set forth in § 1.822(b)(1). Modifications, e.g., methylated bases, may be described as set forth in § 1.822(b), but shall not be shown explicitly in the nucleotide sequence.
- (2) Amino acids are those L-amino acids commonly found in naturally occurring proteins and are listed in § 1.822(b)(2). Those amino acid sequences containing D-amino acids are not intended to be embraced by this definition. Any amino acid sequence that contains post-translationally modified amino acids may be described as the amino acid sequence that is initially translated using the symbols shown in § 1.822(b)(2) with the modified positions; e.g., hydroxylations or glycosylations, being described as set forth in § 1.822(b), but these modifications shall not be shown explicitly in the amino acid sequence. Any peptide or protein that can be expressed as a sequence using the symbols in § 1.822(b)(2) in conjunction with a description elsewhere in the "Sequence Listing" to describe, for example, modified linkages, cross links and end caps, non-peptidyl bonds, etc., is embraced by this definition.

(b) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, in accordance with the definition in paragraph (a) of this section, shall, with regard to the manner in which the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences are presented and described, conform exclusively to the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825.

(c) Patent applications which contain disclosures of nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences must contain, as a separate part of the disclosure on paper copy, hereinafter referred to as the "Sequence Listing," a disclosure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences and associated information using the symbols and format in accordance with the requirements of §§ 1.822 and 1.823. Each sequence disclosed must appear separately in the "Sequence Listing." Each sequence set forth in the "Sequence Listing" shall be assigned a separate identifier written as SEQ ID NO:1, SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, etc.

(d) Where the description or claims of a patent application discuss a sequence listing that is set forth in the "Sequence Listing" in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section, reference must be made to the sequence by use of the assigned identifier, in the text of the description or claims, even if the sequence is also embedded in the text of the description or claims of the patent application.



(e) A copy of the "Sequence Listing" referred to in paragraph (c) of this section must also be submitted in computer readable form in accordance with the requirements of § 1.824. The computer readable form is a copy of the "Sequence Listing" and will not necessarily be retained as part of the patent application file. If the computer readable form of a new application is to be identical with the computer readable form of another application of the applicant on file in the Office, reference may be made to the other application and computer readable form in lieu of filing a duplicate computer readable form in the new application. The new application shall be accompanied by a letter making such reference to the other application and computer readable form, both of which shall be completely identified.

(f) In addition to the paper copy required by paragraph (c) of this section and the computer readable form required by paragraph (e) of this section, a statement that the content of the paper and computer readable copies are the same must be submitted with the computer readable form. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(g) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111 or at the time of entering the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371, applicant has one month from the date of a notice which will be sent requiring compliance with the requirements in order to prevent abandonment of the application. Any submission in response to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission includes no new matter. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(h) If any of the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (f) of this section are not satisfied at the time of filing, in the United States Receiving Office, an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT) applicant has one month from the date of a notice which will be sent requiring compliance with the requirements, or such other time as may be set by the Commissioner, in which to comply. Any submission in response to a requirement under this paragraph must be accompanied by a statement that the submission does not include new matter or go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office. If applicant fails to timely provide the required computer readable form, the United States International Searching Authority shall search only to the extent that a meaningful search can be performed.

(i) Neither the presence nor the absence of information which is not required under §§ 1.821 through 1.825, in an application shall create any presumption that such information is necessary to satisfy one or more of the requirements of 35 U.S.C. 112. Further, the grant of a patent on an application that is subject to the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825 shall constitute a conclusive presumption that said patent complies with the requirements of §§ 1.821 through 1.825.

(j) Envelopes containing only application papers, computer readable forms and fees filed under this section should be marked "Box SEQUENCE."

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990; para. (h) amended, 58 FR 9335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993]

37 CFR 1.822 Symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data.

(a) The symbols and format to be used for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence data shall conform to the requirements of paragraphs (b) through (p) of this section.

(b) The code for representing the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence characters shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in paragraphs (b)(1) and (b)(2) of this section. No code other than that specified in this section shall be used in nucleotide and amino acid sequences. A modified base or amino acid may be presented in a given sequence as the corresponding unmodified base or amino acid if the modified base or amino acid is one of those listed in paragraphs (p)(1) or (p)(2) of this section and the modification is also set forth elsewhere in the Sequence Listing (for example, FEATURES § 1.823(b)(2)(ix)). Otherwise, all bases or amino acids not appearing in paragraphs (b)(1) or (b)(2) of this section shall be listed in a given sequence as "N" or "Xaa," respectively, with further information, as appropriate, given elsewhere in the Sequence Listing.

(1) Base codes:

Symbol	Meaning
A	A; adenine



Symbol	Meaning
C	C; cytosine
G	G; guanine
T	T; thymine
U	U; uracil
M	A or C
R	A or G
W	A or T/U
S	C or G
Y	C or T/U
K	G or T/U
V	A or C or G; not T/U
H	A or C or T/U; not G
D	A or G or T/U; not C
B	C or G or T/U; not A
N	(A or C or G or T/U) or (unknown or other)

Abbreviation	Amino acid name
Ala	Alanine
Arg	Arginine
Asn	Asparagine
Asp	Aspartic Acid
Asx	Aspartic Acid or Asparagine
Cys	Cysteine
Glu	Glutamic Acid
Gln	Glutamine
Glx	Glutamine or Glutamic Acid
Gly	Glycine
His	Histidine
Ile	Isoleucine
Leu	Leucine
Lys	Lysine
Met	Methionine
Phe	Phenylalanine
Pro	Proline
Ser	Serine
Thr	Threonine
Trp	Tryptophan
Tyr	Tyrosine
Val	Valine
Xaa	Unknown or other

(d) The amino acids corresponding to the codons in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be typed immediately below the corresponding codons. Where a codon spans an intron, the amino acid symbol shall be typed below the portion of the codon containing two nucleotides.

(e) The amino acids in a protein or peptide sequence shall be listed using the three-letter abbreviation with the first letter as an upper case character, as in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

- (f) The bases in a nucleotide sequence (including introns) shall be listed in groups of 10 bases except in the coding parts of a sequence. Leftover bases, fewer than 10 in number, at the end of non-coding parts of a sequence shall be grouped together and separated from adjacent groups of 10 or 3 bases by a space.
- (g) The bases in the coding parts of a nucleotide sequence shall be listed as triplets (codons).
- (h) A protein or peptide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 amino acids per line, with a space provided between each amino acid.
- (i) A nucleotide sequence shall be listed with a maximum of 16 codons or 60 bases per line, with a space provided between each codon or group of 10 bases.
- (j) A nucleotide sequence shall be presented, only by a single strand, in the 5' to 3' direction, from left to right.
- (k) An amino acid sequence shall be presented in the amino to carboxy direction, from left to right, and the amino and carboxy groups shall not be presented in the sequence.
- (l) The enumeration of nucleotide bases shall start at the first base of the sequence with number 1. The enumeration shall be continuous through the whole sequence in the direction 5' to 3'. The enumeration shall be marked in the right margin, next to the line containing the one-letter codes for the bases, and giving the number of the last base of that line.
- (m) The enumeration of amino acids may start at the first amino acid of the first mature protein, with number 1. The amino acids preceding the mature protein, e.g., pre-sequences, pro-sequences, pre-pro-sequences and signal sequences, when presented, shall have negative numbers, counting backwards starting with the amino acid next to number 1. Otherwise, the enumeration of amino acids shall start at the first amino acid at the amino terminal as number 1. It shall be marked below the sequence every 5 amino acids.
- (n) For those nucleotide sequences that are circular in configuration, the enumeration method set forth in paragraph (l) of this section remains applicable with the exception that the designation of the first base of the nucleotide sequence may be made at the option of the applicant. The enumeration method for amino acid sequences that is set forth in paragraph (m) of this section remains applicable for amino acid sequences that are circular in configuration.
- (o) A sequence with a gap or gaps shall be presented as a plurality of separate sequences, with separate sequence identifiers, with the number of separate sequences being equal in number to the number of continuous strings of sequence data. A sequence that is made up of one or more non-contiguous segments of a larger sequence or segments from different sequences shall be presented as a separate sequence.
- (p) The code for representing modified nucleotide bases and modified and unusual amino acids shall conform to the code set forth in the tables in paragraphs (p)(1) and (p)(2) of this section. The modified base controlled vocabulary in paragraph (p)(1) of this section and the modified and unusual amino acids in paragraph (p)(2) of this section shall not be used in the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences; but may be used in the description and/or the "Sequence Listing" corresponding to, but not including, the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence.

(1) Modified base controlled vocabulary:

Abbreviation	Modified base description
ac4c	4-acetylcytidine
chm5u	5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uridine
cm	2'-O-methylcytidine
cmnm5s2u	5-carboxymethylaminome thyl-2-thiouridine
cmnm5u	5 carboxymethylaminomethyluridine
d	dihydrouridine
fm	2'-O-methylpseudouridine
gal	q beta, D-galactosylqueosine
gm	2'-O-methylguanosine
l	inosine
i6a	N6-isopentenyladenosine

Abbreviation	Modified base description
m1a	1-methyladenosine
m1f	1-methylpseudouridine
m1g	1-methylguanosine
m1l	1-methylinosine
m22g	2,2-dimethylguanosine
m2a	2-methyladenosine
m2g	2-methylguanosine
m3c	3-methylcytidine
m5c	5-methylcytidine
m6a	N6-methyladenosine
m7g	7-methylguanosine
mam5u	5-methylaminomethyluridine
mam5s2u	5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouridine
manq	beta, D-mannosylqueosine
mcm5s2u	5-methoxycarbonylmethyluridine
mcm5u	5-methoxycarbonylmethyluridine
mo5u	5-methoxyuridine
ms2i6a	2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenosine
ms2t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosyl-2-methylthiopurine-6-yl)carbamoyl)threonine
mt6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofurano-sylpurine-6-yl)N-methyl-carbamoyl)threonine
mv	uridine-5-oxyaceticacid-methylester
o5u	uridine-5-oxyacetic acid (v)
osyw	wybutoxosine
p	pseudouridine
q	queosine
s2c	2-thiocytidine
s2t	5-methyl-2-thiouridine
s2u	2-thiouridine
s4u	4-thiouridine
t	5-methyluridine
t6a	N-((9-beta-D-ribofuranosylpurine-6-yl)carbamoyl)threonine
tm	2'-O-methyl-5-methyluridine
um	2'-O-methyluridine
yw	wybutosine
x	3-(3-amino-3-carboxypropyl)uridine, (acp3)u

Abbreviation	Modified and unusual amino acid
Aad	2-Aminoadipic acid
bAad	3-Aminoadipic acid
bAla	beta-Alanine, beta-Aminopropionic acid
Abu	2-Aminobutyric acid
4Abu	4-Aminobutyric acid, piperidinic acid
Acp	6-Aminocaproic acid
Ahe	2-Aminoheptanoic acid
Aib	2-Aminoisobutyric acid

Abbreviation	Modified and unusual amino acid
bAib	3-Aminoisobutyric acid
Apm	2-Aminopimelic acid
Dbu	2,4-Diaminobutyric acid
Des	Desmosine
Dpm	2,2'-Diaminopimelic acid
Dpr	2,3-Diaminopropionic acid
EtGly	N-Ethylglycine
EtAsn	N-Ethylasparagine
Hyl	Hydroxylysine
aHyl	allo-Hydroxylysine
3Hyp	3-Hydroxyproline
4Hyp	4-Hydroxyproline
Ide	Isodesmosine
alle	allo-Isoleucine
MeGly	N-Methylglycine, sarcosine
Melle	N-Methylisoleucine
MeLys	N-Methylvaline
Nva	Norvaline
Nle	Norleucine
Orn	Ornithine

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.823 Requirements for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences as part of the application papers.

(a) The "Sequence Listing," required by § 1.821(c), setting forth the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequences, and associated information in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, must begin on a new page and be titled "Sequence Listing" and appear immediately prior to the claims. Each page of the "Sequence Listing" shall contain no more than 66 lines and each line shall contain no more than 72 characters. A fixed-width font shall be used exclusively throughout the "Sequence Listing."

(b) The "Sequence Listing" shall, except as otherwise indicated, include, in addition to and immediately preceding the actual nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence, the following items of information. The order and presentation of the items of information in the "Sequence Listing" shall conform to the arrangement given below, except that parenthetical explanatory information following the headings (identifiers) is to be omitted. Each item of information shall begin on a new line, enumerated with the number/numeral/letter in parentheses as shown below, with the heading (identifier) in upper case characters, followed by a colon, and then followed by the information provided. Except as allowed below, no item of information shall occupy more than one line. Those items of information that are applicable for all sequences shall only be set forth once in the "Sequence Listing." The submission of those items of information designated with an "M" is mandatory. The submission of those items of information designated with an "R" is recommended, but not required. The submission of those items of information designated with an "O" is optional. Those items designated with "rep" may have multiple responses and, as such, the item may be repeated in the "Sequence Listing."

- (1) GENERAL INFORMATION (Application, diskette/tape and publication information):
 - (i) APPLICANT (maximum of first ten named applicants; specify one name per line: SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS – M/rep):
 - (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION (title of the invention, as elsewhere in application, four lines maximum – M)
 - (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES (number of sequences in the "Sequence Listing" – M):



- (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (M):
 - (A) ADDRESSEE (name of applicant, firm, company or institution, as may be appropriate):
 - (B) STREET (correspondence street address, as elsewhere in application, four lines maximum):
 - (C) CITY (correspondence city address, as elsewhere in application):
 - (D) STATE (correspondence state, as elsewhere in application):
 - (E) COUNTRY (correspondence country, as elsewhere in application):
 - (F) ZIP (correspondence zip or postal code, as elsewhere in application):
- (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM (M):
 - (A) MEDIUM TYPE (type of diskette/tape submitted):
 - (B) COMPUTER (type of computer used with diskette/tape submitted):
 - (C) OPERATING SYSTEM (type of operating system used):
 - (D) SOFTWARE (type of software used to create computer readable form):
- (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA (M, if available):
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER (U.S. application number, including a series code, a slash and a serial number, or U.S. PCT application number, including the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the U.S. as the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number, if available):
 - (B) FILING DATE (U.S. or PCT application filing date, if available; specify as dd-*MMM*-*yyyy*):
 - (C) CLASSIFICATION (IPC/US classification or F-term designation, where F-terms have been developed, if assigned, specify each designation, left justified, within an eighteen position alpha numeric field – rep, to a maximum of ten classification designations):
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA (prior domestic, foreign priority or international application data, if applicable – M/rep):
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER (application number; specify as two letter country code and an eight digit application number; or if a PCT application, specify as the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number):
 - (B) FILING DATE (document filing date, specify as dd-*MMM*-*yyyy*):
- (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION (O):
 - (A) NAME (attorney/agent name; SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS):
 - (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER (attorney/agent registration number):
 - (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER (attorney/agent reference or docket number):
- (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION (O):
 - (A) TELEPHONE (telephone number of applicant or attorney/agent):
 - (B) TELEFAX (telefax number of applicant or attorney/agent):
 - (C) TELEX (telex number of applicant or attorney/ agent):
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:X (rep):
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS (M):



- (A) LENGTH (sequence length, expressed as number of base pairs or amino acid residues):
- (B) TYPE (sequence type, i.e., whether nucleic acid or amino acid):
- (C) STRANDEDNESS (if nucleic acid, number of strands of source organism molecule, i.e., whether single stranded, double stranded, both or unknown to applicant):
- (D) TOPOLOGY (whether source organism molecule is circular, linear, both or unknown to applicant):
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE (type of molecule sequenced in SEQ ID NO:X (at least one of the following should be included with subheadings, if any, in Sequence Listing – R)):
 - Genomic RNA;
 - Genomic DNA;
 - mRNA
 - tRNA;
 - rRNA;
 - snRNA;
 - scRNA;
 - preRNA;
 - cDNA to genomic RNA;
 - cDNA to mRNA;
 - cDNA to tRNA;
 - cDNA to rRNA;
 - cDNA to snRNA;
 - cDNA to scRNA;
 - Other nucleic acid;
- (A) DESCRIPTION (four lines maximum):
 - protein and
 - peptide.
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL (yes/no – R):
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE (yes/no – R):
- (v) FRAGMENT TYPE (for proteins and peptides only, at least one of the following should be included in the Sequence Listing – R):
 - N-terminal fragment;
 - C-terminal fragment and
 - internal fragment.
- (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE (original source of molecule sequenced in SEQ ID NO:X – R):
 - (A) ORGANISM (scientific name of source organism):
 - (B) STRAIN:
 - (C) INDIVIDUAL ISOLATE (name/number of individual/isolate):
 - (D) DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE (give developmental stage of source organism and indicate whether derived from germ-line or rearranged developmental pattern):
 - (E) HAPLOTYPE:
 - (F) TISSUE TYPE:
 - (G) CELL TYPE:
 - (H) CELL LINE:
 - (I) ORGANELLE:



- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE (immediate experimental source of the sequence in SEQ ID NO:X – R):
 - (A) LIBRARY (library – type, name):
 - (B) CLONE (clone(s)):
- (viii) POSITION IN GENOME (position of sequence in SEQ ID NO:X in genome – R):
 - (A) CHROMOSOME/SEGMENT (chromosome/segment-name/number):
 - (B) MAP POSITION:
 - (C) UNITS (units for map position, i.e., whether units are genome percent, nucleotide number or other/specify):
- (ix) FEATURE (description of points of biological significance in the sequence in SEQ ID NO:X – R/rep):
 - (A) NAME/KEY (provide appropriate identifier for feature – four lines maximum):
 - (B) LOCATION (specify location according to syntax of DDBJ/EMBL/GenBank Feature Tables Definition, including whether feature is on complement of presented sequence; where appropriate state number of first and last bases/amino acids in feature – four lines maximum):
 - (C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD (method by which the feature was identified, i.e., by experiment, by similarity with known sequence or to an established consensus sequence, or by similarity to some other pattern – four lines maximum):
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION (include information on phenotype conferred, biological activity of sequence or its product, macromolecules which bind to sequence or its product, or other relevant information – four lines maximum):
- (x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION (Repeat section for each relevant publication – O/rep):
 - (A) AUTHORS (maximum of first ten named authors of publication; specify one name per line: SURNAME comma OTHER NAMES and/or INITIALS – rep):
 - (B) TITLE (title of publication):
 - (C) JOURNAL (journal name in which data published):
 - (D) VOLUME (journal volume in which data published):
 - (E) ISSUE (journal issue number in which data published):
 - (F) PAGES (journal page numbers in which data published):
 - (G) DATE (journal date in which data published; specify as dd-*MMM*-*yyyy*, *MMM*-*yyyy* or *Season*-*yyyy*):
 - (H) DOCUMENT NUMBER (document number, for patent type citations only; specify as two letter country code, eight digit document number (right justified), one letter and, as appropriate, one number or a space as a document type code; or if a PCT application, specify as the letters PCT, a slash, a two letter code indicating the Receiving Office, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit number; or if a PCT publication, specify as the two letters WO, a two digit indication of the year, a slash and a five digit publication number):
 - (I) FILING DATE (document filing date, for patent-type citations only; specify as dd-*MMM*-*yyyy*):
 - (J) PUBLICATION DATE (document publication date; for patent-type citations only, specify as dd-*MMM*-*yyyy*):
 - (K) RELEVANT RESIDUES IN SEQ ID NO:X (rep): FROM (position) TO (position)



(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:X:

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.824 Form and format for nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence submissions in computer readable form.

(a) The computer readable form required by § 1.821(e) shall contain a printable copy of the "Sequence Listing," as defined in §§ 1.821(c), 1.822 and 1.823, recorded as a single file on either a diskette or a magnetic tape. The computer readable form shall be encoded and formatted such that a printed copy of the "Sequence Listing" may be recreated using the print commands of the computer/operating-system configurations specified in paragraph (f) of this section.

(b) The file in paragraph (a) of this section shall be encoded in a subset of the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII). This subset shall consist of all the printable ASCII characters including the ASCII space character plus line-termination, pagination and end-of-file characters associated with the computer/operating-system configurations specified in paragraph (f) of this section. No other characters shall be allowed.

(c) The computer readable form may be created by any means, such as word processors, nucleotide/amino acid sequence editors or other custom computer programs; however, it shall be readable by one of the computer/operating-system configurations specified in paragraph (f) of this section, and shall conform to the specifications in paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(d) The entire printable copy of the "Sequence Listing" shall be contained within one file on a single diskette or magnetic tape unless it is shown to the satisfaction of the Commissioner that it is not practical or possible to submit the entire printable copy of the "Sequence Listing" within one file on a single diskette or magnetic tape.

(e) The submitted diskette or tape shall be write-protected such as by covering or uncovering diskette holes, removing diskette write tabs or removing tape write rings.

(f) As set forth in paragraph (c), above, any means may be used to create the computer readable form, as long as the following conditions are satisfied. A submitted diskette shall be readable on one of the computer/operating-system configurations described in paragraphs (1) through (3), below. A submitted tape shall satisfy the format specifications described in paragraph (4), below.

- (1) Computer: IBM PC/XT/AT, IBM PS/2 or compatibles;
 - (i) Operating system: PC-DOS or MS-DOS (Versions 2.1 or above);
 - (ii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus ASCII Line Feed;
 - (iii) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;
 - (iv) End-of-File: ASCII SUB (Ctrl-Z);
 - (v) Media:
 - (A) Diskette – 5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage;
 - (B) Diskette – 5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage;
 - (C) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage;
 - (D) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 1.44 Mb storage;
 - (vi) Print Command: PRINT filename.extension;
- (2) Computer: IBM PC/XT/AT, IBM PS/2 or compatibles;
 - (i) Operating system: Xenix;
 - (ii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return;
 - (iii) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;
 - (iv) End-of-File: None;
 - (v) Media:
 - (A) Diskette – 5.25 inch, 360 Kb storage;
 - (B) Diskette – 5.25 inch, 1.2 Mb storage;
 - (C) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 720 Kb storage;
 - (D) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 1.44 Mb storage;



- (vi) Print Command: lpr filename;
- (3) Computer: Apple Macintosh;
 - (i) Operating System: Macintosh;
 - (ii) Macintosh File Type: text with line termination
 - (iii) Line Terminator: Pre-defined by text type file;
 - (iv) Pagination: Pre-defined by text type file;
 - (v) End-of-file: Pre-defined by text type file;
 - (vi) Media:
 - (A) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 400 Kb storage;
 - (B) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 800 Kb storage;
 - (C) Diskette – 3.50 inch, 1.4 Mb storage;
 - (vii) Print Command: Use PRINT command from any Macintosh Application that processes text files, such as MacWrite or TeachText;
- (4) Magnetic tape: 0.5 inch, up to 2400 feet;
 - (i) Density: 1600 or 6250 bits per inch, 9 track;
 - (ii) Format: raw, unblocked;
 - (iii) Line Terminator: ASCII Carriage Return plus optional ASCII Line Feed;
 - (iv) Pagination: ASCII Form Feed or Series of Line Terminators;
 - (v) Print Command (Unix shell version given here as sample response – mt/dev/rmt0; lpr/dev/rmt0):

(g) Computer readable forms that are submitted to the Office will not be returned to the applicant.

(h) All computer readable forms shall have a label permanently affixed thereto on which has been hand printed or typed, a description of the format of the computer readable form as well as the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the date on which the data were recorded on the computer readable form and the name and type of computer and operating system which generated the files on the computer readable form. If all of this information can not be printed on a label affixed to the computer readable form, by reason of size or otherwise, the label shall include the name of the applicant and the title of the invention and a reference number, and the additional information may be provided on a container for the computer readable form with the name of the applicant, the title of the invention, the reference number and the additional information affixed to the container. If the computer readable form is submitted after the date of filing under 35 U.S.C. 111, after the date of entry in the national stage under 35 U.S.C. 371 or after the time of filing, in the United States Receiving Office, an international application under the PCT, the labels mentioned herein must also include the date of the application and the application number, including series code and serial number.

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]

37 CFR 1.825 Amendments to or replacement of sequence listing and computer readable copy thereof.

(a) Any amendment to the paper copy of the “Sequence Listing” (§ 1.821(c)) must be made by the submission of substitute sheets. Amendments must be accompanied by a statement that indicates support for the amendment in the application, as filed, and a statement that the substitute sheets include no new matter. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(b) Any amendment to the paper copy of the “Sequence Listing,” in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section must be accompanied by a substitute copy of the computer readable form (§ 1.821(e)) including all previously submitted data with the amendment incorporated therein, accompanied by a statement that the copy in computer readable form is the same as the substitute copy of the “Sequence Listing.” Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

(c) Any appropriate amendments to the “Sequence Listing” in a patent; e.g., by reason of reissue or certificate of correction must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.



(d) If, upon receipt, the computer readable is found to be damaged or unreadable, applicant must provide, within such time as set by the Commissioner, a substitute copy of the data in computer readable form accompanied by a statement that the substitute data is identical to that originally filed. Such a statement must be a verified statement if made by a person not registered to practice before the Office.

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]

Appendix A — SAMPLE SEQUENCE LISTING

(1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

- (i) APPLICANT: Doe, Joan X Doe, John Q
- (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from Paramecium sp.
- (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 2
- (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
 - (A) ADDRESSEE: Smith and Jones
 - (B) STREET: 123 Main Street
 - (C) CITY: Smalltown
 - (D) STATE: Any state
 - (E) COUNTRY: USA
 - (F) ZIP: 12345
- (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
 - (A) MEDIUM TYPE: Diskette, 3.50 inch, 800 Kb storage
 - (B) COMPUTER: Apple Macintosh
 - (C) OPERATING SYSTEM: Macintosh 5.0
 - (D) SOFTWARE: MacWrite
- (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/999,999
 - (B) FILING DATE: 28-FEB-1989
 - (C) CLASSIFICATION: 999/99
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER: PCT/US88/99999
 - (B) FILING DATE: 01-MAR-1988
- (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
 - (A) NAME: Smith, John A
 - (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 00001
 - (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 01-0001
- (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) TELEPHONE: (909) 999-0001
 - (B) TELEFAX: (909) 999-0002

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 954 base pairs
 - (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear
- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: genomic DNA
- (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: yes
- (iv) ANTI-SENSE: no
- (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:



- (A) ORGANISM: Paramecium sp
- (C) INDIVIDUAL/ISOLATE: XYZ2
- (G) CELL TYPE: unicellular organism
- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
 - (A) LIBRARY: genomic
 - (B) CLONE: Para-XYZ2/36
- (x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) AUTHORS: Doe, Joan X Doe, John Q
 - (B) TITLE: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from Paramecium sp.
 - (C) JOURNAL: Fictional Genes
 - (D) VOLUME: I
 - (E) ISSUE: 1
 - (F) PAGES: 1-20
 - (G) DATE: 02-MAR-1988
 - (K) RELEVANT RESIDUES IN SEQ ID NO:1: FROM 1 TO 954

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

```

ATCGGGATAG TACTGGTCAA GACCGGTGGA CACCGGTTAA CCCC GGTTAA GTACCGGTTA 60
TAGGCCATTT CAGGCCAAAT GTGCCCAACT ACGCCAATTG TTTTGCCAAC GGCCAACGTT 120
ACGTTTCGTAC GCACGTATGT ACCTAGGTAC TTACGGACGT GACTACGGAC ACTTCCGTAC 180
GTACGTACGT TTACGTACCC ATCCCAACGT AACCACAGTG TGGTCGCAGT GTCCCAGTGT 240
ACACAGACTG CCAGACATTC TTCACAGACA CCCC ATG ACA CCA CCT GAA CGC CTC 295
                                     Met Thr Pro Pro Glu Arg Leu
                                     -30
TTC CTC CCA AGG GTG TGT GGC ACC ACC CTA CAC CTC CTC CTT CTG GGG 343
Phe Leu Pro Arg Val Cys Gly Thr Thr Leu His Leu Leu Leu Leu Gly
      -25                               -20                               -15
CTG CTG CTG GTT CTG CTG CCT GGG GCC CAT GTGAGGCAGC AGGAGAATGG 393
Leu Leu Leu Val Leu Leu Pro Gly Ala His
      -10                               -5
GGTGGCTCAG CCAAACCTTG AGCCCTAGAG CCCCCTCAA CTCTGTTCTC CTAG GGG 450
                                     Gly
CTC ATG CAT CTT GCC CAC AGC AAC CTC AAA CCT GCT GCT CAC CTC ATT 498
Leu Met His Leu Ala His Ser Asn Leu Lys Pro Ala Ala His Leu Ile
1           5           10           15
GTAAACATCC ACCTGACCTC CCAGACATGT CCCACCAGC TCTCCTCCTA CCCCTGCCTC 558
AGGAACCCAA GCATCCACCC CTCTCCCCCA ACTTCCCCCA CGCTAAAAAA AACAGAGGGA 618
GCCACTCCT ATGCCTCCCC CTGCCATCCC CCAGGAACTC AGTTGTTTTCAG TGCCCACTTC 678
TAC CCC AGC AAG CAG AAC TCA CTG CTC TGG AGA GCA AAC ACG GAC CGT 726
Tyr Pro Ser Lys Gln Asn Ser Leu Leu Trp Arg Ala Asn Thr Asp Arg
      20           25           30
GCC TTC CTC CAG GAT GGT TTC TCC TTG AGC AAC AAT TCT CTC CTG GTC 774
Ala Phe Leu Gln Asp Gly Phe Ser Leu Ser Asn Asn Ser Leu Leu Val
      35           40           45
TAGAAAAAAT AATTGATTTT AAGACCTTCT CCCATTCTG CCTCCATTCT GACCATTTCA 834
GGGGTCGTCA CCACCTCTCC TTTGGCCATT CCAACAGCTC AAGTCTTCCC TGATCAAGTC 894
ACCGGAGCTT TCAAAGAAGG AATTCTAGGC ATCCAGGGG ACCCACACCT CCCTGAACCA 954

```

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH: 82 amino acids
 - (B) TYPE: amino acid
 - (D) TOPOLOGY: linear



- (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY: signal sequence
 - (B) LOCATION: -34 to -1
 - (C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD: similarity to other signal sequences, hydrophobic
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION: expresses protease
- (x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) AUTHORS: Doe, Joan X Doe, John Q
 - (B) TITLE: Isolation and Characterization of a Gene Encoding a Protease from Paramecium sp.
 - (C) JOURNAL: Fictional Genes
 - (D) VOLUME: I
 - (E) ISSUE: 1
 - (F) PAGES: 1-20
 - (G) DATE: 02-MAR-1988
 - (K) RELEVANT RESIDUES IN SEQ ID NO:2: FROM -34 TO 48

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

```

Met Thr Pro Pro Glu Arg Leu Phe Leu Pro Arg Val Cys Gly Thr Thr
          -30                -25                -20
Leu His Leu Leu Leu Leu Gly Leu Leu Leu Val Leu Leu Pro Gly Ala
          -15                -10                -5
His Gly Leu Met His Leu Ala His Ser Asn Leu Lys Pro Ala Ala His
          1                5                10
Leu Ile Tyr Pro Ser Lys Gln Asn Ser Leu Leu Trp Arg Ala Asn Thr
15                20                25                30
Asp Arg Ala Phe Leu Gln Asp Gly Phe Ser Leu Ser Asn Asn Ser Leu
          35                40                45
Leu Val

```

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]

Appendix B — HEADINGS FOR INFORMATION ITEMS IN § 1.823

- (1) GENERAL INFORMATION:
 - (i) APPLICANT:
 - (ii) TITLE OF INVENTION:
 - (iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES:
 - (iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:
 - (A) ADDRESSEE:
 - (B) STREET:
 - (C) CITY:
 - (D) STATE:
 - (E) COUNTRY:
 - (F) ZIP:
 - (v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:
 - (A) MEDIUM TYPE:
 - (B) COMPUTER:
 - (C) OPERATING SYSTEM:
 - (D) SOFTWARE:
 - (vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:



- (A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
- (B) FILING DATE:
- (C) CLASSIFICATION:
- (vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:
 - (A) APPLICATION NUMBER:
 - (B) FILING DATE:
- (viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:
 - (A) NAME:
 - (B) REGISTRATION NUMBER:
 - (C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER:
- (ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) TELEPHONE:
 - (B) TELEFAX:
 - (C) TELEX:
- (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:X:
 - (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:
 - (A) LENGTH:
 - (B) TYPE:
 - (C) STRANDEDNESS:
 - (D) TOPOLOGY:
 - (ii) MOLECULE TYPE:
 - Genomic RNA;
 - Genomic DNA;
 - mRNA
 - tRNA;
 - rRNA;
 - snRNA;
 - scRNA;
 - preRNA;
 - cDNA to genomic RNA;
 - cDNA to mRNA;
 - cDNA to tRNA;
 - cDNA to rRNA;
 - cDNA to snRNA;
 - cDNA to scRNA;
 - Other nucleic acid;
 - (A) DESCRIPTION:
 - protein and
 - peptide.
 - (iii) HYPOTHETICAL:
 - (iv) ANTI-SENSE:
 - (v) FRAGMENT TYPE:
 - (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:
 - (A) ORGANISM:
 - (B) STRAIN:
 - (C) INDIVIDUAL ISOLATE:
 - (D) DEVELOPMENTAL STAGE:



- (E) HAPLOTYPE:
- (F) TISSUE TYPE:
- (G) CELL TYPE:
- (H) CELL LINE:
- (I) ORGANELLE:
- (vii) IMMEDIATE SOURCE:
 - (A) LIBRARY:
 - (B) CLONE:
- (viii) POSITION IN GENOME:
 - (A) CHROMOSOME/SEGMENT:
 - (B) MAP POSITION:
 - (C) UNITS:
- (ix) FEATURE:
 - (A) NAME/KEY:
 - (B) LOCATION:
 - (C) IDENTIFICATION METHOD:
 - (D) OTHER INFORMATION:
- (x) PUBLICATION INFORMATION:
 - (A) AUTHORS:
 - (B) TITLE:
 - (C) JOURNAL:
 - (D) VOLUME:
 - (E) ISSUE:
 - (F) PAGES:
 - (G) DATE:
 - (H) DOCUMENT NUMBER:
 - (I) FILING DATE:
 - (J) PUBLICATION DATE:
 - (K) RELEVANT RESIDUES:
- (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:X:

[Added 55 FR 18230, May 1, 1990, effective Oct. 1, 1990]



PART 3—ASSIGNMENT, RECORDING, AND RIGHTS OF ASSIGNEE

Sec.	
3.1	Definitions.
	DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING
3.11	Documents which will be recorded.
3.16	Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of use statement.
	REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING
3.21	Identification of patents and patent applications.
3.24	Formal requirements for documents and cover sheets.
3.26	English language requirement.
3.27	Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.
3.28	Requests for recording.
	COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS
3.31	Cover sheet content.
3.34	Correction of cover sheet errors.
	FEEES
3.41	Recording fees.
	DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING
3.51	Recording date.
3.54	Effect of recording.
3.56	Conditional assignments.
	DOMESTIC REPRESENTATIVE
3.61	Domestic representative.
	PROSECUTION BY ASSIGNEE
3.71	Prosecution by assignee.
3.73	Establishing right of assignee to prosecute.
	ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE
3.81	Issue of patent to assignee.
3.85	Issue of registration to assignee.

37 CFR 3.1 Definitions.

For purposes of this part, the following definitions shall apply:

Application means a national application for patent, an international application that designates the United States of America, or an application to register trademark unless otherwise indicated.

Assignment means a transfer by a party of all or part of its right, title and interest in a patent or patent application, or a transfer of its entire right, title and interest in a registered mark or a mark for which an application to register has been filed.

Document means a document which a party requests to be recorded in the Office pursuant to § 3.11 and which affects some interest in an application, patent, or registration.

Office means the Patent and Trademark Office.

Recorded document means a document which has been recorded in the Office pursuant to § 3.11.

Registration means a trademark registration issued by the Office.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

DOCUMENTS ELIGIBLE FOR RECORDING

37 CFR 3.11 Documents which will be recorded.

Assignments of applications, patents, and registrations, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§ 3.28 and 3.31, will be recorded in the Office. Other documents, accompanied by completed cover sheets as specified in §§ 3.28 and 3.31, affecting title to applications, patents, or registrations, will be recorded as provided in this Part or at the discretion of the Commissioner.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.16 Assignability of trademarks prior to filing of use statement.

No application to register a mark under 15 U.S.C. 1051(b) is assignable prior to the filing of the verified statement of use under 15 U.S.C. 1051(d) except to a successor to the business of the applicant, or portion thereof, to which the mark pertains, if that business is ongoing and existing.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECORDING

37 CFR 3.21 Identification of patents and patent applications.

An assignment relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An assignment relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456). An assignment relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international application by the international application number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment of a patent application filed under § 1.53(b)(1) or § 1.62 is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended. If an assignment of a provisional application is executed before the provisional application is filed, it must identify the provisional application by name of each inventor and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the provisional application intended.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992; amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 3.24 Formal requirements for documents and cover sheets.

The document and cover sheet must be legible. Either the original document or a true copy of the original document, may be submitted for recording. Only one side of each page shall be used. The paper used should be flexible, strong white, non-shiny, durable, and preferably no larger than 21.6 x 33.1 cm. (8 1/2 x 14 inches) with a 2.5 cm. (one-inch) margin on all sides.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.26 English language requirement.

The Office will accept and record non-English language documents only if accompanied by a verified English translation signed by the individual making the translation.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.27 Mailing address for submitting documents to be recorded.

Documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignments, Washington, D.C. 20231, unless they are filed together with new applications or with a petition under § 3.81(b).

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.28 Requests for recording.

Each document submitted to the Office for recording must be accompanied by at least one cover sheet as specified in § 3.31 referring either to those patent applications and patents, or to those trademark applications and registrations, against which the document is to be recorded. If a document to be recorded includes interests in, or transactions involving, both patents and trademarks, separate patent and trademark cover sheets must be submitted. Only one set of documents and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If a document to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the document and any incomplete cover sheet will be returned pursuant to § 3.51 for proper completion of a cover sheet and resubmission of the document and a completed cover sheet.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]



COVER SHEET REQUIREMENTS

37 CFR 3.31 Cover sheet content.

- (a) Each patent or trademark cover sheet required by § 3.28 must contain:
- (1) the name of the party conveying the interest;
 - (2) the name and address of the party receiving the interest;
 - (3) a description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;
 - (4) each application number, patent number or registration number against which the document is to be recorded, or an indication that the document is filed together with a patent application;
 - (5) the name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the document should be mailed;
 - (6) the number of applications, patents, or registrations identified in the cover sheet and the total fee;
 - (7) the date the document was executed;
 - (8) an indication that the assignee of a trademark application or registration who is not domiciled in the United States has designated a domestic representative (see § 3.61); and
 - (9) a statement by the party submitting the document that to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, the information contained on the cover sheet is true and correct and any copy submitted is a true copy of the original document; and
 - (10) the signature of the party submitting the document.
- (b) A cover sheet may not refer to both patents and trademarks.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.34 Correction of cover sheet errors.

- (a) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to § 3.11 will be corrected only if:
- (1) the error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded document to which it pertains and
 - (2) a corrected cover sheet is filed for recordation.

(b) The corrected cover sheet must be accompanied by the originally recorded document or a copy of the originally recorded document and by the recording fee as set forth in § 3.41.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

FEEES

37 CFR 3.41 Recording fees.

All requests to record documents must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. A fee is required for each application, patent and registration against which the document is recorded as identified in the cover sheet. The recording fee is set in § 1.21(h) of this Chapter for patents and in § 2.6(q) of this Chapter for trademarks.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

DATE AND EFFECT OF RECORDING

37 CFR 3.51 Recording date.

The date of recording of a document is the date the document meeting the requirements for recording set forth in this Part is filed in the Office. A document which does not comply with the identification requirements of § 3.21 will not be recorded. Documents not meeting the other requirements for recording, for example, a document submitted without a completed cover sheet or without the required fee, will be returned for correction to the sender where a correspondence address is available. The returned papers, stamped with the original date of receipt by the Office, will be accompanied by a letter which will indicate



that if the returned papers are corrected and resubmitted to the Office within the time specified in the letter, the Office will consider the original date of filing of the papers as the date of recording of the document. The certification procedure under either § 1.8 or § 1.10 of this Chapter may be used for resubmissions of returned papers to have the benefit of the date of deposit in the United States Postal Service. If the returned papers are not corrected and resubmitted within the specified period, the date of filing of the corrected papers will be considered to be the date of recording of the document. The specified period to resubmit the returned papers will not be extended.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.54 Effect of recording.

The recording of a document pursuant to § 3.11 is not a determination by the Office of the validity of the document or the effect that document has on the title to an application, a patent, or a registration. When necessary, the Office will determine what effect a document has, including whether a party has the authority to take an action in a matter pending before the Office.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.56 Conditional assignments.

Assignments which are made conditional on the performance of certain acts or events, such as the payment of money or other condition subsequent, if recorded in the Office, are regarded as absolute assignments for Office purposes until cancelled with the written consent of all parties or by the decree of a court of competent jurisdiction. The Office does not determine whether such conditions have been fulfilled.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

DOMESTIC REPRESENTATIVE

37 CFR 3.61 Domestic representative.

If the assignee of a trademark application or registration is not domiciled in the United States, the assignee must designate, in writing to the Office, a domestic representative. An assignee of a patent application or patent may designate a domestic representative if the assignee is not residing in the United States. The designation shall state the name and address of a person residing within the United States on whom may be served process or notice of proceedings affecting the application, patent or registration or rights thereunder.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

PROSECUTION BY ASSIGNEE

37 CFR 3.71 Prosecution by assignee.

The assignee of record of the entire right, title and interest in an application for patent is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the patent application to the exclusion of the named inventor or previous assignee. The assignee of a registered trademark or a trademark for which an application to register has been filed is entitled to conduct the prosecution of the trademark application or registration to the exclusion of the original applicant or previous assignee.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

37 CFR 3.73 Establishing right of assignee to prosecute.

(a) The inventor is presumed to be the owner of a patent application, and any patent that may issue therefrom, unless there is an assignment. The original applicant is presumed to be the owner of a trademark application unless there is an assignment.

(b) When the assignee of the entire right, title, and interest seeks to take action in a matter before the Office with respect to a patent application, trademark application, patent registration, or reexamination proceeding, the assignee must establish its ownership of the property to the satisfaction of the Commissioner. Ownership is established by submitting to the Office documentary evidence of a chain of title from the original owner to the assignee or by specifying (e.g. reel and frame number, etc.) where such evidence is recorded in the Office. Documents submitted to establish ownership may be required to be



recorded as a condition to permitting the assignee to take action in a matter pending before the Office. In addition, the assignee of a patent application or patent must submit a statement specifying that the evidentiary documents have been reviewed and certifying that, to the best of assignee's knowledge and belief, title is in the assignee seeking to take the action.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]

ISSUANCE TO ASSIGNEE

37 CFR 3.81 Issue of patent to assignee.

(a) For a patent application, if an assignment of the entire right, title, and interest is recorded before the issue fee is paid, the patent may issue in the name of the assignee. If the assignee holds an undivided part interest, the patent may issue jointly to the inventor and the assignee. At the time the issue fee is paid, the name of the assignee must be provided if the patent is to issue solely or jointly to that assignee.

(b) If the assignment is submitted for recording after the date of payment of the issue fee, but prior to issuance of the patent, the assignee may petition that the patent issue to the assignee. Any such petition must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.17(i) of this Chapter.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992; amended, 60 FR 20195, Apr. 25, 1995, effective June 8, 1995]

37 CFR 3.85 Issue of registration to assignee.

The certificate of registration may be issued to the assignee of the applicant, or in a new name of the applicant, provided that the party files a written request in the trademark application by the time the application is being prepared for issuance of the certificate of registration, and the appropriate document is recorded in the Office. If the assignment or name change document has not been recorded in the Office, then the written request must state that the document has been filed for recordation. The address of the assignee must be made of record in the application file.

[Added, 57 FR 29634, July 6, 1992, effective Sept. 4, 1992]



PART 5 — SECRECY OF CERTAIN INVENTIONS AND LICENSES TO EXPORT AND FILE APPLICATIONS IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES

SECRECY ORDERS

- Sec.
5.1 Defense inspection of certain applications.
5.2 Secrecy order.
5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.
5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.
5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.
5.6 General and group permits.
5.7 Compensation.
5.8 Appeal to Secretary.

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

- 5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting international application.
5.12 Petition for license
5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.
5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.
5.15 Scope of license.
5.16 Effect of secrecy order.
5.17 Who may use license.
5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.
5.19 Export of technical data.
5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.
5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

GENERAL

- 5.31 Effect of modification, rescission or license.
5.32 Papers in English language.
5.33 Correspondence.

SECRECY ORDERS

37 CFR 5.1 Defense inspection of certain applications.

(a) The provisions of this part shall apply to both national and international applications filed in the Patent and Trademark Office and, with respect to inventions made in the United States, to applications filed in any foreign country or any international authority other than the United States Receiving Office. The (1) filing of a national or an international application in a foreign country or with an international authority other than the United States Receiving Office, or (2) transmittal of an international application to a foreign agency or an international authority other than the United States Receiving Office is considered to be a foreign filing within the meaning of Chapter 17 of title 35, United States Code.

(b) In accordance with the provisions of 35 U.S.C. 181, patent applications containing subject matter the disclosure of which might be detrimental to the national security are made available for inspection by defense agencies as specified in said section. Only applications obviously relating to national security, and applications within fields indicated to the Patent and Trademark Office by the defense agencies as so related, are made available. The inspection will be made only by responsible representatives authorized by the agency to review applications. Such representatives are required to sign a dated acknowledgment of access accepting the condition that information obtained from the inspection will be used for no purpose other than the administration of 35 U.S.C. 181–188. Copies of applications may be made available to such representatives for inspection outside the Patent and Trademark Office under conditions assuring that the confidentiality of the applications will be maintained, including the conditions that:

- (1) All copies will be returned to the Patent and Trademark Office promptly if no secrecy order is imposed, or upon rescission of such order if one is imposed, and
- (2) no additional copies will be made by the defense agencies.

A record of the removal and return of copies made available for defense inspection will be maintained by the Patent and Trademark Office. Applications relating to atomic energy are made available to the Department of Energy as specified in § 1.14 of this chapter.

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978]

37 CFR 5.2 Secrecy order.

(a) When notified by the chief officer of a defense agency that publication or disclosure of the invention by the granting of a patent would be detrimental to the national security, an order that the invention be kept secret will be issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) The secrecy order is directed to the applicant, his successors, any and all assignees, and their legal representatives; hereinafter designated as principals.

(c) A copy of the secrecy order will be forwarded to each principal of record in the application and will be accompanied by a receipt, identifying the particular principal, to be signed and returned.

(d) The secrecy order is directed to the subject matter of the application. Where any other application in which a secrecy order has not been issued discloses a significant part of the subject matter of the application under secrecy order, the other application and the common subject matter should be called to the attention of the Patent and Trademark Office. Such a notice may include any material such as would be urged in a petition to rescind secrecy orders on either of the applications.

37 CFR 5.3 Prosecution of application under secrecy orders; withholding patent.

Unless specifically ordered otherwise, action on the application by the Office and prosecution by the applicant will proceed during the time an application is under secrecy order to the point indicated in this section:

(a) National applications under secrecy order which come to a final rejection must be appealed or otherwise prosecuted to avoid abandonment. Appeals in such cases must be completed by the applicant but unless otherwise specifically ordered by the Commissioner will not be set for hearing until the secrecy order is removed.

(b) An interference will not be declared involving national applications under secrecy order. However, if an applicant whose application is under secrecy order seeks to provoke an interference with an issued patent, a notice of that fact will be placed in the file wrapper of the patent. (See § 1.607(d)).

(c) When the national application is found to be in condition for allowance except for the secrecy order the applicant and the agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued will be notified. This notice (which is not a notice of allowance under § 1.311 of this chapter) does not require response by the applicant and places the national application in a condition of suspension until the secrecy order is removed. When the secrecy order is removed the Patent and Trademark Office will issue a notice of allowance under § 1.311 of this chapter, or take such other action as may then be warranted.

(d) International applications under secrecy order will not be mailed, delivered, or otherwise transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant. International applications under secrecy order will be processed up to the point where, if it were not for the secrecy order, record and search copies would be transmitted to the international authorities or the applicant.

[43 FR 20470, May 11, 1978; amended 43 FR 28479, June 30, 1978; para. (b) amended 53 FR 23736, June 23, 1988, effective Sept. 12, 1988]

37 CFR 5.4 Petition for rescission of secrecy order.

(a) A petition for rescission or removal of a secrecy order may be filed by, or on behalf of, any principal affected thereby. Such petition may be in letter form, and it must be in duplicate. The petition must be accompanied by one copy of the application or an order for the same, unless a showing is made that such a copy has already been furnished to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

(b) The petition must recite any and all facts that purport to render the order ineffectual or futile if this is the basis of the petition. When prior publications or patents are alleged, the petition must give complete data as to such publications or patents and should be accompanied by copies thereof.



(c) The petition must identify any contract between the Government and any of the principals under which the subject matter of the application or any significant part thereof was developed or to which the subject matter is otherwise related. If there is no such contract, the petition must so state.

(d) Unless based upon facts of public record, the petition must be verified.

37 CFR 5.5 Permit to disclose or modification of secrecy order.

(a) Consent to disclosure, or to the filing of an application abroad, as provided in 35 U.S.C. 182, shall be made by a "permit" or "modification" of the secrecy order.

(b) Petitions for a permit or modification must fully recite the reason or purpose for the proposed disclosure. Where any proposed disclosee is known to be cleared by a defense agency to receive classified information, adequate explanation of such clearance should be made in the petition including the name of the agency or department granting the clearance and the date and degree thereof. The petition must be filed in duplicate and be accompanied by one copy of the application or an order for the same, unless a showing is made that such a copy has already been furnished to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

(c) In a petition for modification of a secrecy order to permit filing abroad, all countries in which it is proposed to file must be made known, as well as all attorneys, agents, and others to whom the material will be consigned prior to being lodged in the foreign patent office. The petition should include a statement vouching for the loyalty and integrity of the proposed disclosees and where their clearance status in this or the foreign country is known all details should be given.

(d) Consent to the disclosure of subject matter from one application under secrecy order may be deemed to be consent to the disclosure of common subject matter in other applications under secrecy order so long as the subject matter is not taken out of context in a manner disclosing material beyond the modification granted in the first application.

(e) The permit or modification may contain conditions and limitations.

37 CFR 5.6 General and group permits.

(a) Organizations requiring consent for disclosure of applications under secrecy order to persons or organizations in connection with repeated routine operation may petition for such consent in the form of a general permit. To be successful such petitions must ordinarily recite the security clearance status of the disclosees as sufficient for the highest classification of material that may be involved.

(b) Where identical disclosees and circumstances are involved, and consent is desired for the disclosure of each of a specific list of applications, the petitions may be joined.

37 CFR 5.7 Compensation.

Any request for compensation as provided in 35 U.S.C. 183 must not be made to the Patent and Trademark Office but should be made directly to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued. Upon written request persons having a right to such information will be informed as to the department or agency which caused the secrecy order to be issued.

37 CFR 5.8 Appeal to Secretary.

Appeal to the Secretary of Commerce, as provided by 35 U.S.C. 181, from a secrecy order cannot be taken until after a petition for rescission of the secrecy order has been made and denied. Appeal must be taken within 60 days from the date of the denial, and the party appealing, as well as the department or agency which caused the order to be issued, will be notified of the time and place of hearing. The appeal will be heard and decided by the Secretary or such officer or officers as he may designate.

LICENSES FOR FOREIGN EXPORTING AND FILING

37 CFR 5.11 License for filing in a foreign country an application on an invention made in the United States or for transmitting international application.

(a) A license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184 is required before filing any application for patent including any modifications, amendments, or supplements thereto or

divisions thereof or for the registration of a utility model, industrial design, or model, in a foreign patent office or any foreign patent agency or any international agency other than the United States Receiving Office, if the invention was made in the United States and:

- (1) An application on the invention has been filed in the United States less than six months prior to the date on which the application is to be filed, or
- (2) No application on the invention has been filed in the United States.

(b) The license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraph (a) would also authorize the export of technical data abroad for purposes relating to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application without separately complying with the regulations contained in 22 CFR Parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR Part 379 (Regulations of the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR Part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy).

(c) Where technical data in the form of a patent application, or in any form, is being exported for purposes related to the preparation, filing or possible filing and prosecution of a foreign patent application, without the license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks referred to in paragraphs (a) or (b) of this section, or on an invention not made in the United States, the export regulations contained in 22 CFR Parts 121 through 130 ((International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR Part 379 (Regulations of the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR Part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy) must be complied with unless a license is not required because a United States application was on file at the time of export for at least six months without a secrecy order under § 5.2 being placed thereon. The term “exported” means export as it is defined in 22 CFR Parts 121 through 130, 15 CFR Part 379 and 10 CFR Part 810.

(d) If a secrecy order has been issued under § 5.2, an application cannot be exported to, or filed in, a foreign country (including an international agency in a foreign country), except in accordance with § 5.5.

(e) No license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section is required:

- (1) If the invention was not made in the United States, or
- (2) If the corresponding United States application is not subject to a secrecy order under § 5.2, and was filed at least six months prior to the date on which the application is filed in a foreign country, or
- (3) For subsequent modifications, amendments and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application if:
 - (i) a license is not, or was not, required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section for the foreign patent application;
 - (ii) the corresponding United States application was not required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1; and
 - (iii) such modifications, amendments, and supplements do not, or did not, change the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require any corresponding United States application to be or have been available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1.

(f) A license pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section can be revoked at any time upon written notification by the Patent and Trademark Office. An authorization to file a foreign patent application resulting from the passage of six months from the date of filing of a United States patent application may be revoked by the imposition of a secrecy order.

[49 FR 13461, Apr. 4, 1984; paras. (a) and (e), 56 FR 1924, Jan. 18, 1991, effective Feb. 19, 1991]

37 CFR 5.12 Petition for license.

(a) Filing of an application for patent for inventions made in the United States will be considered to include a petition for license under 35 U.S.C. 184 for the subject matter of the application. The filing receipt will indicate if a license is granted. If the initial automatic petition is not granted, a subsequent petition may be filed under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) Petitions for license should be presented in letter form and must include the required fee (§ 1.17(h)). If expedited handling of the petition is also sought, the petitioner's address and full instructions for delivery of the requested license when it is to be delivered to other than the petitioner.

[48 FR 2714, Jan. 20, 1983; amended 49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.13 Petition for license; no corresponding application.

If no corresponding national or international application has been filed in the United States, the petition for license under § 5.12(b) must be accompanied by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), if expedited handling of the petition is sought, and a legible copy of the material upon which license is desired. This copy will be retained as a measure of the license granted. For assistance in the identification of the subject matter of each license so issued, it is suggested that the petition be submitted in duplicate and provide a title and other description of the material. The duplicate copy of the petition will be returned with the license or other action on the petition.

[43 FR 20471, May 11, 1978; 49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.14 Petition for license; corresponding U.S. application.

(a) Where there is a corresponding United States application on file, a petition for license under § 5.12(b) must include the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), if expedited handling of the petition is also sought, and must identify this application by serial number, filing date, inventor, and title, and a copy of the material upon which the license is desired is not required. The subject matter licensed will be measured by the disclosure of the United States application. Where the title is not descriptive, and the subject matter is clearly of no interest from a security standpoint, time may be saved by a short statement in the petition as to the nature of the invention.

(b) Two or more United States applications should not be referred to in the same petition for license unless they are to be combined in the foreign or international application, in which event the petition should so state and the identification of each United States application should be in separate paragraphs.

(c) Where the application to be filed or exported abroad contains matter not disclosed in the United States application or applications, including the case where the combining of two or more United States applications introduces subject matter not disclosed in any of them, a copy of the application as it is to be filed in the foreign country or international application which is to be transmitted to a foreign international or national agency for filing in the Receiving Office, must be furnished with the petition. If, however, all new matter in the foreign or international application to be filed is readily identifiable, the new matter may be submitted in detail and the remainder by reference to the pertinent United States application or applications.

[43 FR 20471, May 11, 1978; 49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.15 Scope of license.

(a) Applications or other materials reviewed pursuant to §§ 5.12 through 5.14, which were not required to be made available for inspection by defense agencies under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1, will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. This license permits subsequent modifications, amendments, and supplements containing additional subject matter to, or divisions of, a foreign patent application, if such changes to the application do not alter the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the United States application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1. This license also covers the inventions disclosed in foreign applications which had been granted a license under this part prior to April 4, 1984, and which were not subject to security inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency when the subject matter of the foreign or international application corresponds to that of the domestic application. This license includes authority:

- (1) To export and file all duplicate and formal application papers in foreign countries or with international agencies;
- (2) To make amendments, modifications, and supplements, including divisions, changes, or supporting matter consisting of the illustration, exemplification, comparison, or explanation of subject matter disclosed in the application; and

(3) To take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application provided that the adding of subject matter or taking of any action under paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section which does not change the general nature of the invention disclosed in the application in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1 by including technical data pertaining to:

- (i) Defense services or articles designated in the United States Munitions List applicable at the time of foreign filing, the unlicensed exportation of which is prohibited pursuant to the Arms Export Control Act, as amended, and 22 CFR Parts 121 through 130; or
- (ii) Restricted Data, sensitive nuclear technology or technology useful in the production or utilization of special nuclear material or atomic energy, the dissemination of which is subject to restrictions of the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, as amended, and the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Act of 1978, as implemented by the regulations for Unclassified Activities in Foreign Atomic Energy Programs, 10 CFR Part 810, in effect at the time of foreign filing.

(b) Applications or other materials which were required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and 5.1 will be eligible for a license of the scope provided in this paragraph. Grant of this license authorizes the export and filing of an application in a foreign country or the transmitting of an international application to any foreign patent agency or international patent agency. Further, this license includes authority to export and file all duplicate and formal papers in foreign countries or with foreign and international patent agencies and to make amendments, modifications, and supplements to, file divisions of, and take any action in the prosecution of the foreign or international application, provided subject matter additional to that covered by the license is not involved.

(c) A license granted under § 5.12(b) pursuant to § 5.13 or § 5.14 shall have the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section, if it is so specified in the license. A petition, accompanied by the required fee (§ 1.17(h)), may also be filed to change a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (b) of this section to a license having the scope indicated in paragraph (a) of this section. No such petition will be granted if the copy of the material filed pursuant to § 5.13 or any corresponding United States application was required to be made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1. The change in the scope of a license will be effective as of the date of the grant of the petition.

(d) In those cases in which no license is required to file the foreign application or transmit the international application, no license is required to file papers in connection with the prosecution of the foreign or international application not involving the disclosure of additional subject matter.

(e) Any paper filed abroad or transmitted to an international patent agency following the filing of a foreign or international application which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing in a manner which would require such application to have been made available for inspection under 35 U.S.C. 181 and § 5.1 or which involves the disclosure of subject matter listed in paragraphs (a)(3)(i) or (ii) of this section must be separately licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application. Further, if no license has been granted under § 5.12(a) on filing the corresponding United States application, any paper filed abroad or with an international patent agency which involves the disclosure of additional subject matter must be licensed in the same manner as a foreign or international application.

(f) Licenses separately granted in connection with two or more United States applications may be exercised by combining or dividing the disclosures, as desired, provided:

- (1) Subject matter which changes the general nature of the subject matter disclosed at the time of filing or which involves subject matter listed in paragraphs (a)(3) (i) or (ii) of this section is not introduced and,
- (2) In the case where at least one of the licenses was obtained under § 5.12(b), additional subject matter is not introduced.

(g) A license does not apply to acts done before the license was granted. See § 5.25 for petitions for retroactive licenses.

[49 FR 13462, Apr. 4, 1984; paras. (a)–(c), (e) and (f), 56 FR 1924, Jan. 18, 1991, effective Feb. 19, 1991]

37 CFR 5.16 Effect of secrecy order.

Any license obtained under 35 U.S.C. 184 is ineffective if the subject matter is under a secrecy order, and a secrecy order prohibits the exercise of or any further action under the license unless separately specifically authorized by a modification of the secrecy order in accordance with § 5.5.

37 CFR 5.17 Who may use license.

Licenses may be used by anyone interested in the export, foreign filing, or international transmittal for or on behalf of the inventor or the inventor's assigns.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.18 Arms, ammunition, and implements of war.

(a) The exportation of technical data relating to arms, ammunition, and implements of war generally is subject to the International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State (22 CFR Parts 121 through 128); the articles designated as arms, ammunition, and implements of war are enumerated in the U.S. Munitions List, 22 CFR 121.01. However, if a patent applicant complies with regulations issued by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks under 35 U.S.C. 184, no separate approval from the Department of State is required unless the applicant seeks to export technical data exceeding that used to support a patent application in a foreign country. This exemption from Department of State regulations is applicable regardless of whether a license from the Commissioner is required by the provisions of §§ 5.11 and 5.15 (22 CFR 125.04(b), 125.20(b)).

(b) When a patent application containing subject matter on the Munitions List (22 CFR 121.01) is subject to a secrecy order under § 5.2 and a petition is made under § 5.5 for a modification of the secrecy order to permit filing abroad, a separate request to the Department of State for authority to export classified information is not required (22 CFR 125.05(d)).

[35 FR 6430, Apr. 22, 1970]

37 CFR 5.19 Export of technical data.

(a) Under regulations (15 CFR 770.10(j)) established by the U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Export Administration, Office of Export Licensing, a validated export license is not required in any case to file a patent application or part thereof in a foreign country if the foreign filing is in accordance with the regulations (37 CFR 5.11 through 5.33) of the Patent and Trademark Office.

(b) A validated export license is not required for data contained in a patent application prepared wholly from foreign-origin technical data where such application is being sent to the foreign inventor to be executed and returned to the United States for subsequent filing in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (15 CFR 379.3(c)).

(c) Inquiries concerning the export control regulations for the foreign filing of technical data other than patent applications should be made to the Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C. 20230.

[45 FR 72654, Nov. 3, 1980; para. (a) revised, 58 FR 54504, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Jan 3, 1994]

37 CFR 5.20 Export of technical data relating to sensitive nuclear technology.

(a) Under regulations (10 CFR 810.7) established by the United States Department of Energy, an application filed in accordance with the regulations (37 CFR 5.11 through 5.33) of the United States Patent and Trademark Office and eligible for foreign filing under 35 U.S.C. 184, is considered to be information available to the public in published form and a generally authorized activity for the purposes of the Department of Energy regulations.

(b) Inquiries concerning the export of sensitive nuclear technology other than related to the filing or prosecution of a foreign patent application should be made to the Attention: Secretary, United States Department of Energy, Office of International Security Affairs, Washington, D.C. 20858.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.25 Petition for retroactive license.

(a) A petition for retroactive license under 35 U.S.C. 184 shall be presented in accordance with § 5.13 or § 5.14(a), and shall include:

- (1) A listing of each of the foreign countries in which the unlicensed patent application material was filed,
- (2) The dates on which the material was filed in each country,
- (3) A verified statement (oath or declaration) containing:
 - (i) An averment that the subject matter in question was not under a secrecy order at the time it was filed abroad, and that it is not currently under a secrecy order.
 - (ii) A showing that the license has been diligently sought after discovery of the proscribed foreign filing, and
 - (iii) An explanation of why the material was inadvertently filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent without the required license under § 5.11 first having been obtained, and
- (4) The required fee (§ 1.17(h)).

The above explanation must include a showing of facts rather than a mere allegation of action through error and without deceptive intent. The showing of facts as to the nature of the error should include statements by those persons having personal knowledge of the acts regarding filing in a foreign country and should be accompanied by copies of any necessary supporting documents such as letters of transmittal or instructions for filing. The acts which are alleged to constitute error without deceptive intent should cover the period leading up to and including each of the prescribed foreign filings.

(b) If a petition for a retroactive license is denied, a time period of not less than thirty days shall be set, during which the petition may be renewed. Failure to renew the petition within the set time period will result in a final denial of the petition. A final denial of a petition stands unless a petition is filed under § 1.181 within two months of the date of the denial. If the petition for a retroactive license is denied with respect to the invention of a pending application and no petition under § 1.181 has been filed, a final rejection of the application under 35 U.S.C. 185 will be made.

(c) The granting of a retroactive license does not excuse any violation of the export regulations contained in 22 CFR Parts 121 through 130 (International Traffic in Arms Regulations of the Department of State), 15 CFR Part 379 (Regulations of Office of Export Administration, International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce) and 10 CFR Part 810 (Foreign Atomic Energy Programs of the Department of Energy) which may have occurred because of the failure to obtain an appropriate license prior to export.

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984; para. (a), 56 FR 1924, Jan. 18, 1991, effective Feb. 19, 1991]

GENERAL

37 CFR 5.31 Effect of modification, rescission or license.

Any consent, rescission or license under the provisions of this part does not lessen the responsibilities of the principals in respect to any Government contract or the requirements of any other Government agency.

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959; Redesignated at 49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.32 Papers in English language.

All papers submitted in connection with petitions must be in the English language or be accompanied by an English translation and a translator's certificate as to the true, faithful, and exact character of the translation.

[24 FR 10381, Dec. 22, 1959; Redesignated at 49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

37 CFR 5.33 Correspondence.

All correspondence in connection with this part, including petitions, should be addressed to "Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks (Attention Licensing and Review), Washington, D.C. 20231."

[49 FR 13463, Apr. 4, 1984]

PART 7—REGISTER OF GOVERNMENT INTERESTS IN PATENTS

Sec.	
7.1	Requirements.
7.2	Assignments.
7.3	Licenses
7.4	Abbreviated copy.
7.5	Instruments already on record.
7.6	Access to register.
7.7	Secret register.

37 CFR 7.1 Requirements.

(a) Executive Order 9424 (3 CFR 1943–1948 Comp.) requires the several departments and other executive agencies of the Government, including Government-owned or Government-controlled corporations, to forward promptly to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks for recording all licenses, assignments, or other interests of the Government in or under patents or applications for patents.

(b) An instrument relating to a patent must identify the patent by the patent number. An instrument relating to a national patent application must identify the national patent application by the application number (consisting of the series code and the serial number, e.g., 07/123,456) or the serial number and filing date. An instrument relating to an international patent application which designates the United States of America must identify the international application by the international application number (e.g., PCT/US90/01234). If an assignment is executed concurrently with, or subsequent to, the execution of the patent application, but before the patent application is filed, it must identify the patent application by its date of execution, name of each inventor, and title of the invention so that there can be no mistake as to the patent application intended.

(c) Each instrument submitted to the Office for recording must be accompanied by at least one cover sheet as specified in paragraph (d) of this section referring to those patent applications and patents against which the instrument is to be recorded. Only one set of instruments and cover sheets to be recorded should be filed. If an instrument to be recorded is not accompanied by a completed cover sheet, the instrument and any incomplete cover sheet will be returned for proper completion of a cover sheet and resubmission of the instrument and a completed cover sheet.

(d) Each cover sheet required by paragraph (c) of this section must contain:

- (1) the name of the party conveying the interest;
- (2) the name and address of the party receiving the interest;
- (3) a description of the interest conveyed or transaction to be recorded;
- (4) each application number or patent number against which the instrument is to be recorded, or an indication that the instrument is filed together with a patent application;
- (5) the name and address of the party to whom correspondence concerning the request to record the instrument should be mailed;
- (6) the number of applications or patents identified in the cover sheet and the total fee;
- (7) the date the instrument was executed;
- (8) a statement by the party submitting the instrument that to the best of the person's knowledge and belief, the information contained on the cover sheet is true and correct and any copy submitted is a true copy of the original instrument; and
- (9) the signature of the party submitting the instrument.

(e) Each patent cover sheet required by paragraph (c) of this section seeking to record a government interest as provided by paragraph (a) of this section must:

- (1) indicate that the instrument is to be recorded on the governmental register, and, if applicable, that the instrument is to be recorded on the Secret Register. See § 7.7.
- (2) indicate, if applicable, that the instrument to be recorded is not an instrument affecting title. See paragraph (j) of this section.



- (f) An error in a cover sheet recorded pursuant to this Part will be corrected only if:
- (1) the error is apparent when the cover sheet is compared with the recorded instrument to which it pertains, and
 - (2) a corrected cover sheet accompanied by the recording fee set forth in paragraph (i) of this section and either the original recorded instrument or a copy of the original recorded instrument is filed for recordation.
- (g) The Office will accept and record non-English language instruments only if accompanied by a verified English translation signed by the individual making the translation.
- (h) Instruments and cover sheets to be recorded should be addressed to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks, Box Assignment, Washington, D.C. 20231.
- (i) All requests to record instruments must be accompanied by the appropriate fee. Except as provided in paragraph (j) of this section, a recording fee set forth in § 1.21 (h) of this chapter fee is required for each application and patent against which the instrument is recorded as identified in the cover sheet.
- (j) No fee is required for each patent application and patent against which an instrument required by Executive Order 9424 (3 CFR 1943 – 1948 Comp.) to be filed if:
- (1) the instrument does not effect title and is so identified in the cover sheet (see paragraph (e) of this section); and
 - (2) the cover sheet is filed in a format approved by the Office.

[Amended, 60 FR 41018, Aug. 11, 1995, effective Oct. 1, 1995]

37 CFR 7.2 Assignments.

The original of an assignment or other instrument which conveys to the Government only the title to a patent or to an application for patent shall be forwarded to the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. The instrument will be recorded, endorsed, and returned.

37 CFR 7.3 Licenses.

A copy of any license or instrument other than an assignment which conveys to or gives the Government any interest in or under a patent or an application for patent shall be forwarded for recording. The copy will be retained by the Patent and Trademark Office but, when desired, the original will be endorsed and returned.

37 CFR 7.4 Abbreviated copy.

If an instrument deals with matters in addition to rights and interests in patents or in applications for patents, or in inventions disclosed therein, a copy of only those portions of the instrument dealing with such rights and interests need be forwarded. In such case, a statement giving the general nature of the entire instrument, the parties involved, the date of the instrument, the place where it is usually filed, and any docket or identifying number, must be attached to the copy.

37 CFR 7.5 Instruments already on record.

Instruments which have been recorded prior to the adoption of §§ 7.1 to 7.7 and are on the general assignment records of the Patent and Trademark Office need not be forwarded for recording.

37 CFR 7.6 Access to register.

The register will not be open to public inspection. It will be available for examination and inspection by duly authorized representatives of the Government, subject to the provisions of § 7.7. Public examination will be restricted to those instruments which the department or agency of origin has so authorized in writing.



37 CFR 7.7 Secret register.

Any instrument to be recorded will be placed on a secret record or register at the request of the department or agency submitting the same. No information will be given concerning any instrument in such record or register, and no examination or inspection thereof or of the index thereto will be permitted, except on the written authority of the head of the department or agency which submitted the instrument and requested secrecy, and the approval of such authority by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. No instrument or record other than the one specified may be examined, and the examination must take place in the presence of a designated official of the Patent and Trademark Office. When the department or agency which submitted an instrument no longer requires secrecy with respect to that instrument, it will be recorded or registered anew in the appropriate part of the register which is not secret.

**PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT
AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

**PART 10—REPRESENTATION OF OTHERS
BEFORE THE PATENT
AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

Sec.	
10.1	Definitions.
10.2	Director of Enrollment and Discipline.
10.3	Committee on Enrollment.
10.4	Committee on Discipline.
INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE	
10.5	Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.
10.6	Registration of attorneys and agents.
10.7	Requirements for registration.
10.8	Oath and registration fee.
10.9	Limited recognition in patent cases.
10.10	Restrictions on practice in patent cases.
10.11	Removing names from the register.
10.12–10.13	[Reserved]
10.14	Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other nonpatent cases.
10.15	Refusal to recognize a practitioner.
10.16–10.17	[Reserved]
10.18	Signature and certificate of practitioner.
10.19	[Reserved]
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY	
10.20	Canons and Disciplinary Rules.
10.21	Canon 1.
10.22	Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.
10.23	Misconduct.
10.24	Disclosure of information to authorities.
10.25–10.29	[Reserved]
10.30	Canon 2.
10.31	Communications concerning a practitioner’s services.
10.32	Advertising.
10.33	Direct contact with prospective clients.
10.34	Communications of fields of practice.
10.35	Firm names and letterheads.
10.36	Fees for legal services.
10.37	Division of fees among practitioners.
10.38	Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.
10.39	Acceptance of employment.
10.40	Withdrawal from employment.
10.41–10.45	[Reserved]
10.46	Canon 3.
10.47	Aiding unauthorized practice of law.



- 10.48 Sharing legal fees.
- 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.
- 10.50–10.55 [Reserved]
- 10.56 Canon 4.
- 10.57 Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.
- 10.58–10.60 [Reserved]
- 10.61 Canon 5.
- 10.62 Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner's independent professional judgment.
- 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.
- 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.
- 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.
- 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.
- 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.
- 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.
- 10.69–10.75 [Reserved]
- 10.76 Canon 6.
- 10.77 Failing to act competently.
- 10.78 Limiting liability to client.
- 10.79–10.82 [Reserved]
- 10.83 Canon 7.
- 10.84 Representing a client zealously.
- 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.
- 10.86 [Reserved]
- 10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.
- 10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.
- 10.89 Conduct in proceedings.
- 10.90–10.91 [Reserved]
- 10.92 Contact with witnesses.
- 10.93 Contact with officials.
- 10.94–10.99 [Reserved]
- 10.100 Canon 8.
- 10.101 Action as a public official.
- 10.102 Statements concerning officials.
- 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.
- 10.104–10.109 [Reserved]
- 10.110 Canon 9.
- 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.
- 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.
- 10.113–10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

- 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.
- 10.131 Investigations.
- 10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.
- 10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.
- 10.134 Complaint.
- 10.135 Service of complaint.
- 10.136 Answer to complaint.
- 10.137 Supplemental complaint.
- 10.138 Contested case.
- 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.
- 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.
- 10.141 Filing of papers.
- 10.142 Service of papers.
- 10.143 Motions.
- 10.144 Hearings.
- 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.
- 10.146–10.148 [Reserved]
- 10.149 Burden of proof.
- 10.150 Evidence.
- 10.151 Depositions.
- 10.152 Discovery.



10.153	Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.
10.154	Initial decision of administrative law judge.
10.155	Appeal to the Commissioner.
10.156	Decision of the Commissioner.
10.157	Review of the Commissioner's final decision.
10.158	Suspended or excluded practitioner.
10.159	Notice of suspension or exclusion.
10.160	Petition for reinstatement.
10.161	Savings clause.
10.162-10.169	[Reserved]
10.170	Suspension of rules.

37 CFR 10.1 Definitions.

This part governs solely the practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Patent and Trademark Office. Nothing in this part shall be construed to preempt the authority of each State to regulate the practice of law, except to the extent necessary for the Patent and Trademark Office to accomplish its federal objectives. Unless otherwise clear from the context, the following definitions apply to this part:

- (a) "Affidavit" means affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25 (see § 1.68 and § 2.20 of this subchapter), or statutory declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.
- (b) "Application" includes an application for a design, plant, or utility patent, an application to reissue any patent, and an application to register a trademark.
- (c) "Attorney" or "lawyer" means an individual who is a member in good standing of the bar of any United States court or the highest court of any State. A "non-lawyer" is a person who is not an attorney or lawyer.
- (d) "Canon" is defined in § 10.20(a).
- (e) "Confidence" is defined in § 10.57(a).
- (f) "Differing interests" include every interest that may adversely affect either the judgment or the loyalty of a practitioner to a client, whether it be a conflicting, inconsistent, diverse, or other interest.
- (g) "Director" means the Director of Enrollment and Discipline.
- (h) "Disciplinary Rule" is defined in § 10.20(b).
- (i) "Employee of a tribunal" includes all employees of courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.
- (j) "Giving information" within the meaning of § 10.23(c) (2) includes making
 - (1) a written statement or representation or
 - (2) an oral statement or representation.
- (k) "Law firm" includes a professional legal corporation or a partnership.
- (l) "Legal counsel" means practitioner.
- (m) "Legal profession" includes the individuals who are lawfully engaged in practice of patent, trademark, and other law before the Office.
- (n) "Legal service" means any legal service which may lawfully be performed by a practitioner before the Office.
- (o) "Legal System" includes the Office and courts and adjudicatory bodies which review matters on which the Office has acted.
- (p) "Office" means Patent and Trademark Office.
- (q) "Person" includes a corporation, an association, a trust, a partnership, and any other organization or legal entity.
- (r) "Practitioner" means
 - (1) an attorney or agent registered to practice before the Office in patent cases or
 - (2) an individual authorized under 5 U.S.C. 500(b) or otherwise as provided by this subchapter, to practice before the Office in trademark cases or other non-patent cases.A "suspended or excluded practitioner" is a practitioner who is suspended or excluded under § 10.156. A "non-practitioner" is an individual who is not a practitioner.



(s) A “proceeding before the Office” includes an application, a reexamination, a protest, a public use proceeding, a patent interference, an inter partes trademark proceeding, or any other proceeding which is pending before the Office.

(t) “Professional legal corporation” means a corporation authorized by law to practice law for profit.

(u) “Registration” means registration to practice before the Office in patent cases.

(v) “Respondent” is defined in § 10.134(a)(1).

(w) “Secret” is defined in § 10.57(a).

(x) “Solicit” is defined in § 10.33.

(y) “State” includes the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and other federal territories and possessions.

(z) “Tribunal” includes courts, the Office, and other adjudicatory bodies.

(aa) “United States” means the United States of America, its territories and possessions.

[Added 50 FR 5172, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.2 Director of Enrollment and Discipline.

(a) **Appointment.** The Commissioner shall appoint a Director of Enrollment and Discipline. In the event of the absence of the Director or a vacancy in the Office of the Director, the Commissioner may designate an employee of the Office to serve as acting Director of Enrollment and Discipline. The Director and any acting Director shall be an active member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) **Duties.** The Director shall:

- (1) Receive and act upon applications for registration, prepare and grade the examination provided for in § 10.7(b), maintain the register provided for in § 10.5, and perform such other duties in connection with enrollment and recognition of attorneys and agents as may be necessary.
- (2) Conduct investigations into possible violations by practitioners of Disciplinary Rules, with the consent of the Committee on Discipline initiate disciplinary proceedings under § 10.132(b), and perform such other duties in connection with investigations and disciplinary proceedings as may be necessary.

(c) **Review of Director’s decision.** Any final decision of the Director refusing to register an individual under § 10.6, recognize an individual under § 10.9 or § 10.14(c), or reinstate a suspended or excluded petitioner under § 10.160, may be reviewed by petition to the Commissioner upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(5). A petition filed more than 30 days after the date of the decision of the Director may be dismissed as untimely. Any petition shall contain

- (1) a statement of the facts involved and the points to be reviewed and
- (2) the action requested. Briefs or memoranda, if any, in support of the petition shall accompany or be embodied therein.

The petition will be decided on the basis of the record made before the Director and no new evidence will be considered by the Commissioner in deciding the petition. Copies of documents already of record before the Director shall not be submitted with the petition. An oral hearing on the petition will not be granted except when considered necessary by the Commissioner.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.3 Committee on Enrollment.

(a) The Commissioner may establish a Committee on Enrollment composed of one or more employees of the Office.

(b) The Committee on Enrollment shall, as necessary, advise the Director in connection with the Director’s duties under § 10.2(b)(1).

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]



37 CFR 10.4 Committee on Discipline.

(a) The Commissioner shall appoint a Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall consist of at least three employees of the Office, none of whom reports directly or indirectly to the Director or the Solicitor. Each member of the Committee on Discipline shall be a member in good standing of the bar of a State.

(b) The Committee on Discipline shall meet at the request of the Director and after reviewing evidence presented by the Director shall, by majority vote, determine whether there is probable cause to bring charges under § 10.132 against a practitioner. When charges are brought against a practitioner, no member of the Committee on Discipline, employee under the direction of the Director, or associate solicitor or assistant solicitor in the Office of Solicitor shall participate in rendering a decision on the charges.

(c) No discovery shall be authorized of, and no member of the Committee on Discipline shall be required to testify about, deliberations of the Committee on Discipline.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

**INDIVIDUALS ENTITLED TO PRACTICE
BEFORE THE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

37 CFR 10.5 Register of attorneys and agents in patent cases.

A register of attorneys and agents is kept in the Office on which are entered the names of all individuals recognized as entitled to represent applicants before the Office in the preparation and prosecution of applications for patent. Registration in the Office under the provisions of this part shall only entitle the individuals registered to practice before the Office in patent cases.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.6 Registration of attorneys and agents.

(a) Attorneys. Any citizen of the United States who is an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent attorney to practice before the Office, provided: Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States and further provided: The alien may remain registered only

- (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or
- (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section.

See also § 10.9(b).

(b) Agents. Any citizen of the United States who is not an attorney and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office. When appropriate, any alien who is not an attorney, who lawfully resides in the United States, and who fulfills the requirements of this part may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office, provided: Registration is not inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien was admitted to, and resides in, the United States, and further provided: The alien may remain registered only

- (1) if the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States and registration does not become inconsistent with the terms upon which the alien continues to lawfully reside in the United States or
- (2) if the alien ceases to reside in the United States, the alien is qualified to be registered under paragraph (c) of this section.

See also § 10.9(b).

NOTE: All individuals registered prior to November 15, 1938, were registered as attorneys, whether they were attorneys or not, and such registrations have not been changed.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreigner not a resident of the United States who shall file proof to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered and in good standing before the patent office of the country in which he or she resides and practices and who is possessed of the qualifications stated in § 10.7, may be registered as a patent agent to practice before the Office for the limited purpose of presenting and prosecuting patent applications of applicants located in such country, provided: The patent office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those admitted to practice before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Registration as a patent agent under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

[Added 50 FR 5173, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; paras. (d) & (e) removed 53 FR 33948, Oct. 14, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988]

37 CFR 10.7 Requirements for registration.

(a) No individual will be registered to practice before the Office unless he or she shall:

- (1) Apply to the Commissioner in writing on a form supplied by the Director and furnish all requested information and material and
- (2) Establish to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is:
 - (i) Of good moral character and repute;
 - (ii) Possessed of the legal, scientific, and technical qualifications necessary to enable him or her to render applicants valuable service; and
 - (iii) Is otherwise competent to advise and assist applicants for patents in the presentation and prosecution of their applications before the Office.

(b) In order that the Director may determine whether an individual seeking to have his or her name placed upon the register has the qualifications specified in paragraph (a) of this section, satisfactory proof of good moral character and repute and of sufficient basic training in scientific and technical matters must be submitted to the Director. Except as provided in this paragraph, each applicant for registration must take and pass an examination which is held from time to time. Each application for admission to take the examination for registration must be accompanied by the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(1) of this subchapter. The taking of an examination may be waived in the case of any individual who has actively served for at least four years in the patent examining corps of the Office. The examination will not be administered as a mere academic exercise.

(c) Within two months from the date an applicant is notified that he or she failed an examination, the applicant may request regrading of the examination upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(6). Any applicant requesting regrading shall particularly point out the errors which the applicant believed occurred in the grading of his or her examination.

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.8 Oath and registration fee.

Before an individual may have his or her name entered on the register of attorneys and agents, the individual must, after his or her application is approved, subscribe and swear to an oath or make a declaration prescribed by the Commissioner and pay the registration fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(2) of this subchapter.

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.9 Limited recognition in patent cases.

(a) Any individual not registered under § 10.6 may, upon a showing of circumstances which render it necessary or justifiable, be given limited recognition by the Director to prosecute as attorney or agent a specified application or specified applications, but limited recognition under this paragraph shall not extend further than the application or applications specified.

(b) When registration of a resident alien under paragraphs (a) or (b) of § 10.6 is not appropriate, the resident alien may be given limited recognition as may be appropriate under paragraph (a) of this section.

(c) An individual not registered under § 10.6 may, if appointed by applicant to do so, prosecute an international application only before the U.S. International Searching Authority and the U.S. International

Preliminary Examining Authority, provided: the individual has the right to practice before the national office with which the international application is filed (PCT Art. 49, Rule 90 and § 1.455 or before the International Bureau when acting as Receiving Office pursuant to PCT Rules 83.1bis and 90.1).

[Added 50 FR 5174, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (c) added, 58 FR 4335, Jan. 14, 1993, effective May 1, 1993; para. (c) amended, 60 FR 21438, May 2, 1995, effective June 1, 1995]

37 CFR 10.10 Restrictions on practice in patent cases.

(a) Only practitioners who are registered under § 10.6 or individuals given limited recognition under § 10.9 will be permitted to prosecute patent applications of others before the Office.

(b) No individual who has served in the patent examining corps of the Office may practice before the Office after termination of his or her service, unless he or she signs a written undertaking.

- (1) Not to prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application pending in any patent examining group during his or her period of service therein and
- (2) Not to prepare or prosecute or to assist in any manner in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application of another
 - (i) assigned to such group for examination and
 - (ii) filed within two years after the date he or she left such group, without written authorization of the Director. Associated and related classes in other patent examining groups may be required to be included in the undertaking or designated classes may be excluded from the undertaking.

When an application for registration is made after resignation from the Office, the applicant will not be registered if he or she has prepared or prosecuted or assisted in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application as indicated in the paragraph. Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of any patent application contrary to the provisions of this paragraph shall constitute misconduct under § 10.23(c)(13) of this part.

(c) A practitioner who is an employee of the Office cannot prosecute or aid in any manner in the prosecution of any patent application before the Office.

(d) Practice before the Office by Government employees is subject to any applicable conflict of interest laws, regulations or codes of professional responsibility.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; revised 53 FR 33950, Oct. 4, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988; corrected 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988]

37 CFR 10.11 Removing names from the register.

(a) Registered attorneys and agents shall notify the Director of any change of address. Any notification to the Director of any change of address shall be separate from any notice of change of address filed in individual applications.

(b) A letter may be addressed to any individual on the register, at the address of which separate notice was last received by the Director, for the purpose of ascertaining whether such individual desires to remain on the register. The name of any individual failing to reply and give any information requested by the Director within a time limit specified will be removed from the register and the names of individuals so removed will be published in the Official Gazette. The name of any individual so removed may be reinstated on the register as may be appropriate and upon payment of the fee set forth in § 1.21(a)(3) of this subchapter.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.12 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.13 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.14 Individuals who may practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(a) Attorneys. Any individual who is an attorney may represent others before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases. An attorney is not required to apply for registration or recognition to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.



(b) Non-lawyers. Individuals who are not attorneys are not recognized to practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases, except that individuals not attorneys who were recognized to practice before the Office in trademark cases under this chapter prior to January 1, 1957, will be recognized as agents to continue practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(c) Foreigners. Any foreign attorney or agent not a resident of the United States who shall prove to the satisfaction of the Director that he or she is registered or in good standing before the patent or trademark office of the country in which he or she resides and practices, may be recognized for the limited purpose of representing parties located in such country before the Office in the presentation and prosecution of trademark cases, provided: The patent or trademark office of such country allows substantially reciprocal privileges to those permitted to practice in trademark cases before the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Recognition under this paragraph shall continue only during the period that the conditions specified in this paragraph obtain.

(d) Recognition of any individual under this section shall not be construed as sanctioning or authorizing the performance of any act regarded in the jurisdiction where performed as the unauthorized practice of law.

(e) No individual other than those specified in paragraphs (a), (b), and (c) of this section will be permitted to practice before the Office in trademark cases. Any individual may appear in a trademark or other non-patent case in his or her own behalf. Any individual may appear in a trademark case for

- (1) a firm of which he or she is a member or
- (2) a corporation or association of which he or she is an officer and which he or she is authorized to represent, if such firm, corporation, or association is a party to a trademark proceeding pending before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.15 Refusal to recognize a practitioner.

Any practitioner authorized to appear before the Office may be suspended or excluded in accordance with the provisions of this part. Any practitioner who is suspended or excluded under this subpart or removed under § 10.11(b) shall not be entitled to practice before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.16 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.17 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.18 Signature and certificate of practitioner.

(a) Except where a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of a personally signed piece of correspondence is permitted to be filed pursuant to § 1.4 of this chapter, every piece of correspondence filed by a practitioner on behalf of himself or herself on representing an applicant or a party to a proceeding in the Patent and Trademark Office must bear an original signature personally signed in permanent ink by such practitioner except for correspondence which is required to be signed by the applicant or party. The signature of a practitioner on correspondence filed by the practitioner, regardless of whether the correspondence has an original signature or is a copy, including a photocopy or facsimile transmission, of correspondence bearing an original signature, constitutes a certificate that:

- (1) The correspondence has been read by the practitioner;
- (2) The filing of the correspondence is authorized;
- (3) To the best of practitioner's knowledge, information, and belief, there is good ground to support the correspondence, including any allegations of improper conduct contained or alleged therein; and
- (4) The correspondence is not interposed for delay.

(b) Any practitioner knowingly violating the provisions of this section is subject to disciplinary action. See § 10.23(c)(15).

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (a) amended, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 22, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 10.19 [Reserved]

**PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CODE OF PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY**

37 CFR 10.20 Canons and Disciplinary Rules.

(a) Canons are set out in §§ 10.21, 10.30, 10.46, 10.56, 10.61, 10.76, 10.83, 10.100, and 10.110. Canons are statements of axiomatic norms, expressing in general terms the standards of professional conduct expected of practitioners in their relationships with the public, with the legal system, and with the legal profession.

(b) Disciplinary Rules are set out in §§ 10.22–10.24, 10.31–10.40, 10.47–10.57, 10.62–10.68, 10.77, 10.78, 10.84, 10.85, 10.87–10.89, 10.92, 10.93, 10.101–10.103, 10.111, and 10.112. Disciplinary Rules are mandatory in character and state the minimum level of conduct below which no practitioner can fall without being subjected to disciplinary action.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.21 Canon 1.

A practitioner should assist in maintaining the integrity and competence of the legal profession.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.22 Maintaining integrity and competence of the legal profession.

(a) A practitioner is subject to discipline if the practitioner has made a materially false statement in, or if the practitioner has deliberately failed to disclose a material fact requested in connection with, the practitioner's application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court or any State court or his or her authority to otherwise practice before the Office in trademark and other non-patent cases.

(b) A practitioner shall not further the application for registration or membership in the bar of any United States court, State court, or administrative agency of another person known by the practitioner to be unqualified in respect to character, education, or other relative attribute.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.23 Misconduct.

(a) A practitioner shall not engage in disreputable or gross misconduct.

(b) A practitioner shall not:

- (1) Violate a Disciplinary Rule.
- (2) Circumvent a Disciplinary Rule through actions of another.
- (3) Engage in illegal conduct involving moral turpitude.
- (4) Engage in conduct involving dishonesty, fraud, deceit, or misrepresentation.
- (5) Engage in conduct that is prejudicial to the administration of justice.
- (6) Engage in any other conduct that adversely reflects on the practitioner's fitness to practice before the Office.

(c) Conduct which constitutes a violation of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section includes, but is not limited to:

- (1) Conviction of a criminal offense involving moral turpitude, dishonesty, or breach of trust.
- (2) Knowingly giving false or misleading information or knowingly participating in a material way in giving false or misleading information, to:
 - (i) A client in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.
 - (ii) The Office or any employee of the Office.
- (3) Misappropriation of, or failure to properly or timely remit, funds received by a practitioner or the practitioner's firm from a client to pay a fee which the client is required by law to pay to the Office.



- (4) Directly or indirectly improperly influencing, attempting to improperly influence, offering or agreeing to improperly influence, or attempting to offer or agree to improperly influence an official action of any employee of the Office by:
 - (i) Use of threats, false accusations, duress, or coercion,
 - (ii) An offer of any special inducement or promise of advantage, or
 - (iii) Improperly bestowing of any gift, favor, or thing of value.
- (5) Suspension or disbarment from practice as an attorney or agent on ethical grounds by any duly constituted authority of a State or the United States or, in the case of a practitioner who resides in a foreign country or is registered under § 10.6(c), by any duly constituted authority of:
 - (i) A State,
 - (ii) The United States, or
 - (iii) The country in which the practitioner resides.
- (6) Knowingly aiding or abetting a practitioner suspended or excluded from practice before the Office in engaging in unauthorized practice before the Office under § 10.158.
- (7) Knowingly withholding from the Office information identifying a patent or patent application of another from which one or more claims have been copied. See §§ 1.604(b) and 1.607(c) of this subchapter.
- (8) Failing to inform a client or former client or failing to timely notify the Office of an inability to notify a client or former client of correspondence received from the Office or the client's or former client's opponent in an inter partes proceeding before the Office when the correspondence
 - (i) could have a significant effect on a matter pending before the Office,
 - (ii) is received by the practitioner on behalf of a client or former client and
 - (iii) is correspondence of which a reasonable practitioner would believe under the circumstances the client or former client should be notified.
- (9) Knowingly misusing a "Certificate of Mailing or Transmission" under § 1.8 of this chapter or a certificate of "Express Mail" under § 1.10 of this chapter.
- (10) Knowingly violating or causing to be violated the requirements of § 1.56 or § 1.555 of this subchapter.
- (11) Knowingly filing or causing to be filed an application containing any material alteration made in the application papers after the signing of the accompanying oath or declaration without identifying the alteration at the time of filing the application papers.
- (12) Knowingly filing, or causing to be filed, a frivolous complaint alleging a violation by a practitioner of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility.
- (13) Knowingly preparing or prosecuting or providing assistance in the preparation or prosecution of a patent application in violation of an undertaking signed under § 10.10(b).
- (14) Knowingly failing to advise the Director in writing of any change which would preclude continued registration under § 10.6.
- (15) Knowingly signing a paper filed in the Office in violation of the provisions of § 10.18 or making a scandalous or indecent statement in a paper filed in the Office.
- (16) Willfully refusing to reveal or report knowledge or evidence to the Director contrary to § 10.24 or paragraph (b) of § 10.131.
- (17) Representing before the Office in a patent case either a joint venture comprising an inventor and an invention developer or an inventor referred to the registered practitioner by an invention developer when
 - (i) the registered practitioner knows, or has been advised by the Office, that a formal complaint filed by a federal or state agency, based on any violation of any law relating to securities, unfair methods of competition, unfair or deceptive acts or practices, mail fraud, or other civil or criminal conduct, is pending before a federal

or state court or federal or state agency, or has been resolved unfavorably by such court or agency, against the invention developer in connection with invention development services and

- (ii) the registered practitioner fails to fully advise the inventor of the existence of the pending complaint or unfavorable resolution thereof prior to undertaking or continuing representation of the joint venture or inventor.

“Invention developer” means any person, and any agent, employee, officer, partner, or independent contractor thereof, who is not a registered practitioner and who advertises invention development services in media of general circulation or who enters into contracts for invention development services with customers as a result of such advertisement. “Invention development services” means acts of invention development required or promised to be performed, or actually performed, or both, by an invention developer for a customer. “Invention development” means the evaluation, perfection, marketing, brokering, or promotion of an invention on behalf of a customer by an invention developer, including a patent search, preparation of a patent application, or any other act done by an invention developer for consideration toward the end of procuring or attempting to procure a license, buyer, or patent for an invention. “Customer” means any individual who has made an invention and who enters into a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to the invention by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than \$5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention). “Contract for invention development services” means a contract for invention development services with an invention developer with respect to an invention made by a customer by which the inventor becomes obligated to pay the invention developer less than \$5,000 (not to include any additional sums which the invention developer is to receive as a result of successful development of the invention).

- (18) In the absence of information sufficient to establish a reasonable belief that fraud or inequitable conduct has occurred, alleging before a tribunal that anyone has committed a fraud on the Office or engaged in inequitable conduct in a proceeding before the Office.
- (19) Action by an employee of the Office contrary to the provisions set forth in § 10.10(c).
- (20) Knowing practice by a Government employee contrary to applicable Federal conflict of interest laws, or regulations of the Department, agency, or commission employing said individual.

(d) A practitioner who acts with reckless indifference to whether a representation is true or false is chargeable with knowledge of its falsity. Deceitful statements of half-truths or concealment of material facts shall be deemed actual fraud within the meaning of this part.

[Added 50 FR 5175, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985; 50 FR 25980, June 24, 1985; paras. (c)(13), (19) & (20), 53 FR 33950, Oct. 4, 1988, effective Nov. 4, 1988; corrected 53 FR 41278, Oct. 20, 1988; paras. (c)(10) & (c)(11), 57 FR 2021, Jan. 17, 1992, effective Mar. 16, 1992; para. (c)(a) amended, 58 FR 54494, Oct. 2, 1993, effective Nov. 22, 1993]

37 CFR 10.24 Disclosure of information to authorities.

(a) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge of a violation of a Disciplinary Rule shall report such knowledge to the Director.

(b) A practitioner possessing unprivileged knowledge or evidence concerning another practitioner, employee of the Office, or a judge shall reveal fully such knowledge or evidence upon proper request of a tribunal or other authority empowered to investigate or act upon the conduct of practitioners, employees of the Office, or judges.

[Added 50 FR 5176, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.25 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.29 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.30 Canon 2.

A practitioner should assist the legal profession in fulfilling its duty to make legal counsel available.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.31 Communications concerning a practitioner's services.

(a) No practitioner shall with respect to any prospective business before the Office, by word, circular, letter, or advertising, with intent to defraud in any manner, deceive, mislead, or threaten any prospective applicant or other person having immediate or prospective business before the Office.

(b) A practitioner may not use the name of a Member of either House of Congress or of an individual in the service of the United States in advertising the practitioner's practice before the Office.

(c) Unless authorized under § 10.14(b), a non-lawyer practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice before the Office in trademark cases.

(d) Unless a practitioner is an attorney, the practitioner shall not hold himself or herself out:

(1) To be an attorney or lawyer or

(2) As authorized to practice before the Office in non-patent and trademark cases.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.32 Advertising.

(a) Subject to § 10.31, a practitioner may advertise services through public media, including a telephone directory, legal directory, newspaper, or other periodical, radio, or television, or through written communications not involving solicitation as defined by § 10.33.

(b) A practitioner shall not give anything of value to a person for recommending the practitioner's services, except that a practitioner may pay the reasonable cost of advertising or written communication permitted by this section and may pay the usual charges of a not-for-profit lawyer referral service or other legal service organization.

(c) Any communication made pursuant to this section shall include the name of at least one practitioner responsible for its content.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.33 Direct contact with prospective clients.

A practitioner may not solicit professional employment from a prospective client with whom the practitioner has no family or prior professional relationship, by mail, in-person, or otherwise, when a significant motive for the practitioner's doing so is the practitioner's pecuniary gain under circumstances evidencing undue influence, intimidation, or overreaching. The term "solicit" includes contact in person, by telephone or telegraph, by letter or other writing, or by other communication directed to a specific recipient, but does not include letters addressed or advertising circulars distributed generally to persons not specifically known to need legal services of the kind provided by the practitioner in a particular manner, but who are so situated that they might in general find such services useful.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.34 Communications of fields of practice.

A registered practitioner may state or imply that the practitioner is a specialist as follows:

(a) A registered practitioner who is an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Attorney," "Patent Lawyer," "Registered Patent Attorney," or a substantially similar designation.

(b) A registered practitioner who is not an attorney may use the designation "Patents," "Patent Agent," "Registered Patent Agent," or a substantially similar designation, except that any practitioner who was registered prior to November 15, 1938, may refer to himself or herself as a "patent attorney."

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.35 Firm names and letterheads.

(a) A practitioner shall not use a firm name, letterhead, or other professional designation that violates § 10.31. A trade name may be used by a practitioner in private practice if it does not imply a current connection with a government agency or with a public or charitable legal services organization and is not otherwise in violation of § 10.31.

(b) Practitioners may state or imply that they practice in a partnership or other organization only when that is the fact.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.36 Fees for legal services.

(a) A practitioner shall not enter into an agreement for, charge, or collect an illegal or clearly excessive fee.

(b) A fee is clearly excessive when, after a review of the facts, a practitioner of ordinary prudence would be left with a definite and firm conviction that the fee is in excess of a reasonable fee. Factors to be considered as guides in determining the reasonableness of a fee include the following:

- (1) The time and labor required, the novelty and difficulty of the questions involved, and the skill requisite to perform the legal service properly.
- (2) The likelihood, if apparent to the client, that the acceptance of the particular employment will preclude other employment by the practitioner.
- (3) The fee customarily charged for similar legal services.
- (4) The amount involved and the results obtained.
- (5) The time limitations imposed by the client or by the circumstances.
- (6) The nature and length of the professional relationship with the client.
- (7) The experience, reputation, and ability of the practitioner or practitioners performing the services.
- (8) Whether the fee is fixed or contingent.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.37 Division of fees among practitioners.

(a) A practitioner shall not divide a fee for legal services with another practitioner who is not a partner in or associate of the practitioner's law firm or law office, unless:

- (1) The client consents to employment of the other practitioner after a full disclosure that a division of fees will be made.
- (2) The division is made in proportion to the services performed and responsibility assumed by each.
- (3) The total fee of the practitioners does not clearly exceed reasonable compensation for all legal services rendered to the client.

(b) This section does not prohibit payment to a former partner or associate pursuant to a separation or retirement agreement.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.38 Agreements restricting the practice of a practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall not be a party to or participate in a partnership or employment agreement with another practitioner that restricts the right of a practitioner to practice before the Office after the termination of a relationship created by the agreement, except as a condition to payment of retirement benefits.

(b) In connection with the settlement of a controversy or suit, a practitioner shall not enter into an agreement that restricts the practitioner's right to practice before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.39 Acceptance of employment.

A practitioner shall not accept employment on behalf of a person if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such person wishes to:

(a) Bring a legal action, commence a proceeding before the Office, conduct a defense, assert a position in any proceeding pending before the Office, or otherwise have steps taken for the person, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any other person.

(b) Present a claim or defense in litigation or any proceeding before the Office that it is not warranted under existing law, unless it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.

[Added 50 FR 5177, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.40 Withdrawal from employment.

(a) A practitioner shall not withdraw from employment in a proceeding before the Office without permission from the Office (see §§ 1.36 and 2.19 of this subchapter). In any event, a practitioner shall not withdraw from employment until the practitioner has taken reasonable steps to avoid foreseeable prejudice to the rights of the client, including giving due notice to his or her client, allowing time for employment of another practitioner, delivering to the client all papers and property to which the client is entitled, and complying with applicable laws and rules. A practitioner who withdraws from employment shall refund promptly any part of a fee paid in advance that has not been earned.

(b) **Mandatory withdrawal.** A practitioner representing a client before the Office shall withdraw from employment if:

- (1) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the client is bringing a legal action, commencing a proceeding before the Office, conducting a defense, or asserting a position in litigation or any proceeding pending before the Office, or is otherwise having steps taken for the client, merely for the purpose of harassing or maliciously injuring any person;
- (2) The practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner's continued employment will result in violation of a Disciplinary Rule;
- (3) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively; or
- (4) The practitioner is discharged by the client.

(c) **Permissive withdrawal.** If paragraph (b) of this section is not applicable, a practitioner may not request permission to withdraw in matters pending before the Office unless such request or such withdrawal is because:

- (1) The petitioner's client:
 - (i) Insists upon presenting a claim or defense that is not warranted under existing law and cannot be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law;
 - (ii) Personally seeks to pursue an illegal course of conduct;
 - (iii) Insists that the practitioner pursue a course of conduct that is illegal or that is prohibited under a Disciplinary Rule;
 - (iv) By other conduct renders it unreasonably difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;
 - (v) Insists, in a matter not pending before a tribunal, that the practitioner engage in conduct that is contrary to the judgment and advice of the practitioner but not prohibited under the Disciplinary Rule; or
 - (vi) Has failed to pay one or more bills rendered by the practitioner for an unreasonable period of time or has failed to honor an agreement to pay a retainer in advance of the performance of legal services.
- (2) The practitioner's continued employment is likely to result in a violation of a Disciplinary Rule;

- (3) The practitioner's inability to work with co-counsel indicates that the best interests of the client likely will be served by withdrawal;
- (4) The practitioner's mental or physical condition renders it difficult for the practitioner to carry out the employment effectively;
- (5) The practitioner's client knowingly and freely assents to termination of the employment; or
- (6) The practitioner believes in good faith, in a proceeding pending before the Office, that the Office will find the existence of other good cause for withdrawal.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.41 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.42 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.43 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.45 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.46 Canon 3.

A practitioner should assist in preventing the unauthorized practice of law.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.47 Aiding unauthorized practice of law.

- (a) A practitioner shall not aid a non-practitioner in the unauthorized practice of law before the Office.
- (b) A practitioner shall not aid a suspended or excluded practitioner in the practice of law before the Office.
- (c) A practitioner shall not aid a non-lawyer in the unauthorized practice of law.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.48 Sharing legal fees.

A practitioner or a firm of practitioners shall not share legal fees with a non-practitioner except that:

- (a) An agreement by a practitioner with the practitioner's firm, partner, or associate may provide for the payment of money, over a reasonable period of time after the practitioner's death, to the practitioner's estate or to one or more specified persons.
- (b) A practitioner who undertakes to complete unfinished legal business of a deceased practitioner may pay to the estate of the deceased practitioner that proportion of the total compensation which fairly represents the services rendered by the deceased practitioner.
- (c) A practitioner or firm of practitioners may include non-practitioner employees in a compensation or retirement plan, even though the plan is based in whole or in part on a profit-sharing arrangement, providing such plan does not circumvent another Disciplinary Rule.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.49 Forming a partnership with a non-practitioner.

A practitioner shall not form a partnership with a non-practitioner if any of the activities of the partnership consist of the practice of patent, trademark, or other law before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.50 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.51 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.52 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.53 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.54 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.55 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.56 **Canon 4.**

A practitioner should preserve the confidences and secrets of a client.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.57 **Preservation of confidences and secrets of a client.**

(a) “Confidence” refers to information protected by the attorney-client or agent-client privilege under applicable law. “Secret” refers to the other information gained in the professional relationship that the client has requested be held inviolate or the disclosure of which would be embarrassing or would be likely to be detrimental to the client.

(b) Except when permitted under paragraph (c) of this section, a practitioner shall not knowingly:

- (1) Reveal a confidence or secret of a client.
- (2) Use a confidence or secret of a client to the disadvantage of the client.
- (3) Use a confidence or secret of a client for the advantage of the practitioner or of a third person, unless the client consents after full disclosure.

(c) A practitioner may reveal:

- (1) Confidences or secrets with the consent of the client affected but only after a full disclosure to the client.
- (2) Confidences or secrets when permitted under Disciplinary Rules or required by law or court order.
- (3) The intention of a client to commit a crime and the information necessary to prevent the crime.
- (4) Confidences or secrets necessary to establish or collect the practitioner’s fee or to defend the practitioner or the practitioner’s employees or associates against an accusation of wrongful conduct.

(d) A practitioner shall exercise reasonable care to prevent the practitioner’s employees, associates, and others whose services are utilized by the practitioner from disclosing or using confidences or secrets of a client, except that a practitioner may reveal the information allowed by paragraph (c) of this section through an employee.

[Added 50 FR 5178, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.58 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.59 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.60 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.61 **Canon 5.**

A practitioner should exercise independent professional judgment on behalf of a client.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.62 **Refusing employment when the interest of the practitioner may impair the practitioner’s independent professional judgment.**

(a) Except with the consent of a client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not accept employment if the exercise of the practitioner’s professional judgment on behalf of the client will be or reasonably may be affected by the practitioner’s own financial, business, property, or personal interests.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept employment in a proceeding before the Office if the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness, except that the practitioner may undertake the employment and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify:

- (1) If the testimony will relate solely to an uncontested matter.
- (2) If the testimony will relate solely to a matter of formality and there is no reason to believe that substantial evidence will be offered in opposition to the testimony.
- (3) If the testimony will relate solely to the nature and value of legal services rendered in the case by the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to the client.
- (4) As to any matter, if refusal would work a substantial hardship on the client because of the distinctive value of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm as counsel in the particular case.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.63 Withdrawal when the practitioner becomes a witness.

(a) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding in the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm ought to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness on behalf of a practitioner's client, the practitioner shall withdraw from the conduct of the proceeding and the practitioner's firm, if any, shall not continue representation in the proceeding, except that the practitioner may continue the representation and the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may testify in the circumstances enumerated in paragraphs (1) through (4) of § 10.62(b).

(b) If, after undertaking employment in a proceeding before the Office, a practitioner learns or it is obvious that the practitioner or another practitioner in the practitioner's firm may be asked to sign an affidavit to be filed in the Office or be called as a witness other than on behalf of the practitioner's client, the practitioner may continue the representation until it is apparent that the practitioner's affidavit or testimony is or may be prejudicial to the practitioner's client.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.64 Avoiding acquisition of interest in litigation or proceeding before the Office.

(a) A practitioner shall not acquire a proprietary interest in the subject matter of a proceeding before the Office which the practitioner is conducting for a client, except that the practitioner may:

- (1) Acquire a lien granted by law to secure the practitioner's fee or expenses; or
- (2) Contract with a client for a reasonable contingent fee; or
- (3) In a patent case, take an interest in the patent as part or all of his or her fee.

(b) While representing a client in connection with a contemplated or pending proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not advance or guarantee financial assistance to a client, except that a practitioner may advance or guarantee the expenses of going forward in a proceeding before the Office including fees required by law to be paid to the Office, expenses of investigation, expenses of medical examination, and costs of obtaining and presenting evidence, provided the client remains ultimately liable for such expenses. A practitioner may, however, advance any fee required to prevent or remedy an abandonment of a client's application by reason of an act or omission attributable to the practitioner and not to the client, whether or not the client is ultimately liable for such fee.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.65 Limiting business relations with a client.

A practitioner shall not enter into a business transaction with a client if they have differing interests therein and if the client expects the practitioner to exercise professional judgment therein for the protection of the client, unless the client has consented after full disclosure.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]



37 CFR 10.66 Refusing to accept or continue employment if the interests of another client may impair the independent professional judgment of the practitioner.

(a) A practitioner shall decline proffered employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the acceptance of the proffered employment, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(b) A practitioner shall not continue multiple employment if the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment in behalf of a client will be or is likely to be adversely affected by the practitioner's representation of another client, or if it would be likely to involve the practitioner in representing differing interests, except to the extent permitted under paragraph (c) of this section.

(c) In the situations covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, a practitioner may represent multiple clients if it is obvious that the practitioner can adequately represent the interest of each and if each consents to the representation after full disclosure of the possible effect of such representation on the exercise of the practitioner's independent professional judgment on behalf of each.

(d) If a practitioner is required to decline employment or to withdraw from employment under a Disciplinary Rule, no partner, or associate, or any other practitioner affiliated with the practitioner or the practitioner's firm, may accept or continue such employment unless otherwise ordered by the Director or Commissioner.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.67 Settling similar claims of clients.

A practitioner who represents two or more clients shall not make or participate in the making of an aggregate settlement of the claims of or against the practitioner's clients, unless each client has consented to the settlement after being advised of the existence and nature of all the claims involved in the proposed settlement, of the total amount of the settlement, and of the participation of each person in the settlement.

[Added 50 FR 5179, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.68 Avoiding influence by others than the client.

(a) Except with the consent of the practitioner's client after full disclosure, a practitioner shall not:

- (1) Accept compensation from one other than the practitioner's client for the practitioner's legal services to or for the client.
- (2) Accept from one other than the practitioner's client any thing of value related to the practitioner's representation of or the practitioner's employment by the client.

(b) A practitioner shall not permit a person who recommends, employs, or pays the practitioner to render legal services for another, to direct or regulate the practitioner's professional judgment in rendering such legal services.

(c) A practitioner shall not practice with or in the form of a professional corporation or association authorized to practice law for a profit, if a non-practitioner has the right to direct or control the professional judgment of a practitioner.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.69 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.70 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.71 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.72 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.73 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.74 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.75 [Reserved]



37 CFR 10.76 Canon 6.

A practitioner should represent a client competently.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.77 Failing to act competently.

A practitioner shall not:

- (a) Handle a legal matter which the practitioner knows or should know that the practitioner is not competent to handle, without associating with the practitioner another practitioner who is competent to handle it.
- (b) Handle a legal matter without preparation adequate in the circumstances.
- (c) Neglect a legal matter entrusted to the practitioner.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.78 Limiting liability to client.

A practitioner shall not attempt to exonerate himself or herself from, or limit his or her liability to, a client for his or her personal malpractice.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.79 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.80 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.81 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.82 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.83 Canon 7.

A practitioner should represent a client zealously within the bounds of the law.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.84 Representing a client zealously.

- (a) A practitioner shall not intentionally:
 - (1) Fail to seek the lawful objectives of a client through reasonable available means permitted by law and the Disciplinary Rules, except as provided by paragraph (b) of this section. A practitioner does not violate the provisions of this section, however, by acceding to reasonable requests of opposing counsel which do not prejudice the rights of the client, by being punctual in fulfilling all professional commitments, by avoiding offensive tactics, or by treating with courtesy and consideration all persons involved in the legal process.
 - (2) Fail to carry out a contract of employment entered into with a client for professional services, but a practitioner may withdraw as permitted under §§ 10.40, 10.63, and 10.66.
 - (3) Prejudice or damage a client during the course of a professional relationship, except as required under this part.
- (b) In representation of a client, a practitioner may:
 - (1) Where permissible, exercise professional judgment to waive or fail to assert a right or position of the client.
 - (2) Refuse to aid or participate in conduct that the practitioner believes to be unlawful, even though there is some support for an argument that the conduct is legal.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.85 Representing a client within the bounds of the law.

- (a) In representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:
 - (1) Initiate or defend any proceeding before the Office, assert a position, conduct a defense, delay a trial or proceeding before the Office, or take other action on behalf of the

practitioner's client when the practitioner knows or when it is obvious that such action would serve merely to harass or maliciously injure another.

- (2) Knowingly advance a claim or defense that is unwarranted under existing law, except that a practitioner may advance such claim or defense if it can be supported by good faith argument for an extension, modification, or reversal of existing law.
 - (3) Conceal or knowingly fail to disclose that which the practitioner is required by law to reveal.
 - (4) Knowingly use perjured testimony or false evidence.
 - (5) Knowingly make a false statement of law or fact.
 - (6) Participate in the creation or preservation of evidence when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the evidence is false.
 - (7) Counsel or assist a client in conduct that the practitioner knows to be illegal or fraudulent.
 - (8) Knowingly engage in other illegal conduct or conduct contrary to a Disciplinary Rule.
- (b) A practitioner who receives information clearly establishing that:
- (1) A client has, in the course of the representation, perpetrated a fraud upon a person or tribunal shall promptly call upon the client to rectify the same, and if the client refuses or is unable to do so the practitioner shall reveal the fraud to the affected person or tribunal.
 - (2) A person other than a client has perpetrated a fraud upon a tribunal shall promptly reveal the fraud to the tribunal.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.86 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.87 Communicating with one of adverse interest.

During the course of representation of a client, a practitioner shall not:

- (a) Communicate or cause another to communicate on the subject of the representation with a party the practitioner knows to be represented by another practitioner in that matter unless the practitioner has the prior consent of the other practitioner representing such other party or is authorized by law to do so. It is not improper, however, for a practitioner to encourage a client to meet with an opposing party for settlement discussions.
- (b) Give advice to a person who is not represented by a practitioner other than the advice to secure counsel, if the interests of such person are to have a reasonable possibility of being in conflict with the interests of the practitioner's client.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.88 Threatening criminal prosecution.

A practitioner shall not present, participate in presenting, or threaten to present criminal charges solely to obtain an advantage in any prospective or pending proceeding before the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.89 Conduct in proceedings.

- (a) A practitioner shall not disregard or advise a client to disregard any provision of this Subchapter or a decision of the Office made in the course of a proceeding before the Office, but the practitioner may take appropriate steps in good faith to test the validity of such provision or decision.
- (b) In presenting a matter to the Office, a practitioner shall disclose:
 - (1) Controlling legal authority known to the practitioner to be directly adverse to the position of the client and which is not disclosed by opposing counsel or an employee of the Office.
 - (2) Unless privileged or irrelevant, the identities of the client the practitioner represents and of the persons who employed the practitioner.



- (c) In appearing in a professional capacity before a tribunal, a practitioner shall not:
- (1) State or allude to any matter that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case or that will not be supported by admissible evidence.
 - (2) Ask any question that the practitioner has no reasonable basis to believe is relevant to the case and that is intended to degrade a witness or other person.
 - (3) Assert the practitioner's personal knowledge of the facts in issue, except when testifying as a witness.
 - (4) Assert the practitioner's personal opinion as to the justness of a cause, as to the credibility of a witness, as to the culpability of a civil litigant, or as to the guilt or innocence of an accused; but the practitioner may argue, on the practitioner's analysis of the evidence, for any position or conclusion with respect to the matters stated herein.
 - (5) Engage in undignified or discourteous conduct before the Office (see § 1.3 of the subchapter).
 - (6) Intentionally or habitually violate any provision of this subchapter or established rule of evidence.

[Added 50 FR 5180, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.90 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.91 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.92 Contact with witnesses.

- (a) A practitioner shall not suppress any evidence that the practitioner or the practitioner's client has a legal obligation to reveal or produce.
- (b) A practitioner shall not advise or cause a person to be sequestered or to leave the jurisdiction of a tribunal for the purpose of making the person unavailable as a witness therein.
- (c) A practitioner shall not pay, offer to pay, or acquiesce in payment of compensation to a witness contingent upon the content of the witness' affidavit, testimony or the outcome of the case. But a practitioner may advance, guarantee, or acquiesce in the payment of:
- (1) Expenses reasonably incurred by a witness in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.
 - (2) Reasonable compensation to a witness for the witness' loss of time in attending, testifying, or making an affidavit.
 - (3) A reasonable fee for the professional services of an expert witness.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.93 Contact with officials.

- (a) A practitioner shall not give or lend anything of value to a judge, official, or employee of a tribunal under circumstances which might give the appearance that the gift or loan is made to influence official action.
- (b) In an adversary proceeding, including any inter partes proceeding before the Office, a practitioner shall not communicate, or cause another to communicate, as to the merits of the cause with a judge, official, or Office employee before whom the proceeding is pending, except:
- (1) In the course of official proceedings in the cause.
 - (2) In writing if the practitioner promptly delivers a copy of the writing to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.
 - (3) Orally upon adequate notice to opposing counsel or to the adverse party if the adverse party is not represented by a practitioner.
 - (4) As otherwise authorized by law.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.94 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.95 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.96 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.97 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.98 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.99 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.100 Canon 8.

A practitioner should assist in improving the legal system.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.101 Action as a public official.

(a) A practitioner who holds public office shall not:

- (1) Use the practitioner's public position to obtain, or attempt to obtain, a special advantage in legislative matters for the practitioner or for a client under circumstances where the practitioner knows or it is obvious that such action is not in the public interest.
- (2) Use the practitioner's public position to influence, or attempt to influence, a tribunal to act in favor of the practitioner or of a client.
- (3) Accept any thing of value from any person when the practitioner knows or it is obvious that the offer is for the purpose of influencing the practitioner's action as a public official.

(b) A practitioner who is an officer or employee of the United States shall not practice before the Office in patent cases except as provided in §§ 10.10(c) and 10.10(d).

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (b) amended, 54 FR 6520, Feb. 13, 1989]

37 CFR 10.102 Statements concerning officials.

(a) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false statements of fact concerning the qualifications of a candidate for election or appointment to a judicial office or to a position in the Office.

(b) A practitioner shall not knowingly make false accusations against a judge, other adjudicatory officer, or employee of the Office.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.103 Practitioner candidate for judicial office.

A practitioner who is a candidate for judicial office shall comply with applicable provisions of law.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.104 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.105 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.106 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.107 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.108 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.109 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.110 Canon 9.

A practitioner should avoid even the appearance of professional impropriety.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]



37 CFR 10.111 Avoiding even the appearance of impropriety.

(a) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter upon the merits of which he or she has acted in a judicial capacity.

(b) A practitioner shall not accept private employment in a matter in which he or she had personal responsibility while a public employee.

(c) A practitioner shall not state or imply that the practitioner is able to influence improperly or upon irrelevant grounds any tribunal, legislative body, or public official.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.112 Preserving identity of funds and property of client.

(a) All funds of clients paid to a practitioner or a practitioner's firm, other than advances for costs and expenses, shall be deposited in one or more identifiable bank accounts maintained in the United States or, in the case of a practitioner having an office in a foreign country or registered under § 10.6(c), in the United States or the foreign country.

(b) No funds belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm shall be deposited in the bank accounts required by paragraph (a) of this section except as follows:

- (1) Funds reasonably sufficient to pay bank charges may be deposited therein.
- (2) Funds belonging in part to a client and in part presently or potentially to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm must be deposited therein, but the portion belonging to the practitioner or the practitioner's firm may be withdrawn when due unless the right of the practitioner or the practitioner's firm to receive it is disputed by the client, in which event the disputed portion shall not be withdrawn until the dispute is finally resolved.

(c) A practitioner shall:

- (1) Promptly notify a client of the receipt of the client's funds, securities, or other properties.
- (2) Identify and label securities and properties of a client promptly upon receipt and place them in a safe deposit box or other place of safekeeping as soon as practicable.
- (3) Maintain complete records of all funds, securities, and other properties of a client coming into the possession of the practitioner and render appropriate accounts to the client regarding the funds, securities, or other properties.
- (4) Promptly pay or deliver to the client as requested by a client the funds, securities, or other properties in the possession of the practitioner which the client is entitled to receive.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.113 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.114 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.115 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.116 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.117 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.118 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.119 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.120 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.121 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.122 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.123 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.124 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.125 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.126 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.127 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.128 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.129 [Reserved]

INVESTIGATIONS AND DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

37 CFR 10.130 Reprimand, suspension or exclusion.

(a) The Commissioner may, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, (1) reprimand or (2) suspend or exclude, either generally or in any particular case, any individual, attorney, or agent shown to be incompetent or disreputable, who is guilty of gross misconduct, or who violates a Disciplinary Rule.

(b) Petitions to disqualify a practitioner in ex parte or inter partes cases in the Office are not governed by §§ 10.130 through 10.170 and will be handled on a case-by-case basis under such conditions as the Commissioner deems appropriate.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.131 Investigations.

(a) The Director is authorized to investigate possible violations of Disciplinary Rules by practitioners. See § 10.2(b)(2).

(b) Practitioners shall report and reveal to the Director any knowledge or evidence required by § 10.24. A practitioner shall cooperate with the Director in connection with any investigation under paragraph (a) of this section and with officials of the Office in connection with any disciplinary proceeding instituted under § 10.132(b).

(c) Any nonpractitioner possessing knowledge or information concerning a violation of a Disciplinary Rule by a practitioner may report the violation to the Director. The Director may require that the report be presented in the form of an affidavit.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.132 Initiating a disciplinary proceeding; reference to an administrative law judge.

(a) If after conducting an investigation under § 10.131(a) the Director is of the opinion that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall, after complying where necessary with the provisions of 5 U.S.C. 558(c), call a meeting of the Committee on Discipline. The Committee on Discipline shall then determine as specified in § 10.4(b) whether a disciplinary proceeding shall be instituted under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) If the Committee on Discipline determines that probable cause exists to believe that a practitioner has violated a Disciplinary Rule, the Director shall institute a disciplinary proceeding by filing a complaint under § 10.134. The complaint shall be filed in the Office of the Director. A disciplinary proceeding may result in:

- (1) A reprimand, or
- (2) Suspension or exclusion of a practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) Upon the filing of a complaint under § 10.134, the Commissioner will refer the disciplinary proceeding to an administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.133 Conference between Director and practitioner; resignation.

(a) General. The Director may confer with a practitioner concerning possible violations by the practitioner of a Disciplinary Rule whether or not a disciplinary proceeding has been instituted.



(b) Resignation. Any practitioner who is the subject of an investigation under § 10.131 or against whom a complaint has been filed under § 10.134 may resign from practice before the Office only by submitting with the Director an affidavit stating his or her desire to resign.

(c) If filed prior to the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall state that:

- (1) The resignation is freely and voluntarily proffered;
- (2) The practitioner is not acting under duress or coercion from the Office;
- (3) The practitioner is fully aware of the implications of filing the resignation;
- (4) The practitioner is aware
 - (i) of a pending investigation or
 - (ii) of charges arising from the complaint alleging that he or she is guilty of a violation of the Patent and Trademark Office Code of Professional Responsibility, the nature of which shall be set forth by the practitioner to the satisfaction of the Director;
- (5) The practitioner acknowledges that, if and when he or she applies for reinstatement under § 10.160, the Director will conclusively presume, for the limited purpose of determining the application for reinstatement, that:
 - (i) The facts upon which the complaint is based are true and
 - (ii) The practitioner could not have successfully defended himself or herself against
 - (A) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or
 - (B) charges set out in the complaint filed against the practitioner.

(d) If filed on or after the date set by the administrative law judge for a hearing, the affidavit shall make the statements required by paragraphs (b) (1) through (4) of this section and shall state that:

- (1) The practitioner acknowledges the facts upon which the complaint is based are true; and
- (2) The resignation is being submitted because the practitioner could not successfully defend himself or herself against
 - (i) charges predicated on the violation under investigation or
 - (ii) charges set out in the complaint.

(e) When an affidavit under paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section is received while an investigation is pending, the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner “on consent.” When an affidavit under paragraphs (b) or (c) of this section is received after a complaint under § 10.134 has been filed, the Director shall notify the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge shall enter an order transferring the disciplinary proceeding to the Commissioner and the Commissioner shall enter an order excluding the practitioner “on consent.”

(f) Any practitioner who resigns from practice before the Office under this section and who intends to reapply for admission to practice before the Office must comply with the provisions of § 10.158.

(g) Settlement. Before or after a complaint is filed under § 10.134, a settlement conference may occur between the Director and a practitioner for the purpose of settling any disciplinary matter. If an offer of settlement is made by the Director or the practitioner and is not accepted by the other, no reference to the offer of settlement or its refusal shall be admissible in evidence in the disciplinary proceeding unless both the Director and the practitioner agree in writing.

[Added 50 FR 5181, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.134 Complaint.

- (a) A complaint instituting a disciplinary proceeding shall:
 - (1) Name the practitioner, who may then be referred to as the “respondent.”
 - (2) Give a plain and concise description of the alleged violations of the Disciplinary Rules by the practitioner.
 - (3) State the place and time for filing an answer by the respondent.
 - (4) State that a decision by default may be entered against the respondent if an answer is not timely filed.



(5) Be signed by the Director.

(b) A complaint will be deemed sufficient if it fairly informs the respondent of any violation of the Disciplinary Rules which form the basis for the disciplinary proceeding so that the respondent is able to adequately prepare a defense.

[Added 50 FR 5182, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.135 Service of complaint.

(a) A complaint may be served on a respondent in any of the following methods:

(1) By handing a copy of the complaint personally to the respondent, in which case the individual handing the complaint to the respondent shall file an affidavit with the Director indicating the time and place the complaint was handed to the respondent.

(2) By mailing a copy of the complaint by "Express Mail" or first-class mail to:

- (i) A registered practitioner at the address for which separate notice was last received by the Director or
- (ii) A nonregistered practitioner at the last address for the respondent known to the Director.

(3) By any method mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent.

(b) If a complaint served by mail under paragraph (a)(2) of this section is returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall mail a second copy of the complaint to the respondent. If the second copy of the complaint is also returned by the U.S. Postal Service, the Director shall serve the respondent by publishing an appropriate notice in the Official Gazette for four consecutive weeks, in which case the time for answer shall be at least thirty days from the fourth publication of the notice.

(c) If a respondent is a registered practitioner, the Director may serve simultaneously with the complaint a letter under § 10.11(b). The Director may require the respondent to answer the § 10.11(b) letter within a period of not less than 15 days. An answer to the § 10.11(b) letter shall constitute proof of service. If the respondent fails to answer the § 10.11(b) letter, his or her name will be removed from the register as provided by § 10.11(b).

(d) If the respondent is represented by an attorney under § 10.140(a), a copy of the complaint shall also be served on the attorney.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.136 Answer to complaint.

(a) Time for answer. An answer to a complaint shall be filed within a time set in the complaint which shall be not less than thirty days.

(b) With whom filed. The answer shall be filed in writing with the administrative law judge. The time for filing an answer may be extended once for a period of no more than thirty days by the administrative law judge upon a showing of good cause provided a motion requesting an extension of time is filed within thirty days after the date the complaint is filed by the Director. A copy of the answer shall be served on the Director.

(c) Content. The respondent shall include in the answer a statement of the facts which constitute the grounds of defense and shall specifically admit or deny each allegation set forth in the complaint. The respondent shall not deny a material allegation in the complaint which the respondent knows to be true or state that respondent is without sufficient information to form a belief as to the truth of an allegation when in fact the respondent possesses that information. The respondent shall also state affirmatively special matters of defense.

(d) Failure to deny allegations in complaint. Every allegation in the complaint which is not denied by a respondent in the answer is deemed to be admitted and may be considered proven. No further evidence in respect of that allegation need be received by the administrative law judge at any hearing. Failure to timely file an answer will constitute an admission of the allegations in the complaint.

(e) Reply by the Director. No reply to an answer is required by the Director and any affirmative defense in the answer shall be deemed to be denied. The Director may, however, file a reply if he or she chooses or if ordered by the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]



37 CFR 10.137 Supplemental complaint.

False statements in an answer may be made the basis of a supplemental complaint.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.138 Contested case.

Upon the filing of an answer by the respondent, a disciplinary proceeding shall be regarded as a contested case within the meaning of 35 U.S.C. 24. Evidence obtained by a subpoena issued under 35 U.S.C. 24 shall not be admitted into the record or considered unless leave to proceed under 35 U.S.C. 24 was previously authorized by the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.139 Administrative law judge; appointment; responsibilities; review of interlocutory orders; stays.

(a) Appointment. An administrative law judge, appointed under 5 U.S.C. 3105, shall conduct disciplinary proceedings as provided by this part.

(b) Responsibilities. The administrative law judge shall have authority to:

- (1) Administer oaths and affirmations;
- (2) Make rulings upon motions and other requests;
- (3) Rule upon offers of proof, receive relevant evidence, and examine witnesses;
- (4) Authorize the taking of a deposition of a witness in lieu of personal appearance of the witness before the administrative law judge;
- (5) Determine the time and place of any hearing and regulate its course and conduct;
- (6) Hold or provide for the holding of conferences to settle or simplify the issues.
- (7) Receive and consider oral or written arguments on facts and law;
- (8) Adopt procedures and modify procedures from time to time as occasion requires for the orderly disposition of proceedings;
- (9) Make initial decisions under § 10.154; and
- (10) Perform acts and take measures as necessary to promote the efficient and timely conduct of any disciplinary proceeding.

(c) Time for making initial decision. The administrative law judge shall set times and exercise control over a disciplinary proceeding such that an initial decision under § 10.154 is normally issued within six months of the date a complaint is filed. The administrative law judge may, however, issue an initial decision more than six months after a complaint is filed if in his or her opinion there exist unusual circumstances which preclude issuance of an initial decision within six months of the filing of the complaint.

(d) Review of interlocutory orders. An interlocutory order of an administrative law judge will not be reviewed by the Commissioner except:

- (1) when the administrative law judge shall be of the opinion
 - (i) that the interlocutory order involves a controlling question of procedure or law as to which there is a substantial ground for a difference of opinion and
 - (ii) that an immediate decision by the Commissioner may materially advance the ultimate termination of the disciplinary proceeding; or
- (2) in an extraordinary situation where justice requires review.

(e) Stays pending review of interlocutory order. If the Director or a respondent seeks review of an interlocutory order of an administrative law judge under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, any time period set for taking action by the administrative law judge shall not be stayed unless ordered by the Commissioner or the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]



37 CFR 10.140 Representative for Director or respondent.

(a) A respondent may be represented before the Office in connection with an investigation or disciplinary proceeding by an attorney. The attorney shall file a written declaration that he or she is an attorney within the meaning of § 10.1(c) and shall state:

- (1) The address to which the attorney wants correspondence related to the investigation or disciplinary proceeding sent; and
- (2) A telephone number where the attorney may be reached during normal business hours.

(b) The Commissioner shall designate at least two associate solicitors in the Office of the Solicitor to act as representatives for the Director in disciplinary proceedings. In prosecuting disciplinary proceedings, the designated associate solicitors shall not involve the Solicitor or the Deputy Solicitor. The Solicitor and the Deputy Solicitor shall remain insulated from the investigation and prosecution of all disciplinary proceedings in order that they shall be available as counsel to the Commissioner in deciding disciplinary proceedings.

[Added 50 FR 5183, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.141 Filing of papers.

(a) The provisions of § 1.8 of this subchapter do not apply to disciplinary proceedings.

(b) All papers filed after the complaint and prior to entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the administrative law judge at an address or place designated by the administrative law judge. All papers filed after entry of an initial decision by the administrative law judge shall be filed with the Director. The Director shall promptly forward to the Commissioner any paper which requires action under this part by the Commissioner.

(c) The administrative law judge or the Director may provide for filing papers and other matters by hand or "Express Mail."

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.142 Service of papers.

(a) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent represented by an attorney by:

- (1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the office of the attorney; or
- (2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the attorney at the address provided by the attorney under § 10.140(a)(1); or
- (3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the attorney and a representative for the Director.

(b) All papers other than a complaint shall be served on a respondent who is not represented by an attorney by:

- (1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the respondent; or
- (2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to the respondent at the address to which a complaint may be served or such other address as may be designated in writing by the respondent; or
- (3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and a representative of the Director.

(c) A respondent shall serve on the representative for the Director one copy of each paper filed with the administrative law judge or the Director. A paper may be served on the representative of the Director by:

- (1) Delivering a copy of the paper to the representative; or
- (2) Mailing a copy of the paper by first-class mail or "Express Mail" to an address designated in writing by the representative; or
- (3) Any other method mutually agreeable to the respondent and the representative.

(d) Each paper filed in a disciplinary proceeding shall contain therein a certificate of service indicating:

- (1) The date of which service was made; and



(2) The method by which service was made.

(e) The administrative law judge or the Commissioner may require that a paper be served by hand or by "Express Mail."

(f) Service by mail is completed when the paper mailed in the United States is placed into the custody of the U.S. Postal Service.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.143 Motions.

Motions may be filed with the administrative law judge. The administrative law judge will determine on a case-by-case basis the time period for response to a motion and whether replies to responses will be authorized. No motion shall be filed with the administrative law judge unless such motion is supported by a written statement by the moving party that the moving party or attorney for the moving party has conferred with the opposing party or attorney for the opposing party in an effort in good faith to resolve by agreement the issues raised by the motion and has been unable to reach agreement. If issues raised by a motion are resolved by the parties prior to a decision on the motion by the administrative law judge, the parties shall promptly notify the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.144 Hearings.

(a) The administrative law judge shall preside at hearings in disciplinary proceedings. Hearings will be stenographically recorded and transcribed and the testimony of witnesses will be received under oath or affirmation. The administrative law judge shall conduct hearings in accordance with 5 U.S.C. 556. A copy of the transcript of the hearing shall become part of the record. A copy of the transcript shall be provided to the Director and the respondent at the expense of the Office.

(b) If the respondent to a disciplinary proceeding fails to appear at the hearing after a notice of hearing has been given by the administrative law judge, the administrative law judge may deem the respondent to have waived the right to a hearing and may proceed with the hearing in the absence of the respondent.

(c) A hearing under this section will not be open to the public except that the Director may grant a request by a respondent to open his or her hearing to the public and make the record of the disciplinary proceeding available for public inspection, provided, Agreement is reached in advance to exclude from public disclosure information which is privileged or confidential under applicable laws or regulations. If a disciplinary proceeding results in disciplinary action against a practitioner, and subject to § 10.159(c), the record of the entire disciplinary proceeding, including any settlement agreement, will be available for public inspection.

[Added 50 R 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.145 Proof; variance; amendment of pleadings.

In case of a variance between the evidence and the allegations in a complaint, answer, or reply, if any, the administrative law judge may order or authorize amendment of the complaint, answer, or reply to conform to the evidence. Any party who would otherwise be prejudiced by the amendment will be given reasonable opportunity to meet the allegations in the complaint, answer, or reply, as amended, and the administrative law judge shall make findings on any issue presented by the complaint, answer, or reply as amended.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.146 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.147 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.148 [Reserved]



37 CFR 10.149 Burden of proof.

In a disciplinary proceeding, the Director shall have the burden of proving his or her case by clear and convincing evidence and a respondent shall have the burden of proving any affirmative defense by clear and convincing evidence.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.150 Evidence.

(a) Rules of evidence. The rules of evidence prevailing in courts of law and equity are not controlling in hearings in disciplinary proceedings. However, the administrative law judge shall exclude evidence which is irrelevant, immaterial, or unduly repetitious.

(b) Depositions. Depositions of witnesses taken pursuant to § 10.151 may be admitted as evidence.

(c) Government documents. Official documents, records, and papers of the Office are admissible without extrinsic evidence of authenticity. These documents, records, and papers may be evidenced by a copy certified as correct by an employee of the Office.

(d) Exhibits. If any document, record, or other paper is introduced in evidence as an exhibit, the administrative law judge may authorize the withdrawal of the exhibit subject to any conditions the administrative law judge deems appropriate.

(e) Objections. Objections to evidence will be in short form, stating the grounds of objection. Objections and rulings on objections will be a part of the record. No exception to the ruling is necessary to preserve the rights of the parties.

[Added 50 FR 5184, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.151 Depositions.

(a) Depositions for use at the hearing in lieu of personal appearance of a witness before the administrative law judge may be taken by respondent or the Director upon a showing of good cause and with the approval of, and under such conditions as may be deemed appropriate by, the administrative law judge. Depositions may be taken upon oral or written questions, upon not less than ten days' written notice to the other party, before any officer authorized to administer an oath or affirmation in the place where the deposition is to be taken. The requirement of ten days' notice may be waived by the parties and depositions may then be taken of a witness at a time and place mutually agreed to by the parties. When a deposition is taken upon written questions, copies of the written questions will be served upon the other party with the notice and copies of any written cross-questions will be served by hand or "Express Mail" not less than five days before the date of the taking of the deposition unless the parties mutually agree otherwise. A party on whose behalf a deposition is taken shall file a copy of a transcript of the deposition signed by a court reporter with the administrative law judge and shall serve one copy upon the opposing party. Expenses for a court reporter and preparing, serving, and filing depositions shall be borne by the party at whose instance the deposition is taken.

(b) When the Director and the respondent agree in writing, a deposition of any witness who will appear voluntarily may be taken under such terms and conditions as may be mutually agreeable to the Director and the respondent. The deposition shall not be filed with the administrative law judge and may not be admitted in evidence before the administrative law judge unless he or she orders the deposition admitted in evidence. The admissibility of the deposition shall lie within the discretion of the administrative law judge who may reject the deposition on any reasonable basis including the fact that demeanor is involved and that the witness should have been called to appear personally before the administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.152 Discovery.

Discovery shall not be authorized except as follows:

(a) After an answer is filed under § 10.136 and when a party establishes in a clear and convincing manner that discovery is necessary and relevant, the administrative law judge, under such conditions as he or she deems appropriate, may order an opposing party to:

- (1) Answer a reasonable number of written requests for admission or interrogatories;
- (2) Produce for inspection and copying a reasonable number of documents; and



- (3) Produce for inspection a reasonable number of things other than documents.
- (b) Discovery shall not be authorized under paragraph (a) of this section of any matter which:
 - (1) Will be used by another party solely for impeachment or cross-examination;
 - (2) Is not available to the party under 35 U.S.C. § 122;
 - (3) Relates to any disciplinary proceeding commenced in the Patent and Trademark Office prior to March 8, 1985;
 - (4) Relates to experts except as the administrative law judge may require under paragraph (e) of this section.
 - (5) Is privileged; or
 - (6) Relates to mental impressions, conclusions, opinions, or legal theories of any attorney or other representative of a party.
- (c) The administrative law judge may deny discovery requested under paragraph (a) of this section if the discovery sought:
 - (1) Will unduly delay the disciplinary proceeding;
 - (2) Will place an undue burden on the party required to produce the discovery sought; or
 - (3) Is available
 - (i) generally to the public,
 - (ii) equally to the parties; or
 - (iii) to the party seeking the discovery through another source.
- (d) Prior to authorizing discovery under paragraph (a) of this section, the administrative law judge shall require the party seeking discovery to file a motion (§ 10.143) and explain in detail for each request made how the discovery sought is necessary and relevant to an issue actually raised in the complaint or the answer.
- (e) The administrative law judge may require parties to file and serve, prior to any hearing, a pre-hearing statement which contains:
 - (1) A list (together with a copy) of all proposed exhibits to be used in connection with a party's case-in-chief,
 - (2) A list of proposed witnesses,
 - (3) As to each proposed expert witness:
 - (i) An identification of the field in which the individual will be qualified as an expert;
 - (ii) A statement as to the subject matter on which the expert is expected to testify; and
 - (iii) A statement of the substance of the facts and opinions to which the expert is expected to testify,
 - (4) The identity of government employees who have investigated the case, and
 - (5) Copies of memoranda reflecting respondent's own statements to administrative representatives.
- (f) After a witness testifies for a party, if the opposing party requests, the party may be required to produce, prior to cross-examination, any written statement made by the witness.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.153 Proposed findings and conclusions; post-hearing memorandum.

Except in cases when the respondent has failed to answer the complaint, the administrative law judge, prior to making an initial decision, shall afford the parties a reasonable opportunity to submit proposed findings and conclusions and a post-hearing memorandum in support of the proposed findings and conclusions.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.154 Initial decision of administrative law judge.

(a) The administrative law judge shall make an initial decision in the case. The decision will include (1) a statement of findings and conclusions, as well as the reasons or basis therefor with appropriate references to the record, upon all the material issues of fact, law, or discretion presented on the record, and (2) an order of suspension or exclusion from practice, an order of reprimand, or an order dismissing the complaint. The administrative law judge shall file the decision with the Director and shall transmit a copy to the representative of the Director and to the respondent. In the absence of an appeal to the Commissioner, the decision of the administrative law judge will, without further proceedings, become the decision of the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks thirty (30) days from the date of the decision of the administrative law judge.

(b) The initial decision of the administrative law judge shall explain the reason for any penalty or reprimand, suspension or exclusion. In determining any penalty, the following should normally be considered:

- (1) The public interest;
- (2) The seriousness of the violation of the Disciplinary Rule;
- (3) The deterrent effects deemed necessary;
- (4) The integrity of the legal profession; and
- (5) Any extenuating circumstances.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 50 FR 25073, June 17, 1985]

37 CFR 10.155 Appeal to the Commissioner.

(a) Within thirty (30) days from the date of the initial decision of the administrative law judge under § 10.154, either party may appeal to the Commissioner. An appeal by the respondent will be filed with the Director in duplicate and will include exceptions to the decisions of the administrative law judge and supporting reasons for those exceptions. If the Director files the appeal, the Director shall serve a copy of the appeal. Within thirty (30) days after receipt of an appeal or copy thereof, the other party may file a reply brief, in duplicate with the Director. If the Director files the reply brief, the Director shall serve a copy of the reply brief. Upon the filing of an appeal and a reply brief, if any, the Director shall transmit the entire record to the Commissioner.

(b) The appeal will be decided by the Commissioner on the record made before the administrative law judge.

(c) The Commissioner may order reopening of a disciplinary proceeding in accordance with the principles which govern the granting of new trials. Any request to reopen a disciplinary proceeding on the basis of newly discovered evidence must demonstrate that the newly discovered evidence could not have been discovered by due diligence.

(d) In the absence of an appeal by the Director, failure by the respondent to appeal under the provisions of this section shall be deemed to be both acceptance by the respondent of the initial decision and waiver by the respondent of the right to further administrative or judicial review.

[Added 50 FR 5185, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (d) added, 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989, effective Aug. 1, 1989]

37 CFR 10.156 Decision of the Commissioner.

(a) An appeal from an initial decision of the administrative law judge shall be decided by the Commissioner. The Commissioner may affirm, reverse, or modify the initial decision or remand the matter to the administrative law judge for such further proceedings as the Commissioner may deem appropriate. Subject to paragraph (c) of this section, a decision by the Commissioner does not become a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding until 20 days after it is entered. In making a final decision, the Commissioner shall review the record or these portions of the record as may be cited by the parties in order to limit the issues. The Commissioner shall transmit a copy of the final decision to the Director and to the respondent.

(b) A final decision of the Commissioner may dismiss a disciplinary proceeding, reprimand a practitioner, or may suspend or exclude the practitioner from practice before the Office.

(c) A single request for reconsideration or modification of the Commissioner's decision may be made by the respondent or the Director if filed within 20 days from the date of entry of the decision. Such a

request shall have the effect of staying the effective date of the decision. The decision by the Commissioner on the request is a final agency action in a disciplinary proceeding and is effective on its date of entry.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; para. (a) amended and para. (c) added, 54 FR 6660, Feb. 14, 1989]

37 CFR 10.157 Review of Commissioner's final decision.

(a) Review of the Commissioner's final decision in a disciplinary case may be had, subject to § 10.155(d), by a petition filed in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. See 35 U.S.C. 32 and Local Rule 213 of the United States District Court for the District of Columbia.

(b) The Commissioner may stay a final decision pending review of the Commissioner's final decision.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985; amended 53 FR 13120, Apr. 21, 1988; para. (a) amended, 54 FR 26026, June 21, 1989, effective Aug. 1, 1989]

37 CFR 10.158 Suspended or excluded practitioner.

(a) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall not engage in unauthorized practice of patent, trademark and other non-patent law before the Office.

(b) Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, any practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office under § 10.156(b) shall:

- (1) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, notify all bars of which he or she is a member and all clients of the practitioner for whom he or she is handling matters before the Office in separate written communications of the suspension or exclusion and shall file a copy of each written communication with the Director.
- (2) Within 30 days of entry of the order of suspension or exclusion, surrender a client's active Office case files to
 - (i) the client or
 - (ii) another practitioner designated by the client.
- (3) Not hold himself or herself out as authorized to practice law before the Office.
- (4) Promptly take any necessary and appropriate steps to remove from any telephone, legal, or other directory any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice patent, trademark, or other non-patent law before the Office, and within 30 days of taking those steps, file with the Director an affidavit describing the precise nature of the steps taken.
- (5) Not advertise the practitioner's availability or ability to perform or render legal services for any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office.
- (6) Not render legal advice or services to any person having immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office as to that business.
- (7) Promptly take steps to change any sign identifying a practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's office and practitioner's or the practitioner's firm's stationery to delete therefrom any advertisement, statement, or representation which would reasonably suggest that the practitioner is authorized to practice law before the Office.
- (8) Within 30 days, return to any client any unearned funds, including any unearned retainer fee, and any securities and property of the client.

(c) A practitioner who is suspended or excluded from practice before the Office and who aids another practitioner in any way in the other practitioner's practice of law before the Office, may, under the direct supervision of the other practitioner, act as a paralegal for the other practitioner or perform other services for the other practitioner which are normally performed by lay-persons, provided:

- (1) The practitioner who is suspended or excluded is:
 - (i) A salaried employee of:
 - (A) The other practitioner;
 - (B) The other practitioner's law firm; or
 - TO(C) A client-employer who employs the other practitioner as a salaried employee;



- (2) The other practitioner assumes full professional responsibility to any client and the Office for any work performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner for the other practitioner;
 - (3) The suspended or excluded practitioner, in connection with any immediate, prospective, or pending business before the Office, does not:
 - (i) Communicate directly in writing, orally, or otherwise with a client of the other practitioner;
 - (ii) Render any legal advice or any legal services to a client of the other practitioner; or
 - (iii) Meet in person or in the presence of the other practitioner with:
 - (A) Any Office official in connection with the prosecution of any patent, trademark, or other case;
 - (B) Any client of the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the client-employer of the other practitioner;
 - (C) Any witness or potential witness which the other practitioner, the other practitioner's law firm, or the other practitioner's client-employer may or intends to call as a witness in any proceeding before the Office. The term "witness" includes individuals who will testify orally in a proceeding before, or sign an affidavit or any other document to be filed in, the Office.
- (d) When a suspended or excluded practitioner acts as a paralegal or performs services under paragraph (c) of this section, the suspended or excluded practitioner shall not thereafter be reinstated to practice before the Office unless:
- (1) The suspended or excluded practitioner shall have filed with the Director an affidavit which
 - (i) explains in detail the precise nature of all paralegal or other services performed by the suspended or excluded practitioner and
 - (ii) shows by clear and convincing evidence that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of this section and all Disciplinary Rules, and
 - (2) The other practitioner shall have filed with the Director a written statement which
 - (i) shows that the other practitioner has read the affidavit required by subparagraph (d)(1) of this section and that the other practitioner believes every statement in the affidavit to be true and
 - (ii) states why the other practitioner believes that the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with paragraph (c) of this section.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.159 Notice of suspension or exclusion

(a) Upon issuance of a final decision reprimanding a practitioner or suspending or excluding a practitioner from practice before the office, the Director shall give notice of the final decision to appropriate employees of the Office and to interested departments, agencies, and courts of the United States. The director shall also give notice to appropriate authorities of any State in which a practitioner is known to be member of the bar and any appropriate bar association.

(b) The Director shall cause to be published in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner suspended or excluded from practice. Unless otherwise ordered by the Commissioner, the Director shall publish in the Official Gazette the name of any practitioner reprimanded by the Commissioner.

(c) The Director shall maintain records, which shall be available for public inspection, of every disciplinary proceeding where practitioner is reprimanded, suspended, or excluded unless the Commissioner orders that the proceeding be kept confidential.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]



37 CFR 10.160 Petitioner for reinstatement.

(a) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner suspended for a period of less than five years will not be considered until the period of suspension has been passed.

(b) A petition for reinstatement of a practitioner excluded from practice will not be considered until five years after the effective date of the exclusion.

(c) An individual who has resigned under § 10.133 or who has been suspended or excluded may file a petition for reinstatement. The Director may grant a petition for reinstatement when the individual makes a clear and convincing showing that the individual will conduct himself or herself in accordance with the regulations of this part and that granting a petition for reinstatement is not contrary to the public interest. As a condition to reinstatement, the Director may require the individual to:

- (1) Meet the requirements of § 10.7, including taking and passing an examination under § 10.7(b) and
- (2) Pay all or a portion of the costs and expenses, not to exceed \$1,500, of the disciplinary proceeding which led to suspension or exclusion.

(d) Any suspended or excluded practitioner who has violated the provisions of § 10.158 during his or her period of suspension or exclusion shall not be entitled to reinstatement until such time as the Director is satisfied that a period of suspension equal in time to that ordered by the Commissioner or exclusion for five years has passed during which the suspended or excluded practitioner has complied with the provisions of § 10.158.

(e) Proceedings on any petition for reinstatement shall be open to the public. Before reinstating any suspended or excluded practitioner, the Director shall publish in the Official Gazette a notice of the suspended or excluded practitioner's petition for reinstatement and shall permit the public a reasonable opportunity to comment or submit evidence with respect to the petition for reinstatement.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.161 Savings clause.

(a) A disciplinary proceeding based on conduct engaged in prior to the effective date of these regulations may be instituted subsequent to such effective date, if such conduct would continue to justify suspension or exclusion under the provisions of this part.

(b) No practitioner shall be subject to a disciplinary proceeding under this part based on conduct engaged in before the effective date hereof if such conduct would not have been subject to disciplinary action before such effective date.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

37 CFR 10.162 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.163 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.164 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.165 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.166 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.167 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.168 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.169 [Reserved]

37 CFR 10.170 Suspension of rules.

(a) In an extraordinary situation, when justice requires, any requirement of the regulations of this part which is not a requirement of the statutes may be suspended or waived by the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee, sua sponte, or on petition of any party, including the Director or the Director's representative, subject to such other requirements as may be imposed.



(b) Any petition under this section will not stay a disciplinary proceeding unless ordered by the Commissioner or an administrative law judge.

[Added 50 FR 5186, Feb. 6, 1985, effective Mar. 8, 1985]

PART 15—SERVICE OF PROCESS

Sec.	
15.1	Scope and purpose.
15.2	Definitions.
15.3	Acceptance of service of process.

Authority: 5 U.S.C. 301; 15 U.S.C. 1501, 1512, 1513, 1515, and 1518; Reorganization Plan No. 5 of 1950; 44 U.S.C. 3101; 15 CFR 15.2(a).

37 CFR 15.1 Scope and purpose.

(a) This part supplements 15 CFR Part 15 and sets forth the procedures to be followed when a summons or complaint is served on the Office or the Commissioner or an employee of the Office in his or her official capacity. This part is to be construed consistent with 15 CFR Part 15.

(b) This part is intended to ensure the orderly execution of the affairs of the Office and not to impede any legal proceeding.

(c) This part does not apply to subpoenas. The procedures to be followed with respect to subpoenas are set out in Part 15a of this Title.

(d) This part does not apply to service of process made on an Office employee personally on matters not related to official business of the Office or to the official responsibilities of the Office employee.

37 CFR 15.2 Definitions.

For the purpose of this part:

(a) “Commissioner” means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) “Legal proceeding” means a proceeding before a tribunal constituted by law, including a court, an administrative body or commission, or an administrative law judge or hearing officer.

(c) “Office” means Patent and Trademark Office.

(d) “Office employee” means any officer or employee of the Office.

(e) “Official business” means the authorized business of the Office.

(f) “Solicitor” means the chief legal officer of the Office or other Office employee to whom the Solicitor has delegated authority to act under this part.

37 CFR 15.3 Acceptance of service of process.

(a) Any summons or complaint to be served in person or by registered or certified mail or as otherwise authorized by law on the Office or the Commissioner or an Office employee in his or her official capacity, shall be served on the Solicitor or an Office employee designated by the Solicitor.

(b) Any summons or complaint to be served by mail may be addressed to Solicitor, P.O. Box 15667, Arlington, Virginia 22215. Any summons or complaint to be served by hand may be delivered to the Office of the Solicitor.

(c) Any Office employee served with a summons or complaint shall immediately notify and deliver the summons or complaint to the Office of the Solicitor.

(d) Any Office employee receiving a summons or complaint shall note on the summons or complaint the date, hour, and place of service and whether service was by personal delivery or by mail.

(e) When a legal proceeding is brought to hold an Office employee personally liable in connection with an action taken in the conduct of official business, rather than liable in an official capacity, the Office employee by law is to be served personally with process. Service of process in this case is inadequate when made upon the Solicitor or the Solicitor’s designee. Any Office employee sued personally for an action taken in the conduct of official business shall immediately notify and deliver a copy of the summons or complaint to the Office of the Solicitor.

(f) An Office employee sued personally in connection with official business may be represented by the Department of Justice at its discretion. See 28 CFR 50.15 and 50.16 (1987).



(g) The Solicitor or Office employee designated by the Solicitor, when accepting service of process for an Office employee in an official capacity, shall endorse on the Marshal's or server's return of service form or receipt for registered or certified mail the following statement: "Service accepted in official capacity only." The statement may be placed on the form or receipt with a rubber stamp.

(h) Upon acceptance of service or receiving notification of service, as provided in this section, the Solicitor shall take appropriate steps to protect the rights of the Commissioner or Office employee involved.

**PART 15a—TESTIMONY BY EMPLOYEES
AND THE PRODUCTION OF DOCUMENTS
IN LEGAL PROCEEDINGS**

Sec.	
15a.1	Scope.
15a.2	Definitions.
15a.3	Office policy.
15a.4	Testimony or production of documents; general rule.
15a.5	Testimony of Office employees in proceedings involving the United States.
15a.6	Legal proceedings between private litigants.
15a.7	Procedures when an Office employee receives a subpoena.

Authority: 5 U.S.C. 301; 15 U.S.C. 1501, 1512, 1513, 1515, and 1518; Reorganization Plan No. 5 of 1950; 44 U.S.C. 3101; 15 CFR 15a.1(e) and 15a.2(f).

37 CFR 15a. Scope.

(a) This part supplements 15 CFR Part 15a and prescribes the policies and procedures of the Office with respect to the testimony of Office employees as witnesses in legal proceedings and the production of documents of the Office for use in legal proceedings pursuant to a request, order, or subpoena. This part is issued pursuant to 15 CFR 15a.1(e) and is to be construed consistent with 15 CFR 15a.

(b) This does not apply to any legal proceeding in which an Office employee is to testify, while on leave status, as to facts or events that are in no way related to the official business of the Office.

(c) This part is intended to ensure the orderly execution of the affairs of the Office and not to impede any legal proceeding and in no way affects the rights and procedures governing public access to records pursuant to the Freedom of Information Act or the Privacy Act. See 15 CFR 15a.4 and 37 CFR 1.15.

37 CFR 15a. Definitions.

For the purpose of this part:

(a) "Commissioner" means Assistant Secretary and Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks.

(b) "Demand" means a request, order, or subpoena for testimony or documents for use in a legal proceeding.

(c) "Document" means any record, paper, and other property held by the Office, including without limitation official patent and trademark files, official letters, telegrams, memoranda, reports, studies, calendar and diary entries, maps, graphs, pamphlets, notes, charts, tabulations, analyses, statistical or informational accumulations, any kind of summaries of meetings and conversations, film impressions, magnetic tapes, and sound or mechanical reproductions.

(d) "Legal proceeding" means a proceeding before a tribunal constituted by law, including a court, an administrative body or commission, an administrative law judge or hearing officer or any discovery proceeding in support thereof.

(e) "Office" means Patent and Trademark Office.

(f) "Office employee" means any officer or employee of the Office.

(g) "Official business" means the authorized business of the Office.

(h) "Solicitor" means the chief legal officer of the Office or other Office employee to whom the Solicitor has delegated authority to act under this part.

(i) "Testimony" means a statement given in person before a tribunal or by deposition for use before the tribunal or any other statement given for use before a tribunal in a legal proceeding, including an affidavit, declaration under 35 U.S.C. 25, or declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746.

(j) “United States” means the Federal Government, its departments and agencies, and individuals acting on behalf of the Federal Government.

37 CFR 15a. Office policy.

The Office policy is that its documents will not be voluntarily produced and Office employees will not voluntarily appear as witnesses or give testimony in a legal proceeding. The reasons for this policy include:

- (a) To conserve the time of Office employees for conducting official business.
- (b) To minimize the possibility of involving the Office in controversial or other issues which are not related to the mission of the Office.
- (c) To prevent the possibility that the public will misconstrue variances between personal opinions of Office employees and Office policy.
- (d) To avoid spending the time and money of the United States for private purposes.
- (e) To preserve the integrity of the administrative process, minimize disruption of the decision-making process, and prevent interference with the Office’s administrative functions.

37 CFR 15a. Testimony or production of documents; general rule.

(a) No Office employee shall give testimony concerning the official business of the Office or produce any document in any legal proceeding without the prior authorization of the Solicitor. Where appropriate, an Office employee may be instructed in writing by the Commissioner, Solicitor, or other appropriate Office employee not to give testimony or produce a document.

Without prior approval, no Office employee shall answer inquiries from a person not employed by the Department of Commerce regarding testimony or documents subject to a demand or a potential demand under the provisions of this Part. All inquiries involving a demand or potential demand on an Office employee shall be referred to the Solicitor.

- (b) A certified copy of a document, not otherwise available under Chapter I of this Title, will be provided for use in a legal proceeding upon written request and payment of applicable fees required by law.
- (c)
 - (1) Request for testimony or document. A request for testimony of an Office employee or document shall be mailed or hand-delivered to the Office of the Solicitor. The mailing address of the Office of the Solicitor is Box 8, Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, D.C. 20231.
 - (2) Subpoenas. A subpoena for testimony by an Office employee or a document shall be served in accordance with the Federal Rules of Civil or Criminal Procedure as appropriate, or applicable state procedure, and a copy of the subpoena shall be sent to the Solicitor.
 - (3) Affidavit. Every request and subpoena shall be accompanied by an affidavit or declaration under 28 U.S.C. 1746 or, if an affidavit or declaration is not feasible, a written statement setting forth the title of the legal proceeding, the forum, the requesting party’s interest in the legal proceeding, the reasons for the request or subpoena, a showing that the desired testimony or document is not reasonably available from any other source, and if testimony is requested, the intended use of the testimony, a general summary of the testimony desired, and a showing that no document could be provided and used in lieu of testimony. The purpose of this requirement is to permit the Solicitor to make an informed decision as to whether testimony or production of a document should be authorized.
- (d) Any Office employee who is served with a demand shall immediately notify the Office of the Solicitor.
- (e) The Solicitor may consult or negotiate with an attorney for a party or the party, if not represented by an attorney, to refine or limit a demand so that compliance is less burdensome or obtain information necessary to make the determination required by paragraph (c) of this section. Failure of the attorney or party to cooperate in good faith to enable an informed determination to be made under this part may serve as the basis for a determination not to comply with the demand.



(f) A determination under this part to comply or not to comply with a demand is not an assertion or waiver of privilege, lack of relevance, technical deficiencies, or any other ground for noncompliance. The Commissioner reserves the right to oppose any demand on any legal ground independent of any determination under this part.

37 CFR 15a. Testimony of Office employees in proceedings involving the United States.

(a) An Office employee may not testify as an expert or opinion witness for any party other than the United States.

(b) When appropriate, the Solicitor may authorize an Office employee to give testimony as an expert or opinion witness on behalf of the United States. Expert or opinion testimony on behalf of the United States will not be authorized in any legal proceeding involving the validity or enforceability of a patent or registered trademark.

(c) Whenever, in any legal proceeding involving the United States, a request is made by an attorney representing or acting under the authority of the United States, the Solicitor will make all necessary arrangements for the Office employee to give testimony on behalf of the United States. Where appropriate, the Solicitor may require reimbursement to the Office of the expenses associated with an Office employee giving testimony on behalf of the United States.

37 CFR 15a. Legal proceedings between private litigants.

(a) Testimony by an Office employee and production of documents in a legal proceeding not involving the United States shall be governed by § 15a.4.

(b) If an Office employee is authorized to give testimony in a legal proceeding, the testimony, if otherwise proper, shall be limited to facts within the personal knowledge of the Office employee. An Office employee is prohibited from giving expert or opinion testimony, answering hypothetical or speculative questions, or giving testimony with respect to subject matter which is privileged. If an Office employee is authorized to testify in connection with the employee's involvement or assistance in a quasi-judicial proceeding which took place before the Office, that employee is further prohibited from giving testimony in response to questions which seek:

- (1) Information about that employee's:
 - (i) Background.
 - (ii) Expertise.
 - (iii) Qualifications to examine or otherwise consider a particular patent or trademark application.
 - (iv) Usual practice or whether the employee followed a procedure set out in any Office manual of practice in a particular case.
 - (v) Consultation with another Office employee.
 - (vi) Understanding of:
 - (A) A patented invention, an invention sought to be patented, or patent application, patent, reexamination or interference file.
 - (B) Prior art.
 - (C) Registered subject matter, subject matter sought to be registered, or a trademark application, registration, opposition, cancellation, interference, or concurrent use file.
 - (D) Any Office manual of practice.
 - (E) Office regulations.
 - (F) Patent, trademark, or other law.
 - (G) The responsibilities of another Office employee.
 - (vii) Reliance on particular facts or arguments.
- (2) To inquire into the manner in and extent to which the employee considered or studied material in performing the quasi-judicial function.



- (3) To inquire into the bases, reasons, mental processes, analyses, or conclusions of that Office employee in performing the quasi-judicial function.

37 CFR 15a. Procedures when an Office employee receives a subpoena.

(a) Any Office employee who receives a subpoena shall immediately forward the subpoena to the Office of the Solicitor. The Solicitor will determine the extent to which an Office employee will comply with the subpoena.

(b) If the Office employee is not authorized to comply with the subpoena, the Office employee shall appear at the time and place stated in the subpoena, produce a copy of Part 15a of Title 15 and a copy of this part, and respectfully refuse to provide any testimony or produce any document. *United States ex rel. Touhy v. Ragen*. 340 U.S. 462 (1951).

(c) When necessary or appropriate, the Solicitor will request assistance from the Department of Justice or a U.S. Attorney or otherwise assure the presence of an attorney to represent the interests of the Office or an Office employee.

SUBCHAPTER B—GOVERNMENT INVENTIONS JURISDICTION

PART 100—RESERVED

PART 101—ACQUISITION AND PROTECTION OF FOREIGN RIGHTS IN INVENTIONS

Sec.	
101.1	Purpose.
101.2	Authority.
101.3	Scope.
101.4	Option to be obtained.
101.5	Action by agency concerned.
101.6	Action by the Department of Commerce.
101.7	Publication in lieu of patenting.
101.8	Foreign filing by inventor.
101.9	Administration of foreign patents.
101.10	Reports and records.
101.11	Dissemination of this part.

AUTHORITY: E.O. 9865, 3 CFR 1943-1948 Comp., p. 651, E.O. 10096, 3 CFR 1948-1953 Comp., p. 292.

SOURCE: Administrative Order 6, 19 FR 3937, June 29, 1954, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated at 34 FR 20383, dec. 31, 1969.

37 CFR 101.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform policy for the Government with respect to the acquisition and protection of foreign rights in and to certain inventions.

37 CFR 101.2 Authority.

Authority for the issuance of this part is provided in E.O. 9865, dated June 14, 1947 (12 FR 3907), as amended by paragraph 5 of E.O. 10096, dated January 23, 1960 (15 PR 389).

37 CFR 101.3 Scope.

This Part is restricted to inventions to which the Government is entitled to acquire, or may acquire, title or the right to file foreign patent applications or otherwise to seek protection abroad thereon. Exempted from the provisions of this part are

(a) Inventions within the jurisdiction of the Atomic Energy Commission, except in such cases as the said Commission specifically authorized the inclusion of an invention, and

(b) inventions officially classified for reasons of the national security, until such inventions become declassified.

37 CFR 101.4 Option to be obtained

(a) When the Government is entitled to acquire foreign rights in and to an invention made by a Government employee, including the right to file for foreign patent applications or otherwise to seek protection abroad on the invention, the Government agency concerned shall obtain an option to acquire such rights.

(b) When the Government is entitled to acquire foreign rights in and to an invention made pursuant to contract, including the right to file foreign patent applications or otherwise to seek protection abroad on the invention, the Government agency concerned shall, when the agency deems it desirable, obtain an option to acquire such rights.

37 CFR 101.5 Action by agency concerned

Subject to the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board on all matters of policy, the Government agency concerned shall, with respect to each invention to which the option specified in § 101.4 is obtained or on which the foreign rights have been acquired, determine whether or not and in what foreign jurisdictions patent protection should be sought in the public interest. Upon determining that foreign patent protection is desirable, the agency shall:

(a) To the extent of available funds within its own appropriation, take or cause to be taken all action necessary to secure such foreign patent protection of the invention, consistent with existing law and the requirements of the Government; and

(b) If sufficient funds are not available within its own appropriation or the agency does not see fit to use funds when available, furnish the Secretary of Commerce as soon as practicable, preferably not later than two months after the filing of the application for United States patent on the invention, through the use of Foreign Patent Protection Reporting Form TS-12, sufficient information concerning the invention and the reasons for its determination with respect to the desirability of foreign patent protection, to enable the Secretary of Commerce to seek the financial support of other interested Government agencies and/or of industry in securing foreign patent protection of the invention.

37 CFR 101.6 Action by the Department of Commerce.

Subject to the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board on all matters of policy, the Secretary of Commerce shall, immediately upon receipt of a Foreign Patent Protection Reporting Form TS-12 on an invention, pursuant to § 101.5(b):

(a) Consult with Government agencies and with United States industry and commerce, familiar with the technical, scientific, industrial, commercial or other economic or social factors affecting the invention involved, to ascertain possible interest in foreign patent protection of the invention and willingness to finance such protection; and

(b) After such consultation and consideration of such factors as the availability of valid patent protection in the countries selected and to the extent of funds made available by Government agencies and/or industry, take or cause to be taken all action necessary to secure such protection of the invention, consistent with existing law and the requirements of the Government.

37 CFR 101.7 Publication in lieu of patenting.

When the foreign rights of the Government with respect to an invention may be adequately protected through prompt disclosure of the invention in lieu of patenting, the Government agency concerned, or the Secretary of Commerce in cooperation with the Government agency concerned, may, with the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board, cause the invention to be disclosed by publication thereof.

37 CFR 101.8 Foreign filing by inventor.

When the foreign rights in and to an invention are not assigned to the Government but the Government may, at its option or on request, acquire such rights and determines not to cause an application to be filed in any particular foreign country or otherwise to seek protection of the invention, or fails to take such action:

(a) Within six months of the filing of an application for United States patent on the invention, or



(b) Within six months of declassification of an invention previously under a security classification, or

(c) Within six months after disclosure of an invention to the Government pursuant to contract, whichever is later,

such determination or such failure to act shall constitute a decision by the Government to leave such rights to the inventor subject, to the extent practicable, to a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license to the Government in any patent which may issue thereon in any foreign country, including the power to issue sublicenses for use in behalf of the Government and/or in furtherance of the foreign policies of the Government.

37 CFR 101.9 Administration of foreign patents.

The functions and duties of the Chairman of the Government Patent Board under paragraphs 4 and 5 of E.O. 9865, as amended by paragraph 4 of E.O. 10096, are, until further notice, hereby delegated to the Secretary of Commerce: *Provided, however*, that all matters of policy arising under this delegation shall be subject to the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board.

37 CFR 101.10 Reports and records.

(a) Each Government agency shall report promptly to the Secretary of Commerce, with a copy to the Chairman of the Government Patents Board, all actions by the agency taken pursuant to §§ 101.5 and 101.7, as well as disclosures by publication by the agency made pursuant to paragraph 2(a) of E.O. 10096.

(b) the Secretary of Commerce shall maintain adequate records and other necessary files, to provide readily available information on all inventions included under the provisions of §§ 101.5, 101.6, 101.7. and paragraph (a) of this section, and shall submit to the Chairman of the Government Patents Board a written report quarterly, or otherwise as the Chairman may request, on all operations of this program during the preceding calendar quarter or other period designated.

37 CFR 101.11 Dissemination of this part

Each Government agency shall make appropriate dissemination of the provisions of this part.

**PART 102—LICENSING OF FOREIGN PATENTS
ACQUIRED BY THE GOVERNMENT**

Sec.	
102.1	Purpose.
102.2	Authority.
102.3	Scope.
102.4	the Department of State.
102.5	Licenses under foreign patents.
102.6	Reports and records.

AUTHORITY: E.O.9865, 12 FR 3907, 3 CFR, 1947 Supp., E.O. 10096, 15 FR 389, 3 CFR, 1950 Supp.

SOURCE: Administrative Order 7, 19 FR 3938, June 29, 1954, unless otherwise noted. Redesignated as 34 FR 20383, Dec. 31, 1969.

37 CFR 102.1 Purpose

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform policy for the Government with respect to the licensing of foreign patents acquired by the Government.

37 CFR 102.2 Authority.

Authority for the issuance of this part is provided in Executive Order 9865, dated June 14, 1947 (12 FR 3907), as amended by paragraph 5 of Executive Order 10096, dated January 23, 1950 (15 FR 389).

37 CFR 102.3 Scope.

This Part is to implement and supplement § 101.9 of this Chapter,² with respect to inventions on which the Government has acquired foreign patents, except inventions within the jurisdiction of the Atomic Energy Commission which are not specifically authorized by said Commission for inclusion within the terms of this part.

37 CFR 102.4 The Department of State.

Pursuant to Executive Orders 9865 and 10096, it is the responsibility of the Department of State, in consultation with the Chairman of the Government Patents Board and the Secretary of Commerce, to seek arrangements among Governments under which each government and its nationals shall have access to the foreign patents of the other participating governments.

37 CFR 102.5 Licenses under foreign patents.

(a) Licenses under foreign patents acquired by the United States Government shall be granted by the Secretary of Commerce to nationals of the United States on a nonexclusive, revocable, royalty-free basis, except in such cases as the Secretary of Commerce, with the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board, shall determine it to be inconsistent with the public interest to issue such licenses on a nonexclusive, royalty-free basis.

(b) Licenses under foreign patents acquired by the United States Government may be granted by the Secretary of Commerce to a foreign government or its nationals pursuant to any arrangements which may come into force with such foreign government as provided in § 102.4, or, in the absence of such arrangements, on such terms as the Secretary of Commerce, with the approval of the Chairman of the Government Patents Board and of the Secretary of State, shall determine, in accordance with law, to be in the public interest, subject to outstanding licenses.

(c) With respect to foreign patents relating to matters of public health, licenses under such patents issued to the United States Government may be granted by the Secretary of Commerce to a foreign government or its nationals on a nonexclusive, revocable, royalty-free basis unless the Chairman of the Government Patents Board, on the recommendation of the Secretary of State, shall determine otherwise, regardless of whether such foreign government is a party to the arrangements specified in § 102.4.

37 CFR 102.6 Reports and records.

The Secretary of Commerce shall maintain adequate records and other necessary rules, to provide readily available information on all licenses granted under § 102.5, and shall submit to the Chairman of the Government Patents Board a written report, with a copy to the Secretary of State, quarterly or otherwise as the Chairman may request, on all operations of the licensing program during the preceding, calendar quarter or other period designated.

²See part 101 of this chapter (A.O. 6)

CHAPTER IV—ASSISTANT SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY POLICY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PART 401—RIGHTS TO INVENTIONS MADE BY NONPROFIT ORGANIZATIONS AND SMALL BUSINESS FIRMS UNDER GOVERNMENT GRANTS, CONTRACTS, AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS

Authority: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10-18.

Source: 52 FR 8554, Mar. 18, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

37 CFR 401.1 **Scope.**

(a) Traditionally there have been no conditions imposed by the government on research performers while using private facilities which would preclude them from accepting research funding from other sources to expand, to aid in completing or to conduct separate investigations closely related to research activities sponsored by the government. Notwithstanding the right of research organizations to accept supplemental funding from other sources for the purpose of expediting or more comprehensively accomplishing the research objectives of the government sponsored project, it is clear that the ownership provisions of these regulations would remain applicable in any invention “conceived or first actually reduced to practice in performance” of the project. Separate accounting for the two funds used to support the project in this case is not a determining factor.

- (1) To the extent that a non-government sponsor established a project which, although closely related, falls outside the planned and committed activities of a government-funded project and does not diminish or distract from the performance of such activities, inventions made in performance of the non-government sponsored project would not be subject to the conditions of these regulations. An example of such related but separate projects would be a government sponsored project having research objectives to expand scientific understanding in a field and a closely related industry sponsored project having as its objectives the application of such new knowledge to develop usable new technology. The time relationship in conducting the two projects and the use of new fundamental knowledge from one in the performance of the other are not important determinants since most inventions rest on a knowledge base built up by numerous independent research efforts extending over many years. Should such an invention be claimed by the performing organization to be the product of non-government sponsored research and be challenged by the sponsoring agency as being reportable to the government as a “subject invention”, the challenge is appealable as described in § 401.11(d).
- (2) An invention which is made outside of the research activities of a government-funded project is not viewed as a “subject invention” since it cannot be shown to have been “conceived or first actually reduced to practice” in performance of the project. An obvious example of this is a situation where an instrument purchased with government funds is later used, without interference with or cost to the government-funded project, in making an invention all expenses of which involve only non-government funds.

(b) This part implements 35 U.S.C. 202 through 204 and is applicable to all Federal agencies. It applies to all funding agreements with small business firms and nonprofit organizations executed after the effective date of this part, except for a funding agreement made primarily for educational purposes. Certain sections also provide guidance for the administration of funding agreements which predate the effective date of this part. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 212, no scholarship, fellowship, training grant, or other funding agreement made by a Federal agency primarily to an awardee for educational purposes will contain any provision giving the Federal agency any rights to inventions made by the awardee.

(c) The march-in and appeals procedures in §§ 401.6 and 401.11 shall apply to any march-in or appeal proceeding under a funding agreement subject to Chapter 18 of Title 35, U.S.C., initiated after the effective date of this part even if the funding agreement was executed prior to that date.

(d) At the request of the contractor, a funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility which is in effect on the effective date of this part shall be promptly amended to include the provisions required by §§ 401.3(a) unless the agency determines that one of the exceptions at 35 U.S.C. 202(a)(i) through (iv) § 401.3(a)(8) through (iv) of this part) is applicable and will be applied. If the exception at § 401.3(a)(iv) is determined to be applicable, the funding agreement will be promptly amended to include the provisions required by § 401.3(c).

(e) This regulation supersedes OMB Circular A-124 and shall take precedence over any regulations dealing with ownership of inventions made by small businesses and nonprofit organizations which are inconsistent with it. This regulation will be followed by all agencies pending amendment of agency regulations to conform to this part and amended Chapter 18 of Title 35. Only deviations requested by a contractor and not inconsistent with Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code, may be made without approval of the Secretary. Modifications or tailoring of clauses as authorized by § 401.5 or § 401.3, when alternative provisions are used under § 401.3(a)(1) through (4), are not considered deviations requiring the Secretary's approval. Three copies of proposed and final agency regulations supplementing this part shall be submitted to the Secretary at the office set out in § 401.16 for approval for consistency with this part before they are submitted to the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) for review under Executive Order 12291 or, if no submission is required to be made to OMB, before their submission to the Federal Register for publication.

(f) In the event an agency has outstanding prime funding agreements that do not contain patent flow-down provisions consistent with this part or earlier Office of Federal Procurement Policy regulations (OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22), the agency shall take appropriate action to ensure that small business firms or nonprofit organizations that are subcontractors under any such agreements and that received their subcontracts after July 1, 1981, receive rights in their subject inventions that are consistent with Chapter 18 and this part.

(g) This part is not intended to apply to arrangements under which nonprofit organizations, small business firms, or others are allowed to use government-owned research facilities and normal technical assistance provided to users of those facilities, whether on a reimbursable or nonreimbursable basis. This part is also not intended to apply to arrangements under which sponsors reimburse the government or facility contractor for the contractor employee's time in performing work for the sponsor. Such arrangements are not considered "funding agreements" as defined at 35 U.S.C. 201(b) and § 401.2(a) of this part.

37 CFR 401.2 Definitions.

As used in this part—

(a) The term funding agreement means any contract, grant, or cooperative agreement entered into between any Federal agency, other than the Tennessee Valley Authority, and any contractor for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work funded in whole or in part by the Federal government. This term also includes any assignment, substitution of parties, or subcontract of any type entered into for the performance of experimental, developmental, or research work under a funding agreement as defined in the first sentence of this paragraph.

(b) The term contractor means any person, small business firm or nonprofit organization which is a party to a funding agreement.

(c) The term invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protectable under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).

(d) The term subject invention means any invention of a contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under a funding agreement; provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.

(e) The term practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition of product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.

(f) The term made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.

(g) The term small business firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this part, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.5 will be used.

(h) The term nonprofit organization means universities and other institutions of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c)) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (26 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.

(i) The term Chapter 18 means Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code.

(j) The term Secretary means the Secretary of Commerce or his or her designee.

37 CFR 401.3 Use of the standard clauses at § 401.14.

(a) Each funding agreement awarded to a small business firm or nonprofit organization (except those subject to 35 U.S.C. 212) shall contain the clause found in § 401.14(a) with such modifications and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part. However, a funding agreement may contain alternative provisions—

- (1) When the contractor is not located in the United States or does not have a place of business located in the United States or is subject to the control of a foreign government; or
- (2) In exceptional circumstances when it is determined by the agency that restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention will better promote the policy and objectives of Chapter 18 of Title 35 of the United States Code; or
- (3) When it is determined by a government authority which is authorized by statute or executive order to conduct foreign intelligence or counterintelligence activities that the restriction or elimination of the right to retain title to any subject invention is necessary to protect the security to such activities; or
- (4) When the funding agreement includes the operation of the government-owned, contractor-operated facility of the Department of Energy primarily dedicated to that Department's naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs and all funding agreement limitations under this subparagraph on the contractor's right to elect title to a subject invention are limited to inventions occurring under the above two programs.

(b) When an agency exercises the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3), it shall use the standard clause at § 401.14(a) with only such modifications as are necessary to address the exceptional circumstances or concerns which led to the use of the exception. For example, if the justification relates to a particular field of use or market, the clause might be modified along lines similar to those described in § 401.14(b). In any event, the clause should provide the contractor with an opportunity to receive greater rights in accordance with the procedures at § 401.15. When an agency justifies and exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(2) and uses an alternative provision in the funding agreement on the basis of national security, the provision shall provide the contractor with the right to elect ownership to any invention made under such funding agreement as provided by the Standard Patent Rights Clause found at § 401.14(a) if the invention is not classified by the agency within six months of the date it is reported to the agency, or within the same time period the Department of Energy does not, as authorized by regulation, law or Executive order or implementing regulations thereto, prohibit unauthorized dissemination of the invention. Contracts in support of DOE's naval nuclear propulsion program are exempted from this paragraph.

(c) When the Department of Energy exercises the exception at § 401.3(a)(4), it shall use the clause prescribed at § 401.14(b) or substitute thereto with such modification and tailoring as authorized or required elsewhere in this part.

(d) When a funding agreement involves a series of separate task orders, an agency may apply the exceptions at § 401.3(a)(2) or (3) to individual task orders, and it may structure the contract so that modified patent rights provisions will apply to the task order even though the clauses at either § 401.14(a) or (b) are applicable to the remainder of the work. Agencies are authorized to negotiate such modified provisions with respect to task orders added to a funding agreement after its initial award.

(e) Before utilizing any of the exceptions in § 401.3(a) of this section, the agency shall prepare a written determination, including a statement of facts supporting the determination, that the conditions identified in the exception exist. A separate statement of facts shall be prepared for each exceptional circumstances determination, except that in appropriate cases a single determination may apply to both a funding agreement and any subcontracts issued under it or to any funding agreement to which such an exception is applicable. In cases when § 401.3(a)(2) is used, the determination shall also include an analysis justifying the determination. This analysis should address with specificity how the alternate provisions will better achieve the objectives set forth in 35 U.S.C. 200. A copy of each determination, statement of facts, and, if applicable, analysis shall be promptly provided to the contractor or prospective contractor along with a notification to the contractor or prospective contractor of its rights to appeal the determination of the exception under 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) and § 401.4 of this part.

(f) Except for determinations under § 401.3(a)(3), the agency shall also provide copies of each determination, statement of fact, and analysis to the Secretary. These shall be sent within 30 days after the award of the funding agreement to which they pertain. Copies shall also be sent to the Chief Counsel for Advocacy of the Small Business Administration if the funding agreement is with a small business firm. If the Secretary of Commerce believes that any individual determination or pattern of determinations is contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or otherwise not in conformance with this chapter, the Secretary shall so advise the head of the agency concerned and the Administrator of the Office of Federal Procurement Policy and recommend corrective actions.

(g) To assist the Comptroller General of the United States to accomplish his or her responsibilities under 35 U.S.C. 202, each Federal agency that enters into any funding agreements with nonprofit organizations or small business firms shall accumulate and, at the request of the Comptroller General, provide the Comptroller General or his or her duly authorized representative the total number of prime agreements entered into with small business firms or nonprofit organizations that contain the patent rights clause in this part or under OMB Circular A-124 for each fiscal year beginning with October 1, 1982.

(h) To qualify for the standard clause, a prospective contractor may be required by an agency to certify that it is either a small business firm or a nonprofit organization. If the agency has reason to question the status of the prospective contractor as a small business firm, it may file a protest in accordance with 13 CFR 121.9. If it questions nonprofit status, it may require the prospective contractor to furnish evidence to establish its status as a nonprofit organization.

37 CFR 401.4 Contractor appeals of exceptions.

(a) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(b)(4) a contractor has the right to an administrative review of a determination to use one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) (1) through (4) if the contractor believes that a determination is either contrary to the policies and objectives of this chapter or constitutes an abuse of discretion by the agency. Paragraph (b) of this section specifies the procedures to be followed by contractors and agencies in such cases. The assertion of such a claim by the contractor shall not be used as a basis for withholding or delaying the award of a funding agreement or for suspending performance under an award. Pending final resolution of the claim the contract may be issued with the patent rights provision proposed by the agency; however, should the final decision be in favor of the contractor, the funding agreement will be amended accordingly and the amendment made retroactive to the effective date of the funding agreement.

(b)

- (1) A contractor may appeal a determination by providing written notice to the agency within 30 working days from the time it receives a copy of the agency's determination, or within such longer time as an agency may specify in its regulations. The contractor's notice should specifically identify the basis for the appeal.

- (2) The appeal shall be decided by the head of the agency or by his/her designee who is at a level above the person who made the determination. If the notice raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or the designee shall undertake, or refer the matter for, fact-finding.
- (3) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may rely upon. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency.
- (4) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended decision. A copy of the findings of fact and recommended decision shall be sent to the contractor by registered or certified mail.
- (5) Fact-finding should be completed within 45 working days from the date the agency receives the contractor's written notice.
- (6) When fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her decision on the facts found, together with any argument submitted by the contractor, agency officials or any other information in the administrative record. In cases referred for fact-finding, the agency head or the designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. The agency head or the designee may hear oral arguments after fact-finding provided that the contractor or contractor's attorney or representative is present and given an opportunity to make arguments and rebuttal. The decision of the agency head or the designee shall be in writing and, if it is unfavorable to the contractor shall include an explanation of the basis of the decision. The decision of the agency or designee shall be made within 30 working days after fact-finding or, if there was no fact-finding, within 45 working days from the date the agency received the contractor's written notice. A contractor adversely affected by a determination under this section may, at any time within sixty days after the determination is issued, file a petition in the United States Claims Court, which shall have jurisdiction to determine the appeal on the record and to affirm, reverse, remand, or modify as appropriate, the determination of the Federal agency.

37 CFR 401.5 Modification and tailoring of clauses.

(a) Agencies should complete the blank in paragraph (g)(2) of the clauses at § 401.14 in accordance with their own or applicable government-wide regulations such as the Federal Acquisition Regulation. In grants and cooperative agreements (and in contracts, if not inconsistent with the Federal Acquisition Regulation) agencies wishing to apply the same clause to all subcontractors as is applied to the contractor may delete paragraph (g)(2) of the clause and delete the words "to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization" from paragraph (g)(1). Also, if the funding agreement is a grant or cooperative agreement, paragraph (g)(3) may be deleted. When either paragraph (g)(2) or paragraphs (g)(2) and (3) are deleted, the remaining paragraph or paragraphs should be renumbered appropriately.

(b) Agencies should complete paragraph (1), "Communications", at the end of the clauses at § 401.14 by designating a central point of contact for communications on matters relating to the clause. Additional instructions on communications may also be included in paragraph (1).

(c) Agencies may replace the italicized words and phrases in the clauses at § 401.14 with those appropriate to the particular funding agreement. For example, "contracts" could be replaced by "grant," "contractor" by "grantee," and "contracting officer" by "grants officer." Depending on its use, "Federal agency" can be replaced either by the identification of the agency or by the specification of the particular office or official within the agency.

(d) When the agency head or duly authorized designee determines at the time of contracting with a small business firm or nonprofit organization that it would be in the national interest to acquire the right to sublicense foreign governments or international organizations pursuant to any existing treaty or international agreement, a sentence may be added at the end of paragraph (b) of the clause at § 401.14 as follows:

This license will include the right of the government to sublicense foreign governments, their nationals, and international organizations, pursuant to the following treaties or international agreements:

The blank above should be completed with the names of applicable existing treaties or international agreements, agreements of cooperation, memoranda of understanding, or similar arrangements, including military agreements relating to weapons development and production. The above language is not intended to apply to treaties or other agreements that are in effect on the date of the award but which are not listed. Alternatively, agencies may use substantially similar language relating the government's rights to specific treaties or other agreements identified elsewhere in the funding agreement. The language may also be modified to make clear that the rights granted to the foreign government, and its nationals or an international organization may be for additional rights beyond a license or sublicense if so required by the applicable treaty or international agreement. For example, in some exclusive licenses or even the assignment of title in the foreign country involved might be required. Agencies may also modify the language above to provide for the direct licensing by the contractor of the foreign government or international organization.

(e) If the funding agreement involves performance over an extended period of time, such as the typical funding agreement for the operation of a government-owned facility, the following language may also be added:

The agency reserves the right to unilaterally amend this funding agreement to identify specific treaties or international agreements entered into or to be entered into by the government after the effective date of this funding agreement and effectuate those license or other rights which are necessary for the government to meet its obligations to foreign governments, their nationals and international organizations under such treaties or international agreements with respect to subject inventions made after the date of the amendment.

(f) Agencies may add additional subparagraphs to paragraph (f) of the clauses at § 401.14 to require the contractor to do one or more of the following:

- (1) Provide a report prior to the close-out of a funding agreement listing all subject inventions or stating that there were none.
- (2) Provide, upon request, the filing date, serial number and title; a copy of the patent application; and patent number and issue date for any subject invention in any country in which the contractor has applied for patents.
- (3) Provide periodic (but no more frequently than annual) listings of all subject inventions which were disclosed to the agency during the period covered by the report.

(g) If the contract is with a nonprofit organization and is for the operation of a government-owned, contractor-operated facility, the following will be substituted for paragraph (k)(3) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

- (3) After payment of patenting costs, licensing costs, payments to inventors, and other expenses incidental to the administration of subject inventions, the balance of any royalties or income earned and retained by the contractor during any fiscal year on subject inventions under this or any successor contract containing the same requirement, up to any amount equal to five percent of the budget of the facility for that fiscal year, shall be used by the contractor for scientific research, development, and education consistent with the research and development mission and objectives of the facility, including activities that increase the licensing potential of other inventions of the facility. If the balance exceeds five percent, 75 percent of the excess above five percent shall be paid by the contractor to the Treasury of the United States and the remaining 25 percent shall be used by the contractor only for the same purposes as described above. To the

extent it provides the most effective technology transfer, the licensing of subject inventions shall be administered by contractor employees on location at the facility.

(h) If the contract is for the operation of a government-owned facility, agencies may add the following at the end of paragraph (f) of the clause at § 401.14(a):

- (5) The contractor shall establish and maintain active and effective procedures to ensure that subject inventions are promptly identified and timely disclosed and shall submit a description of the procedures to the contracting officer so that the contracting officer may evaluate and determine their effectiveness.

37 CFR 401.6 Exercise of march-in rights.

(a) The following procedures shall govern the exercise of the march-in rights of the agencies set forth in 35 U.S.C. 203 and paragraph (j) of the clause at § 401.14.

(b) Whenever an agency receives information that it believes might warrant the exercise of march-in rights, before initiating any march-in proceeding, it shall notify the contractor in writing of the information and request informal written or oral comments from the contractor as well as information relevant to the matter. In the absence of any comments from the contractor within 30 days, the agency may, at its discretion, proceed with the procedures below. If a comment is received within 30 days, or later if the agency has not initiated the procedures below, then the agency shall, within 60 days after it receives the comment, either initiate the procedures below or notify the contractor, in writing, that it will not pursue march-in rights on the basis of the available information.

(c) A march-in proceeding shall be initiated by the issuance of a written notice by the agency to the contractor and its assignee or exclusive licensee, as applicable and if known to the agency, stating that the agency is considering the exercise of march-in rights. The notice shall state the reasons for the proposed march-in in terms sufficient to put the contractor on notice of the facts upon which the action would be based and shall specify the field or fields of use in which the agency is considering requiring licensing. The notice shall advise the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) of its rights, as set forth in this section and in any supplemental agency regulations. The determination to exercise march-in rights shall be made by the head of the agency or his or her designee.

(d) Within 30 days after the receipt of the written notice of march-in, the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) may submit in person, in writing, or through a representative, information or argument in opposition to the proposed march-in, including any additional specific information which raises a genuine dispute over the material facts upon which the march-in is based. If the information presented raises a genuine dispute over the material facts, the head of the agency or designee shall undertake or refer the matter to another official for fact-finding.

(e) Fact-finding shall be conducted in accordance with the procedures established by the agency. Such procedures shall be as informal as practicable and be consistent with principles of fundamental fairness. The procedures should afford the contractor the opportunity to appear with counsel, submit documentary evidence, present witnesses and confront such persons as the agency may present. A transcribed record shall be made and shall be available at cost to the contractor upon request. The requirement for a transcribed record may be waived by mutual agreement of the contractor and the agency. Any portion of the march-in proceeding, including a fact-finding hearing that involves testimony or evidence relating to the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the contractor, its assignee, or licensees shall be closed to the public, including potential licensees. In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), agencies shall not disclose any such information obtained during a march-in proceeding to persons outside the government except when such release is authorized by the contractor (assignee or licensee).

(f) The official conducting the fact-finding shall prepare or adopt written findings of fact and transmit them to the head of the agency or designee promptly after the conclusion of the fact-finding proceeding along with a recommended determination. A copy of the findings of fact shall be sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by registered or certified mail. The contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives will be given 30 days to submit written arguments to the head of the agency or designee; and, upon request by the contractor oral arguments will be held before the agency head or designee that will make the final determination.

(g) In cases in which fact-finding has been conducted, the head of the agency or designee shall base his or her determination on the facts found, together with any other information and written or oral arguments submitted by the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) and agency representatives, and any other information in the administrative record. The consistency of the exercise of march-in rights with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 shall also be considered. In cases referred for fact-finding, the head of the agency or designee may reject only those facts that have been found to be clearly erroneous, but must explicitly state the rejection and indicate the basis for the contrary finding. Written notice of the determination whether march-in rights will be exercised shall be made by the head of the agency or designee and sent to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) by certified or registered mail within 90 days after the completion of fact-finding or 90 days after oral arguments, whichever is later, or the proceedings will be deemed to have been terminated and thereafter no march-in based on the facts and reasons upon which the proceeding was initiated may be exercised.

(h) An agency may, at any time, terminate a march-in proceeding if it is satisfied that it does not wish to exercise march-in rights.

(i) The procedures of this part shall also apply to the exercise of march-in rights against inventors receiving title to subject inventions under 35 U.S.C. 202(d) and, for that purpose, the term "contractor" as used in this section shall be deemed to include the inventor.

(j) An agency determination unfavorable to the contractor (assignee or exclusive licensee) shall be held in abeyance pending the exhaustion of appeals or petitions filed under 35 U.S.C. 203(2).

(k) For purposes of this section the term exclusive licensee includes a partially exclusive licensee.

(l) Agencies are authorized to issue supplemental procedures not inconsistent with this part for the conduct of march-in proceedings.

37 CFR 401.7 Small business preference.

(a) Paragraph (k)(4) of the clauses at § 401.14. Implements the small business preference requirement of 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7)(D). Contractors are expected to use efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract small business licensees. They are also expected to give small business firms that meet the standard outlined in the clause a preference over other applicants for licenses. What constitutes reasonable efforts to attract small business licensees will vary with the circumstances and the nature, duration, and expense of efforts needed to bring the invention to the market. Paragraph (k)(4) is not intended, for example, to prevent nonprofit organizations from providing larger firms with a right of first refusal or other options in inventions that relate to research being supported under long-term or other arrangements with larger companies. Under such circumstances it would not be reasonable to seek and to give a preference to small business licensees.

(b) Small business firms that believe a nonprofit organization is not meeting its obligations under the clause may report their concerns to the Secretary. To the extent deemed appropriate, the Secretary will undertake informal investigation of the concern, and, if appropriate, enter into discussions or negotiations with the nonprofit organization to the end of improving its efforts in meeting its obligations under the clause. However, in no event will the Secretary intervene in ongoing negotiations or contractor decisions concerning the licensing of a specific subject invention. All the above investigations, discussions, and negotiations of the Secretary will be in coordination with other interested agencies, including the Small Business Administration; and in the case of a contract for the operation of a government-owned, contractor operated research or production facility, the Secretary will coordinate with the agency responsible for the facility prior to any discussions or negotiations with the contractor.

37 CFR 401.8 Reporting on utilization of subject inventions.

(a) Paragraph (h) of the clauses at § 401.14 and its counterpart in the clause at Attachment A to OMB Circular A-124 provides that agencies have the right to receive periodic reports from the contractor on utilization of inventions. Agencies exercising this right should accept such information, to the extent feasible, in the format that the contractor normally prepares it for its own internal purposes. The prescription of forms should be avoided. However, any forms or standard questionnaires that are adopted by an agency for this purpose must comply with the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act. Copies shall be sent to the Secretary.

(b) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(c) (5) and the terms of the clauses at § 401.14, agencies shall not disclose such information to persons outside the government. Contractors will continue to provide confidential markings to help prevent inadvertent release outside the agency.

37 CFR 401.9 Retention of rights by contractor employee inventor.

Agencies which allow an employee/inventor of the contractor to retain rights to a subject invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization contractor, as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(d), will impose upon the inventor at least those conditions that would apply to a small business firm contractor under paragraphs (d)(1) and (3); (f)(4); (h); (i); and (j) of the clause at § 401.14(a).

37 CFR 401.10 Government assignment to contractor of rights in invention of government Employee.

In any case when a Federal employee is a co-inventor of any invention made under a funding agreement with a small business firm or nonprofit organization and the Federal agency employing such co-inventor transfers or reassigns the right it has acquired in the subject invention from its employee to the contractor as authorized by 35 U.S.C. 202(e), the assignment will be made subject to the same conditions as apply to the contractor under the patent rights clause of its funding agreement. Agencies may add additional conditions as long as they are consistent with 35 U.S.C. 201–206.

37 CFR 401.11 Appeals.

(a) As used in this section, the term standard clause means the clause at § 401.14 of this part and the clauses previously prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22.

(b) The agency official initially authorized to take any of the following actions shall provide the contractor with a written statement of the basis for his or her action at the time the action is taken, including any relevant facts that were relied upon in taking the action.

- (1) A refusal to grant an extension under paragraph (c)(4) of the standard clauses.
- (2) A request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clauses.
- (3) A refusal to grant a waiver under paragraph (i) of the standard clauses.
- (4) A refusal to approve an assignment under paragraph (k)(1) of the standard clauses.
- (5) A refusal to grant an extension of the exclusive license period under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A–124 or OMB Bulletin 81–22.

(c) Each agency shall establish and publish procedures under which any of the agency actions listed in paragraph (b) of this section may be appealed to the head of the agency or designee. Review at this level shall consider both the factual and legal basis for the actions and its consistency with the policy and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200–206.

(d) Appeals procedures established under paragraph (c) of this section shall include administrative due process procedures and standards for fact-finding at least comparable to those set forth in § 401.6 (e) through (g) whenever there is a dispute as to the factual basis for an agency request for a conveyance of title under paragraph (d) of the standard clause, including any dispute as to whether or not an invention is a subject invention.

(e) To the extent that any of the actions described in paragraph (b) of this section are subject to appeal under the Contract Dispute Act, the procedures under the Act will satisfy the requirements of paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

37 CFR 401.12 Licensing of background patent rights to third parties.

(a) A funding agreement with a small business firm or a domestic nonprofit organization will not contain a provision allowing a Federal agency to require the licensing to third parties of inventions owned by the contractor that are not subject inventions unless such provision has been approved by the agency head and a written justification has been signed by the agency head. Any such provision will clearly state whether the licensing may be required in connection with the practice of a subject invention, a specifically identified work object, or both. The agency head may not delegate the authority to approve such provisions or to sign the justification required for such provisions.

(b) A Federal agency will not require the licensing of third parties under any such provision unless the agency head determines that the use of the invention by others is necessary for the practice of a subject invention or for the use of a work object of the funding agreement and that such action is necessary to achieve practical application of the subject invention or work object. Any such determination will be on the record after an opportunity for an agency hearing. The contractor shall be given prompt notification of the determination by certified or registered mail. Any action commenced for judicial review of such determination shall be brought within sixty days after notification of such determination.

37 CFR 401.13 Administration of patent rights clauses.

(a) In the event a subject invention is made under funding agreements of more than one agency, at the request of the contractor or on their own initiative the agencies shall designate one agency as responsible for administration of the rights of the government in the invention.

(b) Agencies shall promptly grant, unless there is a significant reason not to, a request by a nonprofit organization under paragraph (k)(2) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 inasmuch as 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) has since been amended to eliminate the limitation on the duration of exclusive licenses. Similarly, unless there is a significant reason not to, agencies shall promptly approve an assignment by a nonprofit organization to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions when a request for approval has been necessitated under paragraph (k)(1) of the clauses prescribed by either OMB Circular A-124 or OMB Bulletin 81-22 because the patent management organization is engaged in or holds a substantial interest in other organizations engaged in the manufacture or sale of products or the use of processes that might utilize the invention or be in competition with embodiments of the invention. As amended, 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(7) no longer contains this limitation. The policy of this subsection should also be followed in connection with similar approvals that may be required under Institutional Patent Agreements, other patent rights clauses, or waivers that predate Chapter 18 of Title 35, United States Code.

(c) The President's Patent Policy Memorandum of February 18, 1983, states that agencies should protect the confidentiality of invention disclosure, patent applications, and utilization reports required in performance or in consequence of awards to the extent permitted by 35 U.S.C. 205 or other applicable laws. The following requirements should be followed for funding agreements covered by and predating this part 401.

- (1) To the extent authorized by 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) any information disclosing a subject invention for a reasonable time in order for a patent application to be filed. With respect to subject inventions of contractors that are small business firms or nonprofit organizations, a reasonable time shall be the time during which an initial patent application may be filed under paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a) or such other clause may be used in the funding agreement. However, an agency may disclose such subject inventions under the FOIA, at its discretion, after a contractor has elected not to retain title or after the time in which the contractor is required to make an election if the contractor has not made an election within that time. Similarly, an agency may honor a FOIA request at its discretion if it finds that the same information has previously been published by the inventor, contractor, or otherwise. If the agency plans to file itself when the contractor has not elected title, it may, of course, continue to avail itself of the authority of 35 U.S.C. 205.
- (2) In accordance with 35 U.S.C. 205, agencies shall not disclose or release for a period of 18 months from the filing date of the application to third parties pursuant to requests under the Freedom of Information Act or otherwise copies of any document which the agency obtained under this clause which is part of an application for patent with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or any foreign patent office filed by the contractor (or its assignees, licensees, or employees) on a subject invention to which the contractor has elected to retain title. This prohibition does not extend to disclosure to other government agencies or contractors of government agencies under an obligation to maintain such information in confidence.

- (3) A number of agencies have policies to encourage public dissemination of the results of work supported by the agency through publication in government or other publications of technical reports of contractors or others. In recognition of the fact that such publication, if it included descriptions of a subject invention could create bars to obtaining patent protection, it is the policy of the executive branch that agencies will not include in such publication programs copies of disclosures of inventions submitted by small business firms or nonprofit organizations, pursuant to paragraph (c) of the standard clause found at § 401.14(a), except that under the same circumstances under which agencies are authorized to release such information pursuant to FOIA requests under paragraph (c)(1) of this section, agencies may publish such disclosures.
- (4) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to preclude agencies from including in the publication activities described in the first sentence of paragraph (c)(3), the publication of materials describing a subject invention to the extent such materials were provided as part of a technical report or other submission of the contractor which were submitted independently of the requirements of the patent rights provisions of the contract. However, if a small business firm or nonprofit organization notifies the agency that a particular report or other submission contains a disclosure of a subject invention to which it has elected title or may elect title, the agency shall use reasonable efforts to restrict its publication of the material for six months from date of its receipt of the report or submission or, if earlier, until the contractor has filed an initial patent application. Agencies, of course, retain the discretion to delay publication for additional periods of time.
- (5) Nothing in this paragraph is intended to limit the authority of agencies provided in 35 U.S.C. 205 in circumstances not specifically described in this paragraph.

37 CFR 401.14 Standard patent rights clauses.

- (a) The following is the standard patent rights clause to be used as specified in § 401.3(a).

**Patent Rights (Small Business Firms
and Nonprofit Organizations)**

- (a) Definitions
 - (1) Invention means any invention or discovery which is or may be patentable or otherwise protectable under Title 35 of the United States Code, or any novel variety of plant which is or may be protected under the Plant Variety Protection Act (7 U.S.C. 2321 et seq.).
 - (2) Subject invention means any invention of the contractor conceived or first actually reduced to practice in the performance of work under this contract, provided that in the case of a variety of plant, the date of determination (as defined in section 41(d) of the Plant Variety Protection Act, 7 U.S.C. 2401(d)) must also occur during the period of contract performance.
 - (3) Practical Application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are, to the extent permitted by law or government regulations, available to the public on reasonable terms.
 - (4) Made when used in relation to any invention means the conception or first actual reduction to practice of such invention.
 - (5) Small Business Firm means a small business concern as defined at section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration. For the purpose of this clause, the size standards for small business concerns involved in government procurement and subcontracting at 13 CFR 121.3-8 and 13 CFR 121.3-12, respectively, will be used.

- (6) Nonprofit Organization means a university or other institution of higher education or an organization of the type described in section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1954 (26 U.S.C. 501(c) and exempt from taxation under section 501(a) of the Internal Revenue Code (25 U.S.C. 501(a)) or any nonprofit scientific or educational organization qualified under a state nonprofit organization statute.
- (b) Allocation of Principal Rights
The Contractor may retain the entire right, title, and interest throughout the world to each subject invention subject to the provisions of this clause and 35 U.S.C. 203. With respect to any subject invention in which the Contractor retains title, the Federal government shall have a nonexclusive, nontransferable, irrevocable, paid-up license to practice or have practiced for or on behalf of the United States the subject invention throughout the world.
- (c) Invention Disclosure, Election of Title and Filing of Patent Application by Contractor
- (1) The contractor will disclose each subject invention to the Federal Agency within two months after the inventor discloses it in writing to contractor personnel responsible for patent matters. The disclosure to the agency shall be in the form of a written report and shall identify the contract under which the invention was made and the inventor(s). It shall be sufficiently complete in technical detail to convey a clear understanding to the extent known at the time of the disclosure, of the nature, purpose, operation, and the physical, chemical, biological or electrical characteristics of the invention. The disclosure shall also identify any publication, on sale or public use of the invention and whether a manuscript describing the invention has been submitted for publication and, if so, whether it has been accepted for publication at the time of disclosure. In addition, after disclosure to the agency, the Contractor will promptly notify the agency of the acceptance of any manuscript describing the invention for publication or of any on sale or public use planned by the contractor.
 - (2) The Contractor will elect in writing whether or not to retain title to any such invention by notifying the Federal agency within two years of disclosure to the Federal agency. However, in any case where publication, on sale or public use has initiated the one year statutory period wherein valid patent protection can still be obtained in the United States, the period for election of title may be shortened by the agency to a date that is no more than 60 days prior to the end of the statutory period.
 - (3) The contractor will file its initial patent application on a subject invention to which it elects to retain title within one year after election of title or, if earlier, prior to the end of any statutory period wherein valid patent protection can be obtained in the United States after a publication, on sale, or public use. The contractor will file patent applications in additional countries or international patent offices within either ten months of the corresponding initial patent application or six months from the date permission is granted by the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to file foreign patent applications where such filing has been prohibited by a Secrecy Order.
 - (4) Requests for extension of the time for disclosure, election, and filing under subparagraphs (1), (2), and (3) may, at the discretion of the agency, be granted.
- (d) Conditions When the Government May Obtain Title
The contractor will convey to the Federal agency, upon written request, title to any subject invention—
- (1) If the contractor fails to disclose or elect title to the subject invention within the times specified in (c), above, or elects not to retain title; provided that the agency may only request title within 60 days after learning of the failure of the contractor to disclose or elect within the specified times.

- (2) In those countries in which the contractor fails to file patent applications within the times specified in (c) above; provided, however, that if the contractor has filed a patent application in a country after the times specified in (c) above, but prior to its receipt of the written request of the Federal agency, the contractor shall continue to retain title in that country.
 - (3) In any country in which the contractor decides not to continue the prosecution of any application for, to pay the maintenance fees on, or defend in reexamination or opposition proceeding on, a patent on a subject invention.
- (e) **Minimum Rights to Contractor and Protection of the Contractor Right to File**
 - (1) The contractor will retain a nonexclusive royalty-free license throughout the world in each subject invention to which the Government obtains title, except if the contractor fails to disclose the invention within the times specified in (c), above. The contractor's license extends to its domestic subsidiary and affiliates, if any, within the corporate structure of which the contractor is a party and includes the right to grant sublicenses of the same scope to the extent the contractor was legally obligated to do so at the time the contract was awarded. The license is transferable only with the approval of the Federal agency except when transferred to the successor of that party of the contractor's business to which the invention pertains.
 - (2) The contractor's domestic license may be revoked or modified by the funding Federal agency to the extent necessary to achieve expeditious practical application of the subject invention pursuant to an application for an exclusive license submitted in accordance with applicable provisions at 37 CFR part 404 and agency licensing regulations (if any). This license will not be revoked in that field of use or the geographical areas in which the contractor has achieved practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. The license in any foreign country may be revoked or modified at the discretion of the funding Federal agency to the extent the contractor, its licensees, or the domestic subsidiaries or affiliates have failed to achieve practical application in that foreign country.
 - (3) Before revocation or modification of the license, the funding Federal agency will furnish the contractor a written notice of its intention to revoke or modify the license, and the contractor will be allowed thirty days (or such other time as may be authorized by the funding Federal agency for good cause shown by the contractor) after the notice to show cause why the license should not be revoked or modified. The contractor has the right to appeal, in accordance with applicable regulations in 37 CFR part 404 and agency regulations (if any) concerning the licensing of Government-owned inventions, any decision concerning the revocation or modification of the license.
- (f) **Contractor Action to Protect the Government's Interest**
 - (1) The contractor agrees to execute or to have executed and promptly deliver to the Federal agency all instruments necessary to
 - (i) establish or confirm the rights the Government has throughout the world in those subject inventions to which the contractor elects to retain title, and
 - (ii) convey title to the Federal agency when requested under paragraph (d) above and to enable the government to obtain patent protection throughout the world in that subject invention.
 - (2) The contractor agrees to require, by written agreement, its employees, other than clerical and nontechnical employees, to disclose promptly in writing to personnel identified as responsible for the administration of patent matters and in a format suggested by the contractor each subject invention made under contract in order that the contractor can comply with the disclosure provisions of paragraph (c), above, and to execute all papers necessary to file patent applications on subject inventions and to establish the government's rights in the subject inventions. This

disclosure format should require, as a minimum, the information required by (c)(1), above. The contractor shall instruct such employees through employee agreements or other suitable educational programs on the importance of reporting inventions in sufficient time to permit the filing of patent applications prior to U.S. or foreign statutory bars.

- (3) The contractor will notify the Federal agency of any decisions not to continue the prosecution of a patent application, pay maintenance fees, or defend in a reexamination or opposition proceeding on a patent, in any country, not less than thirty days before the expiration of the response period required by the relevant patent office.
 - (4) The contractor agrees to include, within the specification of any United States patent applications and any patent issuing thereon covering a subject invention, the following statement, "This invention was made with government support under (identify the contract) awarded by (identify the Federal agency). The government has certain rights in the invention."
- (g) Subcontracts
- (1) The contractor will include this clause, suitably modified to identify the parties, in all subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental, developmental or research work to be performed by a small business firm or domestic nonprofit organization. The subcontractor will retain all rights provided for the contractor in this clause, and the contractor will not, as part of the consideration for awarding the subcontract, obtain rights in the subcontractor's subject inventions.
 - (2) The contractor will include in all other subcontracts, regardless of tier, for experimental developmental or research work the patent rights clause required by (cite section of agency implementing regulations or FAR).
 - (3) In the case of subcontracts, at any tier, when the prime award with the Federal agency was a contract (but not a grant or cooperative agreement), the agency, subcontractor, and the contractor agree that the mutual obligations of the parties created by this clause constitute a contract between the subcontractor and the Federal agency with respect to the matters covered by the clause; provided, however, that nothing in this paragraph is intended to confer any jurisdiction under the Contract Disputes Act in connection with proceedings under paragraph (j) of this clause.
- (h) Reporting on Utilization of Subject Inventions
- The Contractor agrees to submit on request periodic reports no more frequently than annually on the utilization of a subject invention or on efforts at obtaining such utilization that are being made by the contractor or its licensees or assignees. Such reports shall include information regarding the status of development, date of first commercial sale or use, gross royalties received by the contractor, and such other data and information as the agency may reasonably specify. The contractor also agrees to provide additional reports as may be requested by the agency in connection with any march-in proceeding undertaken by the agency in accordance with paragraph (j) of this clause. As required by 35 U.S.C. 202(c)(5), the agency agrees it will not disclose such information to persons outside the government without permission of the contractor.
- (i) Preference for United States Industry
- Notwithstanding any other provision of this clause, the contractor agrees that neither it nor any assignee will grant to any person the exclusive right to use or sell any subject inventions in the United States unless such person agrees that any products embodying the subject invention or produced through the use of the subject invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States. However, in individual cases, the requirement for such an agreement may be waived by the Federal agency upon a showing by the contractor or its assignee that reasonable but unsuccessful efforts have been made to grant licenses on similar terms to potential licensees that would be likely to

manufacture substantially in the United States or that under the circumstances domestic manufacture is not commercially feasible.

(j) March-in Rights

The contractor agrees that with respect to any subject invention in which it has acquired title, the Federal agency has the right in accordance with the procedures in 37 CFR 401.6 and any supplemental regulations of the agency to require the contractor, an assignee or exclusive licensee of a subject invention to grant a nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive license in any field of use to a responsible applicant or applicants, upon terms that are reasonable under the circumstances, and if the contractor, assignee, or exclusive licensee refuses such a request the Federal agency has the right to grant such a license itself if the Federal agency determines that:

- (1) Such action is necessary because the contractor or assignee has not taken, or is not expected to take within a reasonable time, effective steps to achieve practical application of the subject invention in such field of use.
- (2) Such action is necessary to alleviate health or safety needs which are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or their licensees;
- (3) Such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the contractor, assignee or licensees; or
- (4) Such action is necessary because the agreement required by paragraph (i) of this clause has not been obtained or waived or because a licensee of the exclusive right to use or sell any subject invention in the United States is in breach of such agreement.

(k) Special Provisions for Contracts with Nonprofit Organizations

If the contractor is a nonprofit organization, it agrees that:

- (1) Rights to a subject invention in the United States may not be assigned without the approval of the Federal agency, except where such assignment is made to an organization which has as one of its primary functions the management of inventions, provided that such assignee will be subject to the same provisions as the contractor;
- (2) The contractor will share royalties collected on a subject invention with the inventor, including Federal employee co-inventors (when the agency deems it appropriate) when the subject invention is assigned in accordance with 35 U.S.C. 202(e) and 37 CFR 401.10;
- (3) The balance of any royalties or income earned by the contractor with respect to subject inventions, after payment of expenses (including payments to inventors) incidental to the administration of subject inventions, will be utilized for the support of scientific research or education; and
- (4) It will make efforts that are reasonable under the circumstances to attract licensees of subject invention that are small business firms and that it will give a preference to a small business firm when licensing a subject invention if the contractor determines that the small business firm has a plan or proposal for marketing the invention which, if executed, is equally as likely to bring the invention to practical application as any plans or proposals from applicants that are not small business firms; provided, that the contractor is also satisfied that the small business firm has the capability and resources to carry out its plan or proposal. The decision whether to give a preference in any specific case will be at the discretion of the contractor. However, the contractor agrees that the Secretary may review the contractor's licensing program and decisions regarding small business applicants, and the contractor will negotiate changes to its licensing policies, procedures, or practices with the Secretary when the Secretary's review discloses that the contractor could take reasonable steps to implement more effectively the requirements of this paragraph (k)(4).

(1) Communication

(Complete According to Instructions at 401.5(b))

(b) When the Department of Energy (DOE) determines to use alternative provisions under § 401.3(a)(4), the standard clause at § 401.14(a), of this section, shall be used with the following modifications unless a substitute clause is drafted by DOE:

(1) The title of the clause shall be changed to read as follows:

Patent Rights to Nonprofit DOE Facility Operators

(2) Add an “(A)” after “(1)” in paragraph (c)(1) and add subparagraphs (B) and (C) to paragraph (c)(1) as follows:

(B) If the subject invention occurred under activities funded by the naval nuclear propulsion or weapons related programs of DOE, then the provisions of this subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). In such cases the contractor agrees to assign the government the entire right, title, and interest thereto throughout the world in and to the subject invention except to the extent that rights are retained by the contractor through a greater rights determination or under paragraph (e), below. The contractor, or an employee-inventor, with authorization of the contractor, may submit a request for greater rights at the time the invention is disclosed or within a reasonable time thereafter. DOE will process such a request in accordance with procedures at 37 CFR 401.15. Each determination of greater rights will be subject to paragraphs (h)–(k) of this clause and such additional conditions, if any, deemed to be appropriate by the Department of Energy.

(C) At the time an invention is disclosed in accordance with (c)(1)(A) above, or within 90 days thereafter, the contractor will submit a written statement as to whether or not the invention occurred under a naval nuclear propulsion or weapons-related program of the Department of Energy. If this statement is not filed within this time, subparagraph (c)(1)(B) will apply in lieu of paragraphs (c)(2) and (3). The contractor statement will be deemed conclusive unless, within 60 days thereafter, the Contracting Officer disagrees in writing, in which case the determination of the Contracting Officer will be deemed conclusive unless the contractor files a claim under the Contract Disputes Act within 60 days after the Contracting Officer’s determination. Pending resolution of the matter, the invention will be subject to subparagraph (c)(1)(B).

(3) Paragraph (k)(3) of the clause will be modified as prescribed at § 401.5(g).

37 CFR 401.15 Deferred determinations.

(a) This section applies to requests for greater rights in subject inventions made by contractors when deferred determination provisions were included in the funding agreement because one of the exceptions at § 401.3(a) was applied, except that the Department of Energy is authorized to process deferred determinations either in accordance with its waiver regulations or this section. A contractor requesting greater rights should include with its request information on its plans and intentions to bring the invention to practical application. Within 90 days after receiving a request and supporting information, or sooner if a statutory bar to patenting is imminent, the agency should seek to make a determination. In any event, if a bar to patenting is imminent, unless the agency plans to file on its own, it shall authorize the contractor to file a patent application pending a determination by the agency. Such a filing shall normally be at the contractor’s own risk and expense. However, if the agency subsequently refuses to allow the contractor to retain title and elects to proceed with the patent application under government ownership, it shall reimburse the contractor for the cost of preparing and filing the patent application.

(b) If the circumstances of concerns which originally led the agency to invoke an exception under § 401.3(a) are not applicable to the actual subject invention or are no longer valid because of subsequent events, the agency should allow the contractor to retain title to the invention on the same conditions as would have applied if the standard clause at § 401.14(a) had been used originally, unless it has been licensed.

(c) If paragraph (b) is not applicable the agency shall make its determination based on an assessment whether its own plans regarding the invention will better promote the policies and objectives of 35 U.S.C. 200 than will contractor ownership of the invention. Moreover, if the agency is concerned only about specific uses or applications of the invention, it shall consider leaving title in the contractor with additional conditions imposed upon the contractor's use of the invention for such applications or with expanded government license rights in such applications.

(d) A determination not to allow the contractor to retain title to a subject invention or to restrict or condition its title with conditions differing from those in the clause at § 401.14(a), unless made by the head of the agency, shall be appealable by the contractor to an agency official at a level above the person who made the determination. This appeal shall be subject to the procedures applicable to appeals under § 401.11 of this part.

37 CFR 401.16 Submissions and inquiries.

All submissions or inquiries should be directed to Federal Technology Management Policy Division, telephone number 202-377-0659, Room H4837, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

PART 404—LICENSING OF GOVERNMENT OWNED INVENTIONS

Authority: 35 U.S.C. 206 and the delegation of authority by the Secretary of Commerce to the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Technology Policy at sec. 3(g) of DOO 10-18.

Source: 50 FR 9802, Mar. 12, 1985, unless otherwise noted.

37 CFR 404.1 Scope of part.

This part prescribes the terms, conditions, and procedures upon which a federally owned invention, other than an invention in the custody of the Tennessee Valley Authority, may be licensed. It supersedes the regulations at 41 CFR Subpart 101-4.1. This part does not affect licenses which

- (a) were in effect prior to July 1, 1981;
- (b) may exist at the time of the Government's acquisition of title to the invention, including those resulting from the allocation of rights to inventions made under Government research and development contracts;
- (c) are the result of an authorized exchange of rights in the settlement of patent disputes; or
- (d) are otherwise authorized by law or treaty.

37 CFR 404.2 Policy and objective.

It is the policy and objective of this subpart to use the patent system to promote the utilization of inventions arising from federally supported research or development.

37 CFR 404.3 Definitions.

(a) Federally owned invention means an invention, plant, or design which is covered by a patent, or patent application in the United States, or a patent, patent application, plant variety protection, or other form of protection, in a foreign country, title to which has been assigned to or otherwise vested in the United States Government.

(b) Federal agency means an executive department, military department, Government corporation, or independent establishment, except the Tennessee Valley Authority, which has custody of a federally owned invention.

(c) Small business firm means a small business concern as defined in section 2 of Pub. L. 85-536 (15 U.S.C. 632) and implementing regulations of the Administrator of the Small Business Administration.

(d) Practical application means to manufacture in the case of a composition or product, to practice in the case of a process or method, or to operate in the case of a machine or system; and, in each case, under such conditions as to establish that the invention is being utilized and that its benefits are to the extent permitted by law or Government regulations available to the public on reasonable terms.

(e) United States means the United States of America, its territories and possessions, the District of Columbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

37 FR 404.4 Authority to grant licenses.

Federally owned inventions shall be made available for licensing as deemed appropriate in the public interest. Federal agencies having custody of federally owned inventions may grant nonexclusive, partially exclusive, or exclusive licenses thereto under this part.

37 CFR 404.5 Restrictions and conditions on all licenses granted under this part.

(a)

- (1) A license may be granted only if the applicant has supplied the Federal agency with a satisfactory plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, and with information about the applicant's capability to fulfill the plan.
- (2) A license granting rights to use or sell under a federally owned invention in the United States shall normally be granted only to a licensee who agrees that any products embodying the invention or produced through the use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States.

(b) Licenses shall contain such terms and conditions as the Federal agency determines are appropriate for the protection of the interests of the Federal Government and the public and are not in conflict with law or this part. The following terms and conditions apply to any license:

- (1) The duration of the license shall be for a period specified in the license agreement, unless sooner terminated in accordance with this part.
- (2) The license may be granted for all or less than all fields of use of the invention or in specified geographical areas, or both.
- (3) The license may extend to subsidiaries of the licensee or other parties if provided for in the license but shall be nonassignable without approval of the Federal agency, except to the successor of that part of the licensee's business to which the invention pertains.
- (4) The licensee may provide the license the right to grant sublicenses under the license, subject to the approval of the Federal agency. Each sublicense shall make reference to the license, including the rights retained by the Government, and a copy of such sublicense shall be furnished to the Federal agency.
- (5) The license shall require the licensee to carry out the plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, to bring the invention to practical application within a period specified in the license, and to continue to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public.
- (6) The license shall require the licensee to report periodically on the utilization or efforts at obtaining utilization that are being made by the licensee, with particular reference to the plan submitted.
- (7) Licenses may be royalty-free or for royalties or other consideration.
- (8) Where an agreement is obtained pursuant to § 404.5(a)(2) that any products embodying the invention or produced through use of the invention will be manufactured substantially in the United States, the license shall recite such agreement.
- (9) The license shall provide for the right of the Federal agency to terminate the license, in whole or in part, if:
 - (i) The Federal agency determines that the licensee is not executing the plan submitted with its request for a license and the licensee cannot otherwise demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that it has taken or can be expected to take within a reasonable time effective steps to achieve practical application of the invention;
 - (ii) The Federal agency determines that such action is necessary to meet requirements for public use specified by Federal regulations issued after the date of the license and such requirements are not reasonably satisfied by the licensee;
 - (iii) The licensee has willfully made a false statement of or willfully omitted a material fact in the license application or in any report required by the license agreement; or

- (iv) The licensee commits a substantial breach of a covenant or agreement contained in the license.
- (10) The license may be modified or terminated, consistent with this part, upon mutual agreement of the Federal agency and the licensee.
- (11) Nothing relating to the grant of a license, nor the grant itself, shall be construed to confer upon any person any immunity from or defenses under the antitrust laws or from a charge of patent misuse, and the acquisition and use of rights pursuant to this part shall not be immunized from the operation of state or Federal law by reason of the source of the grant.

37 CFR 404.6 Nonexclusive licenses.

(a) Nonexclusive licenses may be granted under federally owned inventions without publication of availability or notice of a prospective license.

(b) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the nonexclusive license may also provide that, after termination of a period specified in the license agreement, the Federal agency may restrict the license to the fields of use or geographic areas, or both, in which the licensee has brought the invention to practical application and continues to make the benefits of the invention reasonably accessible to the public. However, such restriction shall be made only in order to grant an exclusive or partially exclusive license in accordance with this subpart.

37 CFR 404.7 Exclusive and partially exclusive licenses.

(a)

- (1) Exclusive or partially exclusive domestic licenses may be granted on federally owned inventions three months after notice of the invention's availability has been announced in the Federal Register, or without such notice where the Federal agency determines that expeditious granting of such a license will best serve the interest of the Federal Government and the public; and in either situation, only if:
 - (i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and the prospective licensee, has been published in the Federal Register, providing opportunity for filing written objections within a 60-day period;
 - (ii) After expiration of the period in § 404.7(a)(1)(i) and consideration of any written objections received during the period, the Federal agency has determined that:
 - (A) The interests of the Federal Government and the public will best be served by the proposed license, in view of the applicant's intentions, plans, and ability to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;
 - (B) The desired practical application has not been achieved, or is not likely expeditiously to be achieved, under any nonexclusive license which has been granted, or which may be granted, on the invention;
 - (C) Exclusive or partially exclusive licensing is a reasonable and necessary incentive to call forth the investment of risk capital and expenditures to bring the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public; and
 - (D) The proposed terms and scope of exclusivity are not greater than reasonably necessary to provide the incentive for bringing the invention to practical application or otherwise promote the invention's utilization by the public;
 - (iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the country in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with the antitrust laws; and
 - (iv) The Federal agency has given first preference to any small business firms submitting plans that are determined by the agency to be within the capabilities of

the firms and as equally likely, if executed, to bring the invention to practical application as any plans submitted by applicants that are not small business firms.

- (2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5, the following terms and conditions apply to domestic exclusive and partially exclusive licenses:
 - (i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.
 - (ii) The license shall reserve to the Federal agency the right to require the licensee to grant sublicenses to responsible applicants, on reasonable terms, when necessary to fulfill health or safety needs.
 - (iii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.
 - (iv) The license may grant the licensee the right of enforcement of the licensed patent pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 29 of Title 35, United States Code, or other statutes, as determined appropriate in the public interest.

(b)

- (1) Exclusive or partially exclusive licenses may be granted on a federally owned invention covered by a foreign patent, patent application, or other form of protection, provided that:
 - (i) Notice of a prospective license, identifying the invention and prospective licensee, has been published in the Federal Register, providing opportunity for filing written objections within a 60-day period and following consideration of such objections;
 - (ii) The agency has considered whether the interests of the Federal Government or United States industry in foreign commerce will be enhanced; and
 - (iii) The Federal agency has not determined that the grant of such license will tend substantially to lessen competition or result in undue concentration in any section of the United States in any line of commerce to which the technology to be licensed relates, or to create or maintain other situations inconsistent with antitrust laws.
- (2) In addition to the provisions of § 404.5 the following terms and conditions apply to foreign exclusive and partially exclusive licenses:
 - (i) The license shall be subject to the irrevocable, royalty-free right of the Government of the United States to practice and have practiced the invention on behalf of the United States and on behalf of any foreign government or international organization pursuant to any existing or future treaty or agreement with the United States.
 - (ii) The license shall be subject to any licenses in force at the time of the grant of the exclusive or partially exclusive license.
 - (iii) The license may grant the licensee the right to take any suitable and necessary actions to protect the licensed property, on behalf of the Federal Government.

(c) Federal agencies shall maintain a record of determinations to grant exclusive or partially exclusive licenses.

37 CFR 404.8 Application for a license.

An application for a license should be addressed to the Federal agency having custody of the invention and shall normally include:

- (a) Identification of the invention for which the license is desired including the patent application serial number or patent number, title, and date, if known;
- (b) Identification of the type of license for which the application is submitted;

- (c) Name and address of the person, company, or organization applying for the license and the citizenship or place of incorporation of the applicant;
- (d) Name, address, and telephone number of the representative of the applicant to whom correspondence should be sent;
- (e) Nature and type of applicant's business, identifying products or services which the applicant has successfully commercialized, and approximate number of applicant's employees;
- (f) Source of information concerning the availability of a license on the invention;
- (g) A statement indicating whether the applicant is a small business firm as defined in § 404.3(c)
- (h) A detailed description of applicant's plan for development or marketing of the invention, or both, which should include:
- (1) A statement of the time, nature and amount of anticipated investment of capital and other resources which applicant believes will be required to bring the invention to practical application;
 - (2) A statement as to applicant's capability and intention to fulfill the plan, including information regarding manufacturing, marketing, financial, and technical resources;
 - (3) A statement of the fields of use for which applicant intends to practice the invention; and
 - (4) A statement of the geographic areas in which applicant intends to manufacture any products embodying the invention and geographic areas where applicant intends to use or sell the invention, or both;
- (i) Identification of licenses previously granted to applicant under federally owned inventions;
- (j) A statement containing applicant's best knowledge of the extent to which the invention is being practiced by private industry or Government, or both, or is otherwise available commercially; and
- (k) Any other information which applicant believes will support a determination to grant the license to applicant.

37 CFR 404.9 Notice to Attorney General.

A copy of the notice provided for in § 404.7 (a)(1)(i) and (b)(1)(i) will be sent to the Attorney General.

37 CFR 404.10 Modification and termination of licenses.

Before modifying or terminating a license, other than by mutual agreement, the Federal agency shall furnish the licensee and any sublicensee of record a written notice of intention to modify or terminate the license, and the licensee and any sublicensee shall be allowed 30 days after such notice to remedy any breach of the license or show cause why the license shall not be modified or terminated.

37 CFR 404.11 Appeals.

In accordance with procedures prescribed by the Federal agency, the following parties may appeal to the agency head or designee any decision or determination concerning the grant, denial, interpretation, modification, or termination of a license:

- (a) A person whose application for a license has been denied.
- (b) A licensee whose license has been modified or terminated, in whole or in part; or
- (c) A person who timely filed a written objection in response to the notice required by § 404.7(a)(1)(i) or § 404.7(b)(1)(i) and who can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Federal agency that such person may be damaged by the agency action.

37 CFR 404.12 Protection and administration of inventions.

A Federal agency may take any suitable and necessary steps to protect and administer rights to federally owned inventions, either directly or through contract.

37 CFR 404.13 Transfer of custody.

A Federal agency having custody of a federally owned invention may transfer custody and administration, in whole or in part, to another Federal agency, of the right, title, or interest in such invention.



37 CFR 404.14 Confidentiality of information.

Title 35, United States Code, section 209, provides that any plan submitted pursuant to § 404.8(h) and any report required by § 404.5(b)(6) may be treated by the Federal agency as commercial and financial information obtained from a person and privileged and confidential and not subject to disclosure under section 552 of Title 5 of the United States Code.



CHAPTER V—UNDER SECRETARY FOR TECHNOLOGY, DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PART 501—UNIFORM PATENT POLICY FOR DOMESTIC RIGHTS IN INVENTIONS MADE BY GOVERNMENT EMPLOYEES

Authority: Sec. 4, E.O. 10096, 3 CFR, 1949–1953 Comp., p. 292, as amended by E.O. 10930, 3 CFR, 1959–1963 Comp., p. 456; and delegations of authority by the Secretary of Commerce, January 4, 1990, DOO 10–17 and DOO 10–18.

Source: 53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

37 CFR 501.1 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to provide for the administration of a uniform patent policy for the Government with respect to the domestic rights in inventions made by Government employees and to prescribe rules and regulations for implementing and effectuating such policy.

37 CFR 501.2 Scope.

This part applies to any invention made by a Government employee and to any action taken with respect thereto.

37 CFR 501.3 Definitions.

(a) The term Secretary as used in this part, means the Under Secretary of Commerce for Technology.

(b) The term Government agency, as used in this part, means any Executive department or independent establishment of the Executive branch of the Government (including any independent regulatory commission or board, any corporation wholly owned by the United States, and the Smithsonian Institution), but does not include the Department of Energy for inventions made or conceived under the provisions of 42 U.S.C. 2182.

(c) The term Government employee, as used in this part, means any officer or employee, civilian or military, of any Government agency, including any part-time consultant or part-time employee except as may otherwise be provided for by agency regulation approved by the Secretary.

(d) The term invention, as used in this part, means any art, machine, manufacture, design, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof, or any variety of plant, which is or may be patentable under the patent laws of the United States.

[53 FR 39735, Oct. 11, 1988, as amended at 55 FR 38983, Sept. 24, 1990]

37 CFR 501.4 Determination of Inventions and rights therein.

Each Government agency has the approval of the Secretary to determine whether the results of research, development, or other activity in the agency constitute an invention within the purview of E.O. 10096, as amended by E.O. 10930 and to determine the rights therein in accordance with the provisions of § 501.6 and 501.7 herein.

37 CFR 501.5 Agency Liaison Officer.

Each Government agency shall designate a liaison officer to represent the agency before the Secretary; Provided, however, that the Departments of the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force may each designate a liaison officer.

37 CFR 501.6 Criteria for the Determination of Rights In and To Inventions.

(a) The following rules shall be applied in determining the respective rights of the Government and of the inventor in and to any invention that is subject to the provisions of this part:

- (1) The Government shall obtain, except as herein otherwise provided, the entire domestic right, title and interest in and to any invention made by any Government employee:
 - (i) During working hours, or
 - (ii) With a contribution by the Government of facilities, equipment, materials, funds or information, or of time or services of other Government employees on official duty, or
 - (iii) Which bears a direct relation to or is made in consequence of the official duties of the inventor.

Foreign patent rights are governed by the provisions of 37 CFR part 101.

- (2) In any case where the contribution of the Government, as measured by any one or more of the criteria set forth in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, to the invention is insufficient equitably to justify a requirement of assignment to the Government of the entire domestic right, title, and interest in and to such invention, or in any case where the Government has insufficient interest in an invention to obtain the entire domestic right, title, and interest therein (although the Government could obtain same under paragraph (a)(1) of this section), the Government agency concerned shall leave title to such invention in the employee, subject however, to the reservation to the government of a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes, such reservation, in the terms thereof, to appear, where practicable, in any patent, domestic or foreign, which may issue on such invention. Reference is made to section 15 of the Federal Technology Transfer Act of 1986 (15 U.S.C. 3710d) which requires a Government agency to allow the inventor to retain title to any covered invention when the agency does not intend to file a patent application or otherwise promote commercialization.
- (3) In applying the provisions of paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section to the facts and circumstances relating to the making of a particular invention, it shall be presumed that an invention made by an employee who is employed or assigned:
 - (i) To invent or improve or perfect any art, machine, design, manufacture, or composition of matter,
 - (ii) To conduct or perform research, development work, or both,
 - (iii) To supervise, direct, coordinate, or review Government financed or conducted research, development work, or both, or
 - (iv) To act in a liaison capacity among governmental or non-governmental agencies or individuals engaged in such research or development work, falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section, and it shall be presumed that any invention made by any other employee falls within the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Either presumption may be rebutted by a showing of the facts and circumstances in the case and shall not preclude a determination that these facts and circumstances justify leaving the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.
- (4) In any case wherein the Government neither:
 - (i) Obtains the entire domestic right, title and interest in and to an invention pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(1) of this section nor
 - (ii) Reserves a nonexclusive, irrevocable, royalty-free license in the invention, with power to grant licenses for all governmental purposes, pursuant to the provisions of paragraph (a)(2) of this section,the Government shall leave the entire right, title and interest in and to the invention in the Government employee, subject to law.

37 CFR 501.7 Agency determination.

(a) If the agency determines that the Government is entitled to obtain title pursuant to § 501.6(a)(1) and the employee does not appeal, no further review is required.

(b) In the event that a Government agency determines, pursuant to paragraph (a)(2) or (a)(4) of § 501.6, that title to an invention will be left with the employee, the agency shall notify the employee of this determination.

(c) In the case of a determination under either paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, the agency shall promptly prepare, and preserve in appropriate files, accessible to the Secretary, a written, signed, and dated statement concerning the invention including the following:

- (1) A description of the invention in sufficient detail to identify the invention and show its relationship to the employee's duties and work assignments;
- (2) The name of the employee and employment status, including a detailed statement of official duties and responsibilities at the time the invention was made; and
- (3) An explanation of the agency determination and reasons therefor. The agency shall, subject to considerations of national security, or public health, safety, or welfare, submit to the Secretary, if an appeal is taken, a copy of this written statement.

37 CFR 501.8 Appeals by employees.

(a) Any Government employee who is aggrieved by a Government agency determination pursuant to § 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2), may obtain a review of any agency determination by filing, within 30 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown in writing, fix in any case) after receiving notice of such determination, two copies of an appeal with the Secretary. The Secretary then shall forward one copy of the appeal to the Government agency.

(b) On receipt of a copy of an appeal filed pursuant to paragraph (a) of this section, the agency official who made the agency determination being appealed shall, subject to considerations of national security, or public health, safety, or welfare, promptly furnish both the Secretary and the inventor with a copy of a report containing the following information about the invention involved in the appeal:

- (1) A copy of a statement by the agency containing the information specified in § 501.7, and
- (2) A detailed statement of the points of dispute or controversy, together with copies of any statements or written arguments filed with the agency, and of any other relevant evidence that the agency considered in making its determination of Government interest. Within 25 days (or such longer period as the Secretary may, for good cause shown, fix in any case) after the transmission of a copy of the agency report to the employee, the employee may file a reply thereto with the Secretary and file one copy thereof with the appropriate agency decision maker.

(c) After the time for the inventor's reply to the Government agency's report has expired and if the inventor has so requested in his or her appeal, a date will be set for hearing of oral arguments before the Secretary, by the employee (or by an attorney whom he or she designates by written power of attorney filed before, or at the hearing) and a representative of the Government agency involved. Unless it shall be otherwise ordered before the hearing begins, oral arguments will be limited to thirty minutes for each side. The employee need not retain an attorney or request an oral hearing to secure full consideration of the facts and his or her arguments. The employee may expedite such consideration by notifying the Secretary when he or she does not intend to file a reply to the agency report.

(d) After a hearing on the appeal, if a hearing was requested, or after expiration of the period for the inventor's reply to the agency report if no hearing is set, the Secretary shall issue a decision on the matter within 120 days, which decision shall be final after a thirty day period for requesting reconsideration expires or on the date that a decision on a petition for reconsideration is finally disposed of. Any request for reconsideration or modification of the decision must be filed within 30 days from the date of the original decision (or within such an extension thereof as may be set by the Secretary before the original period expires). The decision of the Secretary shall be made after consideration of the statements of fact in the employee's appeal, the agency's report, and the employee's reply, but the Secretary at his or her discretion and with due respect to the rights and convenience of the inventor and the Government agency, may call for



further statements on specific questions of fact or may request additional evidence in the form of affidavits or depositions on specific facts in dispute.

37 CFR 501.9 Patent protection.

(a) A Government agency, upon determining that an invention coming within the scope of § 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) has been made, shall thereupon determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States by the agency for such invention. A controversy over the respective rights of the Government and of the employee in any case shall not delay the taking of the actions provided for in this section. In cases coming within the scope of § 501.6(a)(2), agency action looking toward such patent protection shall be contingent upon the consent of the employee.

(b) Where there is an appealed dispute as to whether § 501.6(a)(1) or (a)(2) applies in determining the respective rights of the Government and of an employee in and to any invention, the agency will determine whether patent protection will be sought in the United States pending the Secretary's decision on the dispute and, if it decides that an application for patent should be filed, will take such rights as are specified in § 501.6(a)(2), but this shall be without prejudice to acquiring the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

(c) Where an agency has determined to leave title to an invention with an employee under § 501.6(a)(2), the agency will, upon the filing of an application for patent take the rights specified in that paragraph without prejudice to the subsequent acquisition by the Government of the rights specified in paragraph (a)(1) of that section should the Secretary so decide.

37 CFR 501.10 Dissemination of this part and of implementing regulations.

Each Government agency shall disseminate to its employees the provisions of this part, and any appropriate implementing agency regulations and delegations. Copies of any such regulations shall be sent to the Secretary. If the Secretary identifies an inconsistency between this part and the agency regulations or delegations, the agency, upon being informed by the Secretary of the inconsistency, shall take prompt action to correct it.